

W7200
W7250

SERVICE
MANUAL

Canon

I. ABOUT THIS MANUAL

This manual is divided into five parts containing the information required for servicing the W7200/W7250 printer.

Part 1: Safety and Precautions

This part contains information on how to service the unit safely. It is very important, and must be read.

Part 2: Product Specifications

This part outlines the product and its specifications.

Part 3: Operating Instructions

This part explains how to operate the unit properly, how it is installed, and how to use the service mode.

Part 4: Technical Reference

This part outlines the unit operation giving a technical reference.

Part 5: Maintenance

This part explains maintenance of the unit. It includes details of disassembly / assembly, adjustments required when assembling, troubleshooting procedures, and wiring / circuit diagrams, etc.



This manual does not contain complete information required for disassembling and assembling the printer. Please also refer to the separate Parts Catalog.

II. TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<i>Part 1: SAFETY AND PRECAUTIONS</i>
Page	
1 - 1	1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS
1 - 1	1.1 Moving Parts
1 - 2	1.2 Ink
1 - 2	1.2.1 Ink passages
1 - 3	1.2.2 Ink mist
1 - 4	1.3 Electrical Parts
1 - 5	1.4 Size and Weight of the Printer
1 - 6	2. OTHER PRECAUTIONS
1 - 6	2.1 Printhead
1 - 6	2.1.1 How to handle the printhead
1 - 7	2.1.2 Capping
1 - 7	2.1.3 When the printer is not used for a long time
1 - 7	2.1.4 Conductivity of ink
1 - 8	2.2 Ink Tank
1 - 8	2.2.1 Opening the ink tank
1 - 8	2.2.2 Handling the ink tank
1 - 9	2.3 Handling the Printer
1 - 9	2.3.1 Precautions against static electricity
1 -10	2.3.2 Fixing the carriage
1 -11	2.3.3 Replacing the waste ink absorber
1 -11	2.3.4 Refilling the ink
1 -12	3. PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING THE PRINTER
1 -12	3.1 Stored Data
1 -13	3.2 Firmware Confirmation
1 -13	3.3 Precautions Against Static Electricity
1 -13	3.4 Precautions for Disassembly/Assembly
1 -13	3.5 Self-Diagnostic Feature
1 -13	3.6 Disposing of Waste Ink
1 -13	3.7 Disposing of Lithium Battery

Part 2: PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

2 - 1	1. PRODUCT OVERVIEW
2 - 1	1.1 Product Overview
2 - 2	1.2 Features
2 - 3	1.3 Printhead
2 - 3	1.4 Ink Tank
2 - 4	1.5 Roll Holder
2 - 5	1.6 Consumables
2 - 5	1.6.1 Printhead
2 - 5	1.6.2 Ink tank
2 - 6	2. SPECIFICATIONS
2 - 6	2.1 General Specifications
2 -10	2.2 Interface Specifications
2 -10	2.2.1 Network
2 -11	2.2.2 USB (Universal Serial Bus)
2 -12	2.2.3 IEEE1394 (optional in W7250)
2 -13	2.3 Printer Driver Types

Part 3: OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

3 - 1	1. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF COMPONENTS
3 - 1	1.1 Names and Functions of Components
3 - 1	1.1.1 Front

Page	
3 - 2	1.1.2 Rear
3 - 2	1.1.3 Carriage unit
3 - 3	1.1.4 Internal part
3 - 4	1.1.5 Roll media tray unit
3 - 5	2. PRINTER SETUP
3 - 5	2.1 Installation
3 - 6	2.1.1 Installation environment
3 - 7	2.1.2 Unpacking
3 - 10	2.1.3 Assembling the stand (optional for W7250)
3 - 11	2.1.4 Installing the printer
3 - 13	2.1.5 Removing packing materials
3 - 14	2.1.6 Removing the belt stopper
3 - 15	2.1.7 Connecting the power supply
3 - 16	2.1.8 Installing the printhead
3 - 17	2.1.9 Installing the ink tanks
3 - 18	2.1.10 Language setting
3 - 19	2.1.11 Loading paper
3 - 19	2.1.12 Checking and adjusting the print status
3 - 20	2.1.13 Connecting the interface cable
3 - 21	3. TRANSPORTING THE PRINTER
3 - 21	3.1 Transporting the Printer
3 - 22	3.1.1 Moving the printer on the same floor
3 - 23	3.1.2 How to transport the printer to a different floor
3 - 25	3.1.3 Manual capping
3 - 26	3.2 Reinstalling the Printer
3 - 26	3.2.1 Installing the printer on the same floor
3 - 26	3.2.2 Installing the printer on a different floor
3 - 27	4. OPERATION
3 - 27	4.1 User Replacements
3 - 27	4.1.1 Replacing print media
3 - 27	4.1.2 When to replace roll media
3 - 28	4.1.3 How to replace roll media
3 - 31	4.1.4 Loading the cut sheets
3 - 32	4.1.5 Replacing the printhead
3 - 34	4.1.6 Replacing the ink tank
3 - 36	4.2 Operation Panel
3 - 38	4.3 Change of Printer Status
3 - 39	4.4 Main Menu
3 - 39	4.4.1 Main Menu operations
3 - 40	4.4.2 Map of the main menu
3 - 43	4.4.3 Contents of main menu
3 - 50	5. PRINTER SERVICING FUNCTIONS
3 - 50	5.1 Service Mode
3 - 50	5.1.1 Service mode operation
3 - 51	5.1.2 Map of the service mode
3 - 54	5.1.3 Details of service mode
3 - 63	5.2 Error Indicators
3 - 64	5.2.1 Overview of warning and error codes
3 - 65	5.2.2 Warning and error codes
3 - 68	5.2.3 Description of warning and error codes
3 - 74	6. PRINTER SERVICE SOFTWARE
3 - 74	6.1 Overview of Service Software
3 - 74	6.1.1 Firmware version update software
3 - 74	6.1.2 Service information access software

Page	
3 -74	6.2 Firmware Version Update Software
3 -75	6.2.1 Upgrade procedure
3 -76	6.3 Service Information Access Software
3 -79	6.3.1 Service information access procedure

Part 4: TECHNICAL REFERENCE

4 - 1	1. OVERVIEW
4 - 1	1.1 Printer Block Diagram
4 - 2	1.2 Print Signal Sequence
4 - 5	1.3 Print Driving
4 - 5	1.3.1 Print drive control
4 - 6	1.3.2 Print drive timing
4 - 7	2. FIRMWARE
4 - 7	2.1 Power On/Off
4 - 7	2.1.1 Power On
4 - 8	2.2 Power Off
4 - 8	2.2.1 Power Off sequence
4 - 9	2.3 Print Control
4 - 9	2.3.1 Print mode
4 -11	2.4 Print Position Adjustment
4 -11	2.4.1 Print position adjustment
4 -11	2.5 Overheating Protection Control of Printhead
4 -12	2.6 Pause between Pages
4 -12	2.7 White Raster Skip
4 -12	2.8 Sleep Mode
4 -13	3. PRINTER MECHANICAL SYSTEM
4 -14	3.1 Ink Passage
4 -14	3.1.1 Overview of the ink passage
4 -16	3.2 Ink Tank Unit
4 -16	3.2.1 Structure of ink tank unit
4 -18	3.3 Carriage Unit
4 -18	3.3.1 Carriage functions
4 -19	3.3.2 Structure of carriage
4 -22	3.4 Printhead
4 -22	3.4.1 Structure of printhead
4 -26	3.5 Purge Unit
4 -26	3.5.1 Functions of purge unit
4 -28	3.5.2 Structure of purge unit
4 -31	3.6 Waste Ink Absorber
4 -31	3.6.1 Structure of waste ink absorber
4 -32	3.7 Air Flow
4 -32	3.7.1 Air flow
4 -33	3.8 Paper Path
4 -33	3.8.1 Overview of paper path
4 -37	3.9 Structure of Paper Path
4 -37	3.9.1 Structure of roll media tray
4 -38	3.9.2 Structure of feed rollers
4 -40	4. PRINTER ELECTRICAL SYSTEM
4 -40	4.1 Overview
4 -42	4.2 System Controller
4 -42	4.2.1 System controller components
4 -45	4.3 Engine Controller
4 -45	4.3.1 Engine controller components
4 -49	4.4 Carriage Relay PCB
4 -49	4.4.1 Carriage relay PCB components

Page	
4 -50	4.5 Head Relay PCB
4 -50	4.5.1 Head relay PCB components
4 -51	4.6 Motor Driver
4 -51	4.6.1 Motor driver components
4 -52	4.7 Power Supply
4 -52	4.7.1 Power supply block diagram
4 -54	5. DETECTION FUNCTIONS
4 -54	5.1 Detection Functions Based on Sensors
4 -54	5.1.1 Sensors for covers/roll media trays
4 -56	5.1.2 Ink passage system
4 -58	5.1.3 Carriage system
4 -60	5.1.4 Paper path system
	Part 5: MAINTENANCE
5 - 1	1. MAINTENANCE
5 - 1	1.1 List of Regular Replacement Parts
5 - 1	1.2 List of Consumables
5 - 1	1.3 List of Regular Maintenance
5 - 2	2. SERVICE TOOLS
5 - 2	2.1 List of Tools
5 - 3	2.2 Using the Cover Switch Tool
5 - 4	3. APPLYING THE GREASE
5 - 6	4. SERVICE PARTS
5 - 6	4.1 Service Parts
5 - 6	4.1.1 Keep all packages with the warning not to turn over.
5 - 7	5. DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY
5 - 7	5.1 Disassembly/Reassembly
5 - 8	5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts
5 -10	5.2 Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly
5 -10	5.2.1 Note on locations prohibited from disassembly
5 -11	5.2.2 Manual carriage movement
5 -12	5.2.3 Units required for draining the ink
5 -13	5.2.4 Outer covers
5 -16	5.2.5 Driving unit
5 -17	5.2.6 Ink tube unit
5 -21	5.2.7 Carriage unit
5 -27	5.2.8 Feeder unit
5 -28	5.2.9 Purge unit
5 -29	5.2.10 Ink tank unit
5 -31	5.2.11 Waste ink absorber
5 -32	5.2.12 Boards
5 -33	5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit
5 -33	5.3.1 Opening the caps and releasing the carriage lock pins
5 -34	5.3.2 Opening and closing the ink supply valve
5 -35	5.3.3 Moving the wiper unit
5 -35	5.4 Draining the Ink
5 -35	5.4.1 Automatic ink drainage
5 -35	5.4.2 Manual ink drainage
5 -39	6. ADJUSTMENT AND SETUP
5 -39	6.1 Adjustment and Setup Items
5 -39	6.1.1 System controller DIP switch settings
5 -39	6.1.2 Engine controller short connector settings
5 -39	6.1.3 Adjustment of head holder tilt lever

Page	
5 -40	6.2 Adjustment and Setup Procedures
5 -40	6.2.1 System controller DIP switch settings
5 -41	6.2.2 Engine controller short connector settings
5 -42	6.2.3 Adjustment of the head holder tilt lever
5 -44	7 TROUBLESHOOTING
5 -44	7.1 Outline of Troubleshooting
5 -44	7.1.1 Outline
5 -44	7.1.2 Notice for Troubleshooting
5 -45	7.2 Troubleshooting When Warnings Occur
5 -45	7.2.1 x Ink Check (the ink color is indicated by x) (W01000, W01001, W01002, W01003, W01004, W01005)
5 -45	7.2.2 W-Ink Full Soon (W01006)
5 -46	7.2.3 Memory Overflow (W0100C)
5 -46	7.2.4 Feed Limit (W0100F)
5 -46	7.2.5 Incorrect Media (W01021)
5 -47	7.2.6 W01030/W01031/W01032/W01033/W01034/W01035/W01036/ W01037/W01038/W01039
5 -48	7.3 Troubleshooting When Errors Occur
5 -48	7.3.1 E02000 Roll media end sensor error
5 -48	7.3.2 E02005/E0200D/E02016 Feed sensor error
5 -49	7.3.3 E0200A/E0200B/E0200C/E0200E/E0200F/E02010/E02015/ E02017/E02018 Media sensor error
5 -50	7.3.4 E02011 Roll media tray set sensor error
5 -50	7.3.5 E02400/E02401/E02402/E02403 Path mismatch error
5 -51	7.3.6 E02500/E02501/E02502/E02503/E02504/E02505 Ink empty error
5 -51	7.3.7 E02506/E02507/E02508/E02509/E0250A/E0250B Ink tank uninstalled error (during ink tank replacement)
5 -52	7.3.8 E02800/E02801/E02802/E02803/E02811 Printhead error
5 -52	7.3.9 E02804/E02805/E02806/E02807/E02808/E02809/E0280A/ E0280B/E0280C/E0280D/E0280E/E0280F Ink tank error
5 -53	7.3.10 E02812/E02A00/E02A01/E02A02/E02A03 Engine controller internal error
5 -53	7.3.11 E02B01 Tray sensor error
5 -54	7.3.12 E02B04 Upper cover sensor error
5 -54	7.3.13 E02B05 Right cover sensor error
5 -55	7.3.14 E02B06 Carriage cover sensor error
5 -55	7.3.15 E02D00/E02D01 Sensor error in purge unit

Page	
5 -56	7.3.16 E02D02 Carriage homeposition error
5 -57	7.3.17 E02D03 Feed motor error
5 -57	7.3.18 E02D04 Roll media feed motor error
5 -58	7.3.19 E02D05 Air flow fan error
5 -58	7.3.20 E02E01/E02E05 Carriage motor error
5 -59	7.3.21 E02E02 Roll media set sensor error
5 -60	7.3.22 E02E03 Pinch roller up/down sensor error
5 -61	7.3.23 E02E04 Roll feed sensor error
5 -61	7.3.24 E02E10 IEEE1394 error
5 -62	7.3.25 E02F00 System controller internal error
5 -63	7.4 Troubleshooting When Service Call Errors Occur
5 -63	7.4.1 Printhead error! (E04000)
5 -63	7.4.2 Waste ink full! (E04001)
5 -64	7.4.3 Scale read error! (E04002)
5 -65	7.5 Troubleshooting for Other Problems Indicated on the Display
5 -65	7.5.1 Incorrect Value: Check Value
5 -65	7.5.2 Offline: Load Roll Media
5 -66	7.5.3 Offline: Load Cut Sheet Offline: Remove Cut Sheet
5 -66	7.5.4 Offline: Open Upper Cover
5 -67	7.5.5 Offline: Open Tray
5 -67	7.5.6 Off line: Open Roll Tray
5 -68	7.5.7 Printer Setup: Install Phead
5 -68	7.5.8 Printer Setup: Ins. Ink Tank OK
5 -69	7.6 Troubleshooting for Problems Not Indicated on the Display
5 -69	7.6.1 Printer does not turn on
5 -69	7.6.2 Network is not connected
5 -70	7.6.3 Right cover does not open
5 -71	7.6.4 Printing problems (ink is full)
5 -72	7.6.5 Printing problems (ink is not full)
5 -72	7.6.6 Other printing problems
5 -74	8. CONNECTOR POSITIONS AND PIN ARRANGEMENT
5 -74	8.1 System Controller
5 -79	8.2 Engin Controller
5 -88	8.3 Carriage Relay PCB
5 -93	8.4 Head Relay PCB
5 -97	8.5 Motor Driver PCB
5 -100	8.6 Power Supply

Page	
5 -102	9. CIRCUIT DIAGRAM
5 -104	9.1 General Circuit Diagram
5 -108	9.2 System Controller
5 -123	9.3 Engine Controller
5 -136	9.4 Carriage Relay PCB
5 -145	9.5 Head Relay PCB
5 -148	9.6 Motor Driver
5 -151	9.7 Power Supply

III. ILLUSTRATION INDEX

	<i>Part 1: SAFETY AND PRECAUTIONS</i>	
1 - 1	Figure 1- 1	Moving Parts of the Printer
1 - 2	Figure 1- 2	Ink Passages
1 - 3	Figure 1- 3	Ink Mist
1 - 4	Figure 1- 4	Electrical Parts
1 - 6	Figure 1- 5	Printhead
1 - 8	Figure 1- 6	Installing the Ink tank
1 - 9	Figure 1- 7	Precautions Against Static Electricity
1 -10	Figure 1- 8	Capping Position
	<i>Part 2: PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS</i>	
2 - 1	Figure 2- 1	External View of Printer
2 - 3	Figure 2- 2	Printhead
2 - 3	Figure 2- 3	Ink Tank
2 - 4	Figure 2- 4	Roll holder
2 - 5	Figure 2- 5	Printhead
2 - 5	Figure 2- 6	Ink Tank
	<i>Part 3: OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS</i>	
3 - 1	Figure 3- 1	Front View of the Printer
3 - 2	Figure 3- 2	Rear View of the Printer
3 - 2	Figure 3- 3	Carriage Unit
3 - 3	Figure 3- 4	Internal Parts of the Printer
3 - 4	Figure 3- 5	Roll Media Tray Unit
3 - 5	Figure 3- 6	Required Space when Removing from Box
3 - 6	Figure 3- 7	Space Required for Installation
3 - 7	Figure 3- 8	Unpacking the Printer (1/2)
3 - 8	Figure 3- 9	Handles the Printer (2/2)
3 - 9	Figure 3-10	Unpacking the Stand
3 -10	Figure 3-11	Assembling the Stand
3 -11	Figure 3-12	Installing the Printer
3 -12	Figure 3-13	Installing the Printer (Desktop 1/2)
3 -12	Figure 3-14	Installing the Printer (Desktop 2/2)
3 -13	Figure 3-15	Removing Packing Materials
3 -14	Figure 3-16	Removing and Storing the Belt Stopper
3 -15	Figure 3-17	Connenting the Power Supply
3 -16	Figure 3-18	Installing Printhead
3 -17	Figure 3-19	Installing an Ink Tank
3 -17	Figure 3-20	Installing Order of Ink Tanks
3 -18	Figure 3-21	Specifying Language
3 -20	Figure 3-22	Connecting the Interface Cable
3 -25	Figure 3-23	Position of the Carriage During Manual Capping
3 -27	Figure 3-24	Remaining Roll Media Window
3 -28	Figure 3-25	Loading the Roll Media (1/5)
3 -28	Figure 3-26	Loading the Roll Media (2/5)
3 -29	Figure 3-27	Loading the Roll Media (3/5)
3 -29	Figure 3-28	Loading the Roll Media (4/5)
3 -30	Figure 3-29	Loading the Roll Media (5/5)
3 -30	Figure 3-30	Cutting the Roll Media
3 -31	Figure 3-31	Loading the Cut Sheet Media
3 -32	Figure 3-32	Replacing the Printhead (1/2)
3 -33	Figure 3-33	Replacing the Printhead (2/2)

Page		
3 -34	Figure 3- 34	Replacing the Ink Tank (1/2)
3 -35	Figure 3- 35	Replacing the Ink Tank (2/2)
3 -36	Figure 3- 36	Operation Panel
3 -38	Figure 3- 37	Change of Printer States
3 -38	Figure 3- 38	Correlation Diagram for Each Mode
3 -40	Figure 3- 39	Map of the Main Menu (1/3)
3 -41	Figure 3- 40	Map of the Main Menu (2/3)
3 -42	Figure 3- 41	Map of the Main Menu (3/3)
3 -45	Figure 3- 42	Pattern A (Image)
3 -46	Figure 3- 43	Pattern B (Image)
3 -48	Figure 3- 44	Status Print (Image)
3 -49	Figure 3- 45	Nozzle Check Pattern (Image)
3 -49	Figure 3- 46	Viewing the Software Version
3 -51	Figure 3- 47	Map of the Service Mode (1/3)
3 -52	Figure 3- 48	Map of the Service Mode(2/3)
3 -53	Figure 3- 49	Map of the Service Mode(3/3)
3 -54	Figure 3- 50	PRINT-INF (Image)
3 -55	Figure 3- 51	WARNING
3 -55	Figure 3- 52	ERROR
3 -56	Figure 3- 53	P-SETTING
3 -57	Figure 3- 54	I/O DISPLAY
3 -58	Figure 3- 55	NOZZLE (Image)
3 -59	Figure 3- 56	SCALE (Image)
3 -75	Figure 3- 57	Message Displayed when Updating the Firmware Version
3 -76	Figure 3- 58	ssw (Image)
3 -77	Figure 3- 59	ssw_head (Image)
3 -78	Figure 3- 60	ssw_ink (Image)
3 -79	Figure 3- 61	Service Information Access Software (Startup 1)
3 -79	Figure 3- 62	Service Information Access Software (Startup 2)
3 -80	Figure 3- 63	Service Information Access Software (Setup 1)
3 -80	Figure 3- 64	Service Information Access Software (Setup 2)
3 -81	Figure 3- 65	Service Information Access Software (Code Input)
3 -81	Figure 3- 66	Service Information Access Software (Access Information Image)

Part 4: TECHNICAL REFERENCE

4 - 1	Figure 4- 1	Printer Block Diagram
4 - 2	Figure 4- 2	Print Signal Sequence
4 - 5	Figure 4- 3	Conceptual Diagram of Nozzle Blocks
4 - 6	Figure 4- 4	Example of Print Drive Timing (Nozzle Array Bk in Forward Printing)
4 - 7	Figure 4- 5	Flow chart after Power On
4 - 8	Figure 4- 6	Power Off Flow chart
4 -13	Figure 4- 7	Printer Mechanical System
4 -14	Figure 4- 8	Schematic Diagram of the Ink Passage (for One Color)
4 -16	Figure 4- 9	Ink Tank
4 -17	Figure 4- 10	Ink Supply Valve
4 -19	Figure 4- 11	Carriage Unit (1)
4 -20	Figure 4- 12	Carriage Unit (2)
4 -22	Figure 4- 13	Nozzle Configuration
4 -23	Figure 4- 14	Nozzle Structure
4 -24	Figure 4- 15	Signal Contact Points
4 -27	Figure 4- 16	Purge Unit
4 -28	Figure 4- 17	Caps
4 -29	Figure 4- 18	Wiping Operation (Image)
4 -30	Figure 4- 19	Pumps
4 -31	Figure 4- 20	Waste Ink absorber

Page

4 -32	Figure 4-21	Air Flow
4 -33	Figure 4-22	Paper Path
4 -34	Figure 4-23	Roll Media feed Sequence
4 -35	Figure 4-24	Cut Sheet feed Sequence
4 -37	Figure 4-25	Roll Media Tray
4 -38	Figure 4-26	Manual Feed Tray/Paper Feed Unit
4 -41	Figure 4-27	Printer Electrical Section
4 -42	Figure 4-28	System Controller
4 -45	Figure 4-29	Engine Controller
4 -49	Figure 4-30	Carriage Relay PCB
4 -50	Figure 4-31	Head Relay PCB
4 -51	Figure 4-32	Motor Driver
4 -52	Figure 4-33	Power Supply Block Diagram
4 -54	Figure 4-34	Layout of Sensors for Covers/Roll Media Trays
4 -56	Figure 4-35	Layout of Sensors for Ink Passage System
4 -57	Figure 4-36	Cap Sensor Flag
4 -57	Figure 4-37	Pump Sensor Flag
4 -58	Figure 4-38	Layout of Sensors for Carriage System
4 -59	Figure 4-39	Media Sensor (Image)
4 -40	Figure 4-40	Layout paperpath sensor

Part 5: MAINTENANCE

5 - 3	Figure 5- 1	Using the Cover Switch Tool
5 - 4	Figure 5- 2	Apply the grease of upper cover
5 - 4	Figure 5- 3	Applying the grease of carriage
5 - 5	Figure 5- 4	Applying the grease of pinch roller unit
5 - 5	Figure 5- 5	Applying the grease of feed roller
5 - 6	Figure 5- 6	"Right side up" Sign
5 - 8	Figure 5- 7	Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts
5 -10	Figure 5- 8	Units Needing to be Drained of Ink When the Printer is Disassembled
5 -11	Figure 5- 9	Manual Carriage Movement
5 -12	Figure 5-10	????
5 -13	Figure 5-11	Opening the Right Cover
5 -13	Figure 5-12	Rear Right Cover and Rear Left Cover
5 -14	Figure 5-13	Upper Rear Cover
5 -14	Figure 5-14	Upper Cover
5 -15	Figure 5-15	Paper Release Lever
5 -16	Figure 5-16	Drive Belt (for driving the feed roller)
5 -16	Figure 5-17	Fan Support
5 -17	Figure 5-18	Joints
5 -18	Figure 5-19	Prevention of ink leaks
5 -19	Figure 5-20	Cable Mount
5 -19	Figure 5-21	Ink Tube Unit
5 -20	Figure 5-22	Joints of Ink Tube (W7200)
5 -21	Figure 5-23	Prevention of ink leaks
5 -22	Figure 5-24	Ink Tube Unit
5 -22	Figure 5-25	Carriage Unit
5 -23	Figure 5-26	Belt Stopper
5 -24	Figure 5-27	Prevention of ink leaks
5 -25	Figure 5-28	Lock Pin of Head Holder
5 -25	Figure 5-29	Removing the Head Holder
5 -26	Figure 5-30	Checking the Printhead Height Adjustment Lever
5 -27	Figure 5-31	Paper Guide B
5 -27	Figure 5-32	Removing the Right Platen
5 -28	Figure 5-33	Removing the Purge Unit

Page		
5 -29	Figure 5-34	Opening the Ink Tank Unit
5 -29	Figure 5-35	Joints
5 -30	Figure 5-36	Purge Lever
5 -30	Figure 5-37	Checking the Ink Supply Valve
5 -31	Figure 5-38	Waste Ink Absorber
5 -33	Figure 5-39	Opening the Caps and Releasing the Carriage Lock Pins
5 -34	Figure 5-40	Opening and Closing the Ink Supply Valve
5 -36	Figure 5-41	Overview of Manual Ink Drainage (single color)
5 -38	Figure 5-42	Top View of Ink Tank Unit
5 -38	Figure 5-43	Manual Ink Drainage
5 -40	Figure 5-44	System Controller DIP Switch Settings
5 -41	Figure 5-45	Engine Controller Short Connector Settings
5 -42	Figure 5-46	Adjusting the Head Holder Tilt Lever
5 -74	Figure 5-47	System Controller
5 -79	Figure 5-48	Engin Controller
5 -88	Figure 5-49	Carriage Relay PCB
5 -93	Figure 5-50	Head Relay PCB
5 -97	Figure 5-51	Motor Driver PCB
5 -100	Figure 5-52	Power Supply

IV. TABLE IND53EX

Page	<i>Part 1: SAFETY PRECAUTIONS</i>
1 - 5	Table 1- 1 TYPICAL HEAVY SERVICE PARTS
	<i>Part 4: TECHNICAL REFERENCE</i>
4 -10	Table 4- 1 PRINT MODES
4 -24	Table 4- 2 SIGNALS AND PIN NUMBERS OF THE SIGNAL CONTACT POINTS

This page is intentionally left blank



Part 1

SAFETY AND PRECAUTIONS

Page	
1 - 1	1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS
1 - 1	1.1 Moving Parts
1 - 2	1.2 Ink
1 - 4	1.3 Electrical Parts
1 - 5	1.4 Size and Weight of the Printer
1 - 6	2. OTHER PRECAUTIONS
1 - 6	2.1 Printhead
1 - 8	2.2 Ink tank
1 - 9	2.3 Handling the Printer
1 -12	3. PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING THE PRINTER
1 -12	3.1 Stored Data
1 -13	3.2 Firmware Confirmation
1 -13	3.3 Precautions Against Static Electricity
1 -13	3.4 Precautions for Disassembly/Assembly
1 -13	3.5 Self-Diagnostic Feature
1 -13	3.6 Disposing of Waste Ink
1 -13	3.7 Disposing of Lithium Battery

1. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1.1 Moving Parts

Be careful not to get your hair, clothes, or accessories caught in the moving parts of the printer.

These include the carriage and carriage belt activated by the carriage motor; a caterpillar unit that interlocks with the carriage and protects the ink tube and flexible cable and; motor-driven feed roller, purge unit and roll media tray activated by their own motors.

To prevent accidents, the upper cover of the printer is locked during printing so that it does not open. If the manual feed tray is opened during printing, the carriage moves to the right or left to return to the home position, and the carriage motor and feed motor are immediately stopped. If the upper cover is opened in the online/offline mode, the carriage motor, feed motor, and other driving power supplies are turned off.

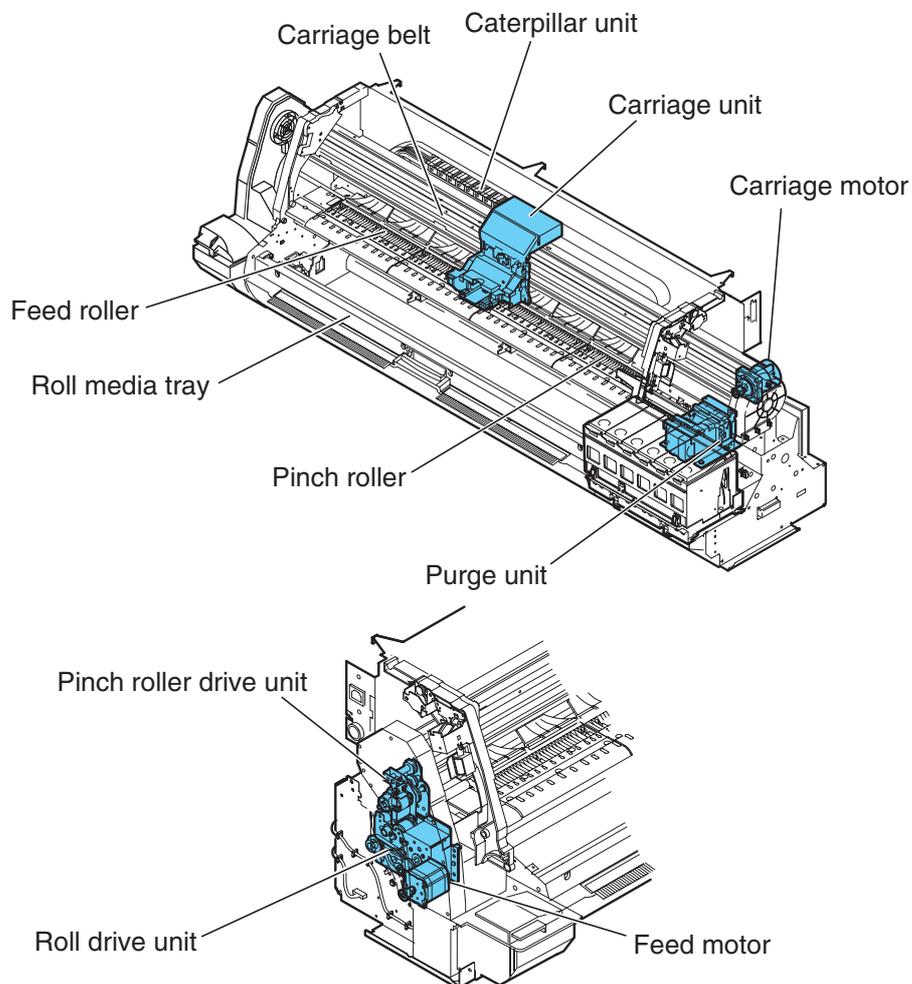


Figure 1-1 Moving Parts of the Printer

1.2 Ink

1.2.1 Ink passages

Be careful not to touch the ink passages of the printer or to allow ink to stain the workbench, hands, clothes or the printer under repair.

The ink flows through the ink tank unit, carriage unit, purge unit, maintenance-jet tray waste ink absorber unit and the ink tubes that relay ink to each unit.



Although the ink is not harmful to the human body, it contains organic solvents.

Black/Photocyan/Photomagenta/magenta inks

Glycerin 56-81-5, Ethylene glycol 107-21-1,

Diethylene glycol 111-46-6, Isopropyl alcohol 67-63-0

Cyan ink

Glycerin 56-81-5, Ethylene glycol 107-21-1,

Diethylene glycol 111-46-6, Isopropyl alcohol 67-63-0

Copper compound

Yellow ink

Diethylene glycol 111-46-6, Isopropyl alcohol 67-63-0

Avoid getting the ink in your mouth or eyes.

Flush well with water and see a doctor if contact occurs.

In case of accidental ingestion of a large quantity, call a doctor immediately.

Since this ink contains dyes, stains will not come out of clothing.

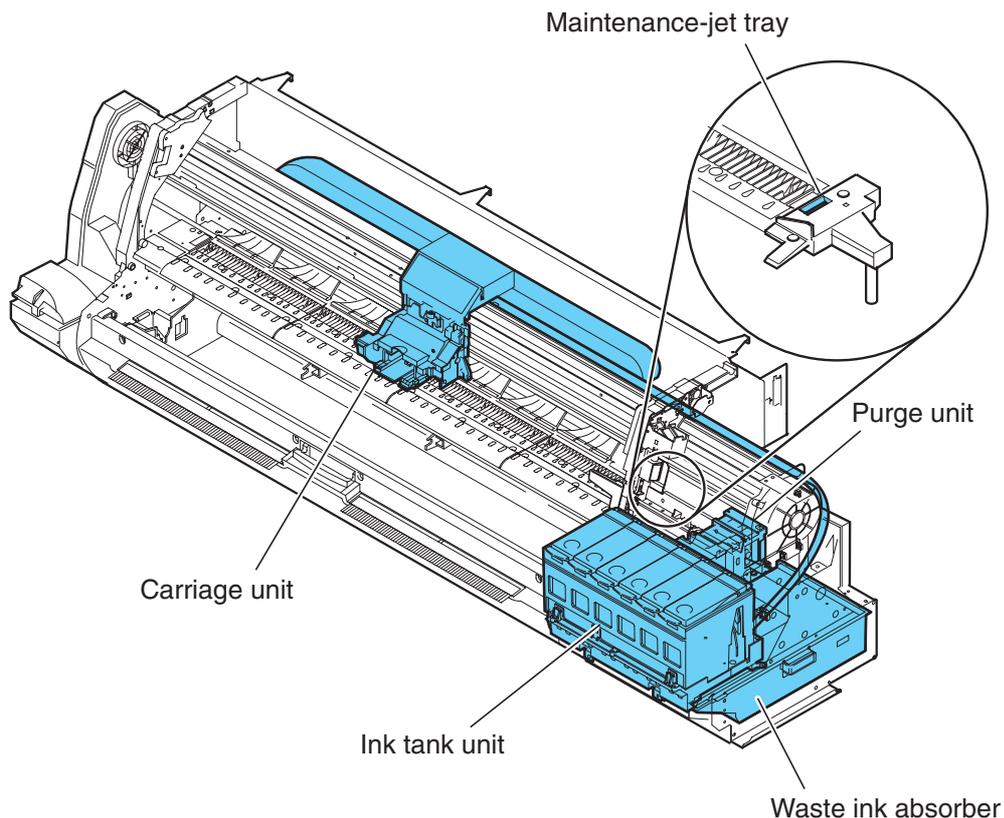


Figure 1-2 Ink Passages

1.2.2 Ink mist

Since the printhead prints by squirting ink onto the media, a minute amount of ink mist is generated in the printing unit during printing. The ink mist is collected in the printer by the airflow. However, uncollected ink mist may stain the platen unit, carriage unit, main rail unit, external unit, or purge unit.

These stains may soil the print media or hands and clothes when servicing the printer, wipe them off carefully with a soft, well-wrung damp cloth.

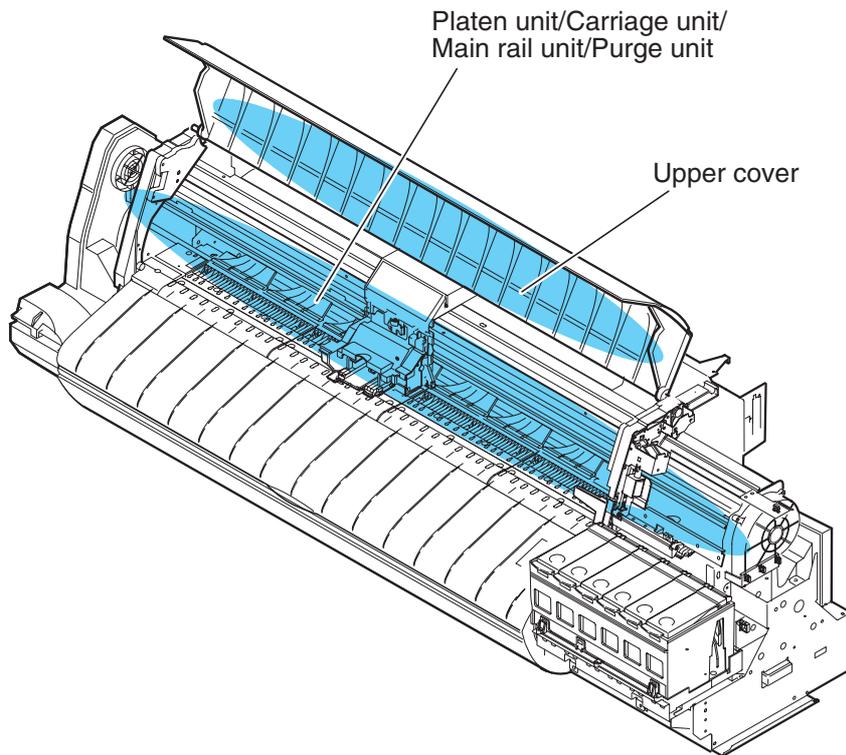


Figure 1-3 Ink Mist

1.3 Electrical Parts

The electrical unit of the printer is activated when connected to the AC power supply. At the rear of the printer are the system controller, engine controller, power supply, motor driver PCB, interface connector, and optional connector. The head relay PCB and carriage relay PCB are incorporated in the carriage unit, and the operation panel is located on the upper right cover.

When servicing the printer with the cover removed, be extremely careful to avoid electric shock and shorting contacts.

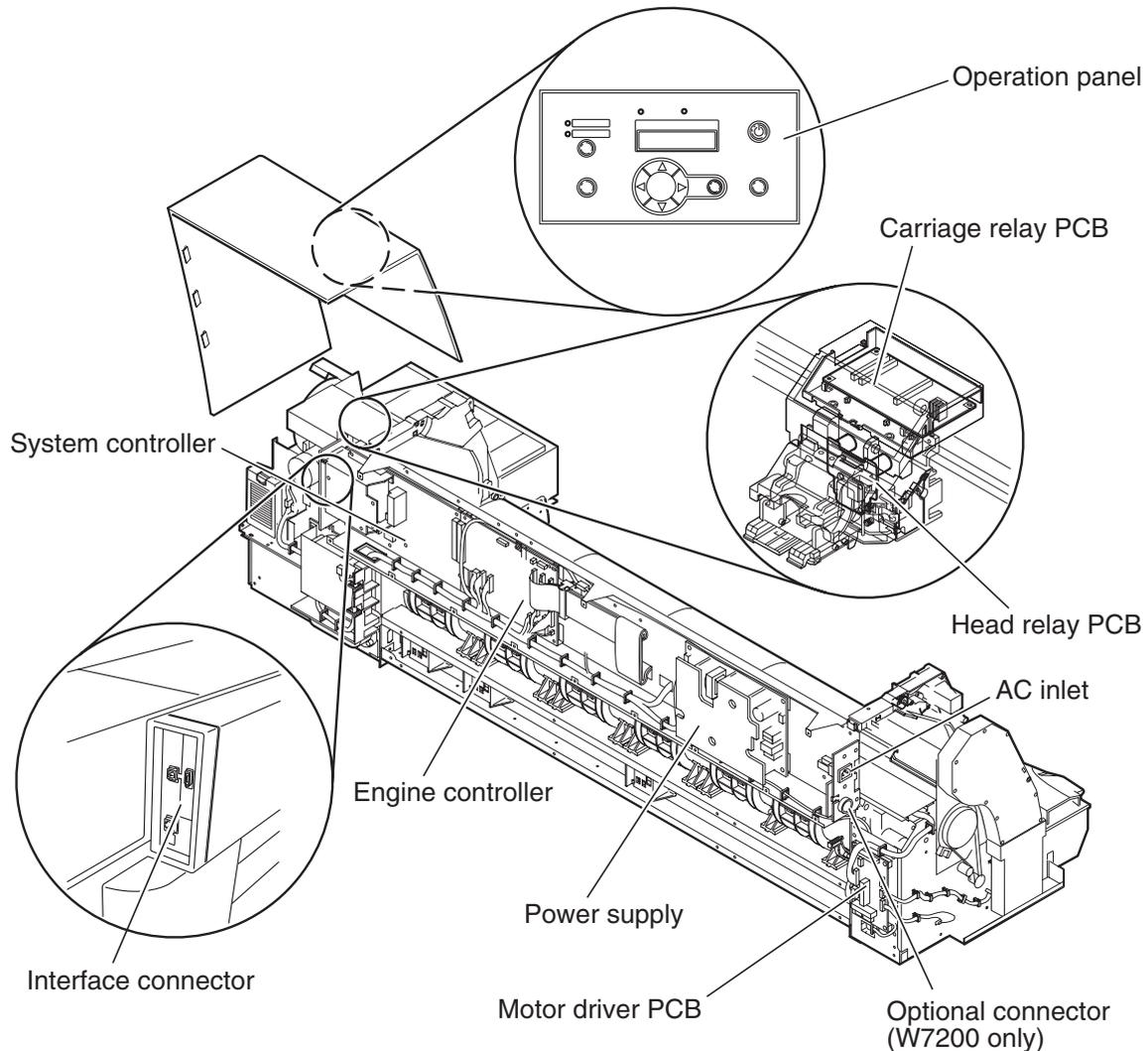


Figure 1-4 Electrical Parts

1.4 Size and Weight of the Printer

This printer has service parts which are large and heavy.

Be careful not to get your fingers caught when carrying the printer or setting down the parts during assembly or disassembly.

The printer stand sticks out of the body in front and behind. Take special care when carrying large or heavy parts.

TABLE 1-1 TYPICAL HEAVY SERVICE PARTS

Service parts	Dimensions of package box: width x depth x height (mm)	Weight (kg)
Roll media tray unit (W7200)	1065 x 372 x 160	9.5
Roll media tray unit (W7250)	783 x 372 x 160	7.5

2. OTHER PRECAUTIONS

2.1 Printhead

2.1.1 How to handle the printhead

Do not open the printhead package until you are ready to install the head.

When installing the printhead in the printer, hold the knob, and then remove the protective material and protective cap, in that order. Do not replace the protection cap once you have removed it from the printhead, since the cap may scratch the nozzles. To prevent the nozzles from getting clogged with foreign matter or dried ink, install the printhead immediately after you remove the protection cap. Also make sure to press down the locking lever of the printhead until you feel a click.

In addition, to prevent clogging of the nozzles, never touch the nozzle unit or ink supply unit of the printhead, or wipe it with tissue paper or anything else. Also, be careful not to touch the electrical contact.

Never attempt to disassemble the printhead or to wash it with water.



If the nozzles are clogged or purging operation is poor, white horizontal lines can appear in the printed output. If the problem is not resolved by cleaning operations, replace the printhead with a new one.

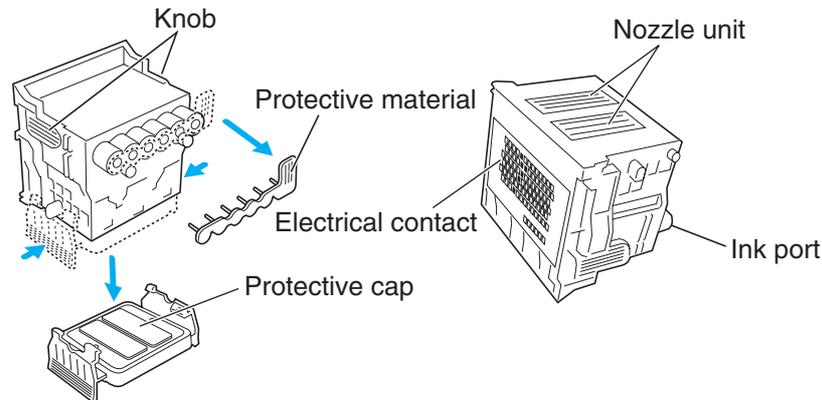


Figure 1-5 Printhead

2.1.2 Capping

The printer will perform the capping operation when printing has finished or during standby due to errors, in order to protect the printhead and avoid ink leakage. If the power cord is accidentally unplugged, turn the power button off, reconnect the power cord, and turn the power button on to confirm that the printer starts up properly and changes to the “Online” or “Offline” state, then power off the printer using the power button.



Improper ‘capping’ may cause clogged printhead nozzles due to dried ink or ink leakage from the printhead.

2.1.3 When the printer is not used for a long time

Keep the printhead installed in the printer even when it is not used for an extended period of time.



If the printhead is left uninstalled, printing failure may arise from clogged nozzles due to the depositing of foreign matter or dried ink when it is re-installed.

Even if the head remains installed, the nozzle may dry out and cause printing failure if the ink is drained for transport.

2.1.4 Conductivity of ink

The ink used in this printer is electrically conductive. If ink leaks into the mechanical unit, wipe clean with a soft, well-wrung damp cloth. If ink leaks onto electrical units, wipe them completely using tissue paper. In particular, if ink penetrates beneath the IC chips on the logic board and you cannot remove it completely, replace with a new logic board.



If electrical units are powered on when ink has leaked, the units may be damaged.

Never connect the power cord when ink has leaked on the electrical units.

2.2 Ink Tank

2.2.1 Opening the ink tank

Do not open the ink tank until ready to use.

To prevent foreign matter from entering the ink supply unit, install the opened Ink tank immediately.

2.2.2 Handling the ink tank

To prevent foreign matter from entering the ink flow path and causing ink suction and printing problems, never touch the ink port or terminal section of the ink tank.

When you press down the ink tank cover, the needle enters the ink supply unit, which allows ink to flow between the printer and ink tank.

Do not raise or lower the ink tank lever, except when replacing the ink tank.

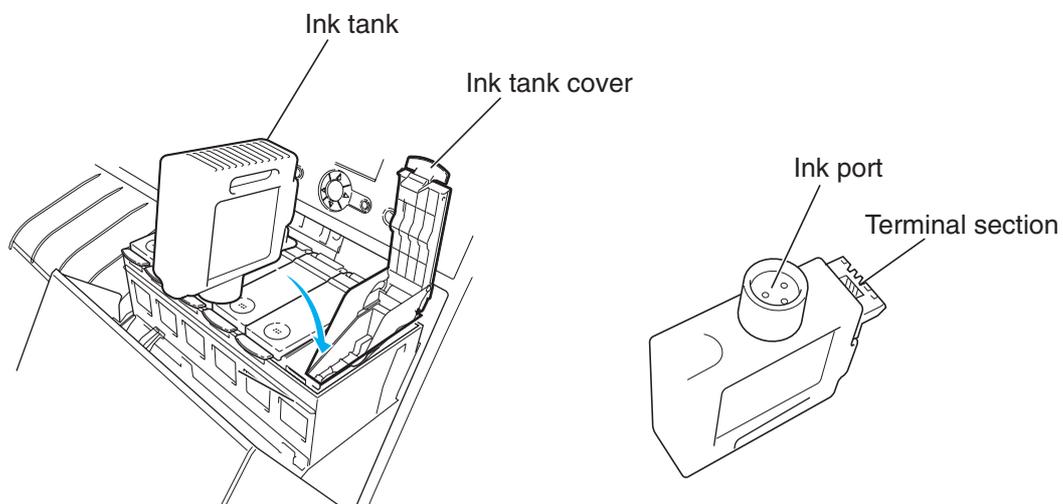


Figure 1-6 Installing the Ink tank

2.3 Handling the Printer

2.3.1 Precautions against static electricity

Certain clothing may generate static electricity, causing an electrical charge to build up on your body. Such a charge can damage electrical devices.

In particular, never touch the printhead contacts.

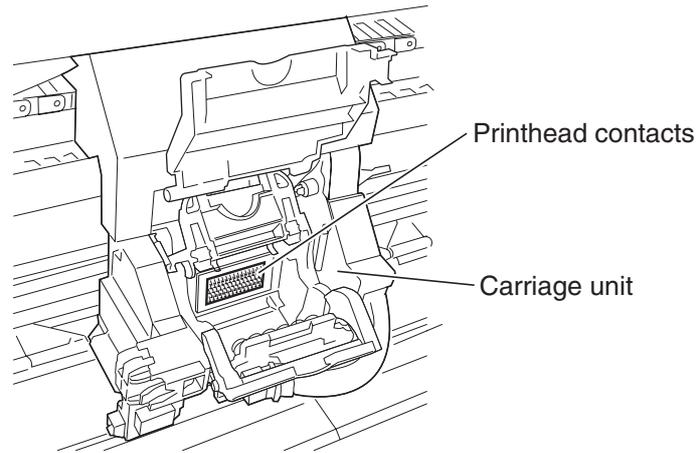


Figure 1-7 Precautions Against Static Electricity

2.3.2 Fixing the carriage

After printing, the carriage caps the printhead and uses the lock arm inside the purge unit to apply a mechanical lock.

When transporting the printer, use belt stoppers to secure the carriage at the carriage home position so that the carriage does not become separated from the lock arm. This will prevent damage and ink leakage during transportation.

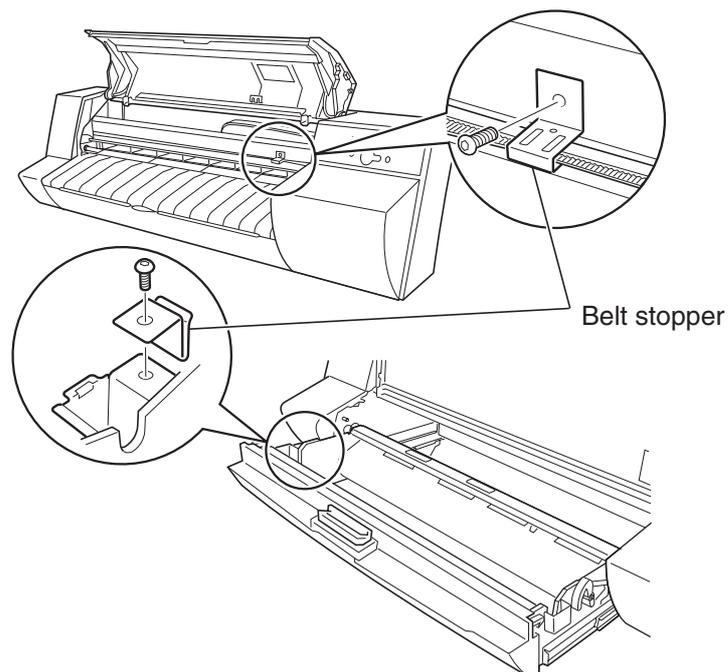


Figure 1-8 Capping Position

2.3.3 Replacing the waste ink absorber

When the waste ink absorber becomes full, an error occurs to indicate that the tank must be replaced.

The printer will not operate until the error is canceled.

Be careful that the waste ink does not splash when you remove the waste ink absorber from the printer.

When the waste tank absorbers are full, they hold approx. 10.5 kg in the W7200 and approx. 9.0 kg in the W7250.



After replacing the waste ink absorber in the printer, be sure to always clear the counter value of the waste ink absorber using the Service mode. The counter value of the waste ink absorber is stored in the EEPROM (IC428) on the engine controller. Therefore, when replacing the engine controller, be sure to refer to [Part 5: 5.2.12 Boards \(page 5-32\)](#).

2.3.4 Refilling the ink

After removing the ink in the printer according to the automatic or manual ink draining procedure to disassemble, reassemble, or transport/ship the printer, refill the ink as soon as possible upon completion of those tasks.

If the ink remaining in the printer after the removal has dried up, the ink deposits on the surfaces of the components may cause damage or abnormal operation.

3. PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING THE PRINTER

3.1 Stored Data

This printer counts the printing length, number of ink tank replacements, carriage driving time, number of cleanings, and the cutter usage, and stores this information in the system controller EEPROM (IC36) and in the engine controller EEPROM (IC428) as the service mode counter.

The counter holds important information for indicating printer usage status.

You can check the printer information in the counter by printing it in service mode or displaying it on the display.

Be sure to follow the precautions below when servicing the printer.

1) Repairing or replacing the PCB

Follow the "Each Controller Replacement Procedures" when replacing the system controller and engine controller.

2) After replacing the carriage unit

The information on the carriage driving time is generated from the carriage unit.

Initialize (clear) the carriage driving time information after replacing the carriage unit.

3) After replacing the purge unit

The information on the number of cleanings is generated from the purge unit. Initialize (clear) the number of cleanings information after replacing the purge unit.

4) After replacing the waste ink absorber

The information in the waste ink counter is generated from the waste ink absorber.

Initialize (clear) the waste ink counter information after replacing the waste ink absorber.



You cannot check the counter information once it is initialized (cleared). Be careful that you do not perform the initialization before checking the information.

Also, you cannot modify the counter information from the operation panel.



For the "Each Controller Replacement Procedures," see [Part 5: 5.2.12 Boards \(Page 5-32\)](#).

3.2 Firmware Confirmation

Firmware has been downloaded to each of a System Controller and Engine Controller. When replacing each board with the one with Service Parts, confirm that each firmware is the latest version. If it is not the latest version, please update it to the latest version.



For how to upgrade each board, please refer to [Part 3: 6. PRINTER SERVICING SOFTWARE \(Page 3-74\)](#).

3.3 Precautions Against Static Electricity

Certain clothing may generate static electricity, causing an electrical charge to build up on your body. Such a charge can damage electrical devices.

To prevent this, discharge any static buildup by touching a grounded metal fitting before you start disassembling the printer.

3.4 Precautions for Disassembly/Assembly

The Parts Catalog describes the disassembly/assembly procedures. See the Parts Catalog when assembling/disassembling the printer. The precautions for disassembly/assembly are described in [Part 5: 5. DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY \(Page 5-7\)](#).

3.5 Self-Diagnostic Feature

The printer has a diagnostic feature which analyzes printer problems (which may occur).

The diagnostic results will be displayed on the display and indicated by a light.

For detailed information, see [Part 3: 5.2 Error Indicators \(Page 3-63\)](#).

3.6 Disposing of Waste Ink

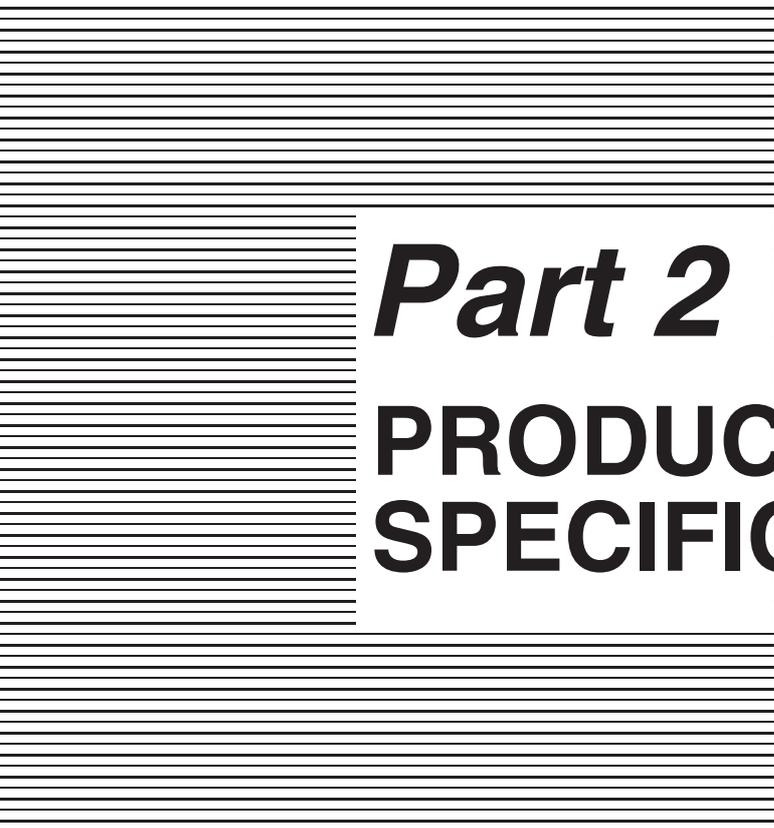
Dispose of the waste ink according to local regulations.

3.7 Disposing of Lithium Battery

Dispose of the lithium battery according to local regulations.



One lithium battery is installed in the System Controller of the W7200/W7250 is not a replacement part.



Part 2

PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

Page	
2 - 1	1. PRODUCT OVERVIEW
2 - 1	1.1 Product Overview
2 - 2	1.2 Features
2 - 3	1.3 Printhead
2 - 3	1.4 Ink Tank
2 - 4	1.5 Roll holder
2 - 5	1.6 Consumables
2 - 6	2. SPECIFICATIONS
2 - 6	2.1 General Specifications
2 -10	2.2 Interface Specifications
2 -13	2.3 Printer Driver Types

1. PRODUCT OVERVIEW

1.1 Product Overview

This printer is a BJ large format printer which is capable of high-speed, photo-quality printing on large-size paper up to 36 inches wide (A0 size with index lines) for the W7200 and up to 24 inches wide (A1 size with index lines) for the W7250. The W7200 is a stand-mounted printer, and the W7250 is a desktop-type printer. Both printers are capable of output to either roll media or cut sheet.

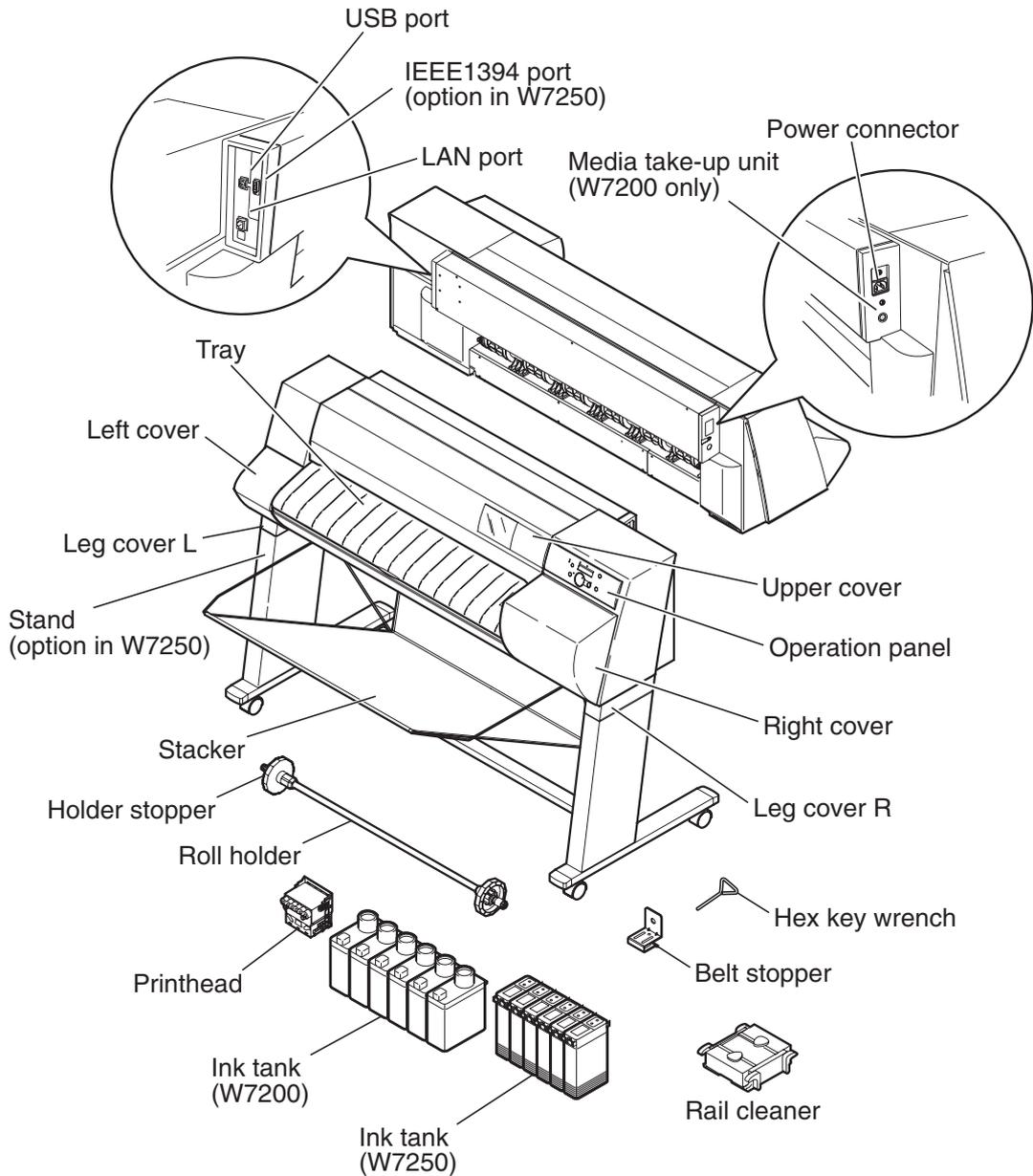


Figure 2-1 External View of Printer

1.2 Features

- 1200 x 600 dpi high printing resolution.
- High-quality photo printing with six color inks (Bk, PC, C, PM, M, and Y).
- Bi-directional printing control for high-speed printing
A one-inch (1280 nozzles) printhead with six rows of integrated nozzles is installed on each carriage.
- The printheads are completely separated from the high-capacity ink tank (330 ml for W7200 and 130 ml for W7250). Ink is supplied to each printhead from the ink tank through its own tube.
- Roll media can be fed automatically from the roll media tray.
- Cut sheets can be fed manually from the tray.
- Capable of feeding wide paper (up to 36 inches for the W7200 and up to 24 inches for the W7250)
- Capable of printing long paper up to 18 m in length
- Cutter is provided for automatic cutting of media.
- Convenient front panel operations, including feeding and delivery of media and replacement of ink tanks

1.3 Printhead

On the carriage, disposable printhead are installed, each of which contains six rows of integrated nozzles.

Each row consists of 1280 nozzles, which are arranged in a staggered pattern for printing efficiency.

If print quality does not improve despite carrying out cleaning, the printhead should be replaced with a new one. Generally, it is recommended that the print head be replaced about 12 months after you have opened the package. The number of printable pages for each model is shown below.

W7200: Approx. 1,100 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A0 size, 20% duty pattern for each color)

W7250: Approx. 3,000 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A1 size, 15% duty pattern for each color)

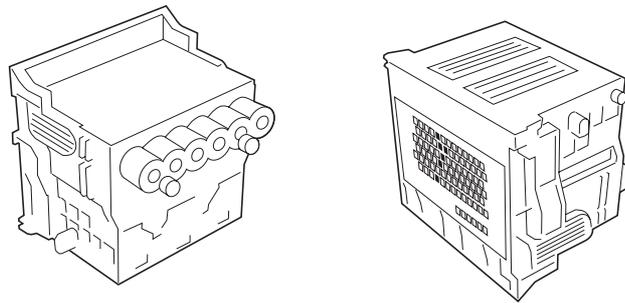


Figure 2-2 Printhead

1.4 Ink Tank

The ink tank is disposable.

There are six colors of dye based Black (Bk), Photocyan (PC), Cyan (C), Photomagenta (PM), Magenta (M) and Yellow (Y).

To install an ink tank, open the right cover of the printer and insert the tank. The printer features a mechanism by which only the correct color ink tank will fit in its given slot.

When the “No Ink” message is displayed, replace the ink tank with a new one. Also, the ink tanks should generally be replaced six months after you have opened the package.

The number of printable pages for each model is shown below.

W7200: Bk/Approx. 1,780 sheets, PC/Approx. 194 sheets, C/Approx. 882 sheets, PM/Approx. 171 sheets, M/Approx. 619 sheets, Y/Approx. 272 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A0 size, Bicycle (ISO No.5) pattern)

W7250: Bk/Approx. 1,148 sheets, PC/Approx. 170 sheets, C/Approx. 663 sheets, PM/Approx. 136 sheets, M/Approx. 502 sheets, Y/Approx. 213 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A1 size, Bicycle (ISO No.5) pattern)

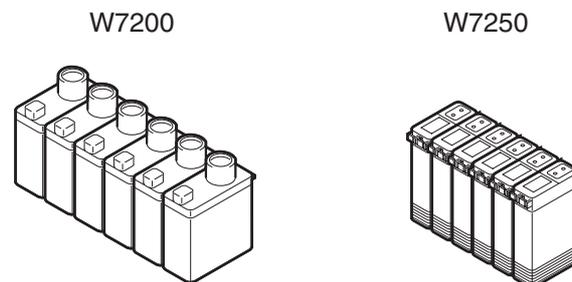


Figure 2-3 Ink Tank

1.5 Roll Holder

One roll holder can be installed in the roll media tray.

The roll holder for a 2-inch inner diameter paper tube is shipped with the printer.

The roll holder locks into the cardboard tube of roll media with an outer diameter not more than 130mm.

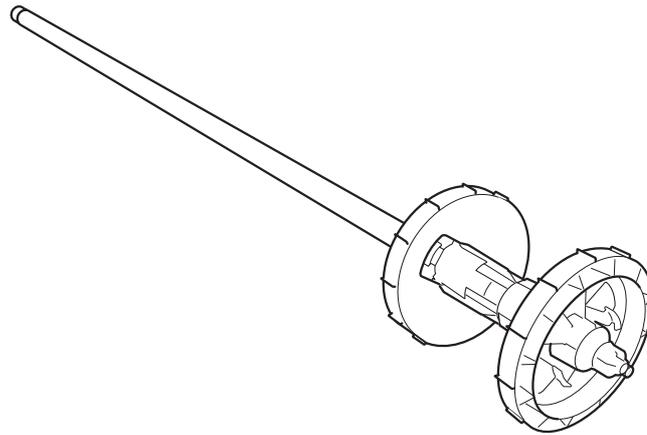


Figure 2-4 Roll holder

1.6 Consumables

1.6.1 Printhead

The printhead for this printer is a consumable. This consumable printhead is the same as the printhead shipped with the printer.

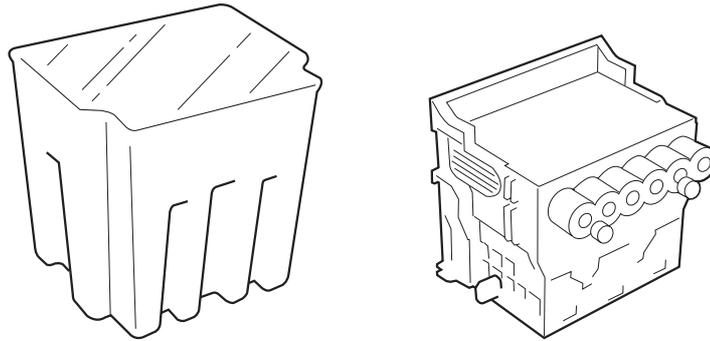


Figure 2-5 Printhead

1.6.2 Ink tank

The ink tanks are consumable and are available in six colors Black (Bk), Photocyan (PC), Cyan (C), Photomagenta (PM), Magenta (M) and Yellow (Y). Consumable ink tanks are the same as the ink tanks shipped with the printer except for the package. Each bottle has a life of six-months from the time the package is opened.

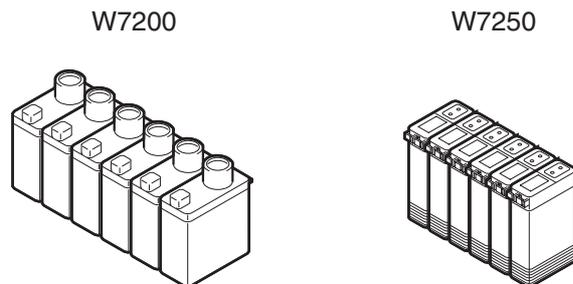


Figure 2-6 Ink Tank

2. SPECIFICATIONS

2.1 General Specifications

1. Type

W7200: Bubble jet printer (Stand type)

W7250: Bubble jet printer (Desk top type)

2. Feeding system

Roll media: Automatic feeding

Cut sheet: Manual setting

3. Feeding capacity

Roll media: one of the roll media tray (outer diameter: 130mm or less)

Standard roll holder (provided with the product): inner diameter of the paper tube: 50.8mm (2")

Cut sheet: 1 sheet

4. Delivery system

Delivers the media with its printed side up in the forward direction

5. Sheet delivery capability

W7200: 1 sheet (Delivered in stacker)

W7250: 1 sheet

6. Cutter

Automated replaceable cartridge-type cutter

7. Type of media

Plain paper, Heavy coated paper, Coated paper, Glossy paper, Glossy film

8. Supported thickness

80µm to 500µm

9. Media size**W7200**

Supported size of media	Width	Length
Roll media	297mm (11.69") to 917mm (36")	210mm to 18m*
Cut sheet	210mm (8.27") to 917mm (36")	210mm to 1600mm

* Outer diameter of roll: 130mm or less.

W7250

Supported size of media	Width	Length
Roll media	297mm (11.69") to 635mm (24")	210mm to 18m*
Cut sheet	210mm (8.27") to 635mm (24")	210mm to 1400mm

* Outer diameter of roll: 130mm or less.

10. Printable area

The entire area inside the margins detailed in section 11 below.

11. Margins

	Roll media	Cut Sheet
Leading edge	20mm	20mm
Trailing edge	23mm	23mm
Left edge	5mm	5mm
Right edge	5mm	5mm

12. Printing speed and direction*¹

*¹ Typical speeds when a JIS SCID No.5 (ISO400) that has been enlarged to W7200:
A0 full-size/W7250: A1 full-size is used as a test image.

Media type	Mode	Processing resolution (dpi)	Print resolution (dpi)	Print pass	Printing direction	Print speed* ²	
						W7200	W7250
Plain paper	Draft	150 x 150	1200 x 300	2-pass	Bi-directional	Approx. 2.0 min.	Approx. 1.5 min.
	Standard	300 x 300	1200 x 600	4-pass	Uni-directional	Approx. 6.0 min.	Approx. 3.5 min.
Coated paper	Draft	150 x 150	1200 x 300	2-pass	Bi-directional	Approx. 2.0 min.	Approx. 1.5 min.
	Standard	300 x 300	1200 x 600	8-pass	Bi-directional	Approx. 6.0 min.	Approx. 3.5 min.
	Hight	600 x 600	1200 x 600	8-pass	Bi-directional	Approx. 10 min.	Approx. 7.0 min.
Heavy coated paper,	Standard	300 x 300	1200 x 600	8-pass	Bi-directional	Approx. 6.0 min.	Approx. 3.5 min.
Glossy paper,	High	600 x 600	1200 x 600	8-pass	Bi-directional	Approx. 10 min.	Approx. 7.0 min.
Glossy film	Highest	600 x 600	1200 x 600	8-pass	Uni-directional	Approx. 15 min.	Approx. 11 min.

*² Speeds represent the time period from when the carriage starts moving until the final band is printed, excluding the data transmission time.

13. Emulation

None

14. Interface

Network (compliance with IEEE802.3 standards)

Compliance with USB specification 1.1 standards

Compliant with IEEE1394-1995 standards and P1394a (draft2.0)

15. Printhead/Ink Tank

Printhead and separate ink tanks

Printhead	BC-1400
Architecture	Six rows of integrated nozzles arranged in parallel One row of nozzles: 1280 nozzles arranged in a staggered pattern
Maximum number of sheets that a printhead can print	W7200: Approx. 1,100 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A0 size, 20% duty pattern for each color) W7250: Approx. 3,000 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A1 size, 15% duty pattern for each color)

W7200

Ink tank	BCI-1401 Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y
Ink type	Dye ink
Ink capacity	Approx. 330 ml
Maximum number of sheets that an ink tank can print	Bk/Approx. 1,780 sheets, PC/Approx. 194 sheets, C/Approx. 882 sheets, PM/Approx. 171 sheets, M/Approx. 619 sheets, Y/Approx. 272 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A0 size, Bicycle (ISO No.5) pattern)

W7250

Ink tank	BCI-1411 Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y
Ink type	Dye ink
Ink capacity	Approx. 130 ml
Maximum number of sheets that an ink tank can print	Bk/Approx. 1,148 sheets, PC/Approx. 170 sheets, C/Approx. 663 sheets, PM/Approx. 136 sheets, M / Approx. 502 sheets, Y/Approx. 213 sheets (Standard mode (8-pass, Bi-directional), A1 size, Bicycle (ISO No.5) pattern)

16. Detection functions

Presence or absence of media: Detectable	Media trailing edge: Detectable
Media width: Detectable	Skewed feeding: Detectable
Carriage position: Detectable	Presence or absence of printhead: Detectable
Presence or absence of ink tank: Detectable	Ink level: Detectable
Full waste ink absorber: Detectable	Roll media tray opened or closed: Detectable
Cover opened or closed: Detectable	

17. Noise during operation

Average during standby: 35dB (A) or less
 Average during printing: 58dB (A) or less (W7200), 55dB (A) or less (W7250)
 (In conformance with ISO9296 sound pressure level)

18. Environmental Conditions

Operating environment
 Temperature: 5°C to 35°C Humidity: 10% to 90% RH
 Environment where the printing quality is assured
 Temperature: 15°C to 30°C Humidity: 10% to 80% RH

19. Power source

AC100V (-15%) to AC240V (+10%)
 48Hz to 62Hz

20. Power consumption

	AC100V to AC240V
Max.	160W or less
Printing mode*	130W or less
Standby mode	30W or less
Average in the power-save mode	30W or less

* Average values when printed in the Standard mode (4-pass, Uni-directional).

21. Outer dimensions of the body

W7200: W1,063mm x D820mm x H1,175mm (including the stand)
 W7250: W1,276mm x D517mm x H464mm

22. Weight

W7200: Approx. 88kg (including the stand. Approx. 64kg is only the printer.)
 W7250: Approx. 51kg

2.2 Interface Specifications

2.2.1 Network

1) Interface format

Interface complying with IEEE802.3 standards

2) Data transfer

10Base-T/100Base-TX

3) Signal level

Input : threshold

100 Base-TX : turn-on +1000mV diff pk-pk
turn-off +200mV diff pk-pk

10 Base-T : max +585mV
min +300mV

Output:

100 Base-TX : +0.95V ~ +1.05V

10 Base-T : +2.2V ~ +2.8V

4) Interface cable

Category 5 (STP or UTP) cable, 100 m max.

Compliance with EIA/TIA-568A or EIA/TIA-568B standards

5) Interface connector

Printer side: IEEE802.3 standards, and compliance with ANSI X3.263 standards

Cable side: IEEE802.3 standards, RJ-45 type

6) Input/output signals and pin configuration

For details, see [Part 5: 8. Connector Position and Pin Arrangement \(Page 5-74\)](#).

2.2.2 USB (Universal Serial Bus)

1) Interface format

Interface complying with USB specification 1.1 standards

2) Data transfer

Control transfer

Bulk transfer

3) Signal level

Input:

Input sensitivity difference: +0.2 V (Max.)

Common mode difference: +0.8 V to +2.5 V

Output:

Static output High: +2.8 V to +3.6 V

Static output Low: +0.3 V max.

4) Interface cable

Twisted-pair shielded cable, 5.0 m max.

Compliance with USB standards

Wire materials AWG No. 28, data wire pair (AWG: American Wire Gauge)

 AWG No. 20 to No. 28, wire pair

5) Interface connector

Printer side: USB standards, series B receptacle

Cable side: USB standards, series B plug

6) Input/output signals and pin configuration

For details, see [Part 5: 8. Connector Position and Pin Arrangement \(Page 5-74\)](#).

2.2.3 IEEE1394 (optional in W7250)

1) Interface format

Interface complying with IEEE1394-1995, P1394a (draft 2.0) standards

2) Data transfer

Asynchronous transfer

3) Signal level

Input:

Differential input voltage:	S100	During negotiation period	+173 mV to +260 mV
		During data reception	+142 mV to +260 mV
	S200	During negotiation period	+171 mV to +262 mV
		During data reception	+132 mV to +260 mV
	S400	During negotiation period	+168 mV to +265 mV
		During data reception	+118 mV to +260 mV

Output:

Differential output voltage: +172 mV to +265 mV

4) Interface cable

Twisted-pair shielded cable, 4.5 m max.

Compliance with IEEE1394-1995 standards or P1394a (draft 2.0) standards

5) Interface connector

Printer side: IEEE1394 standards, 6-pin connector (socket)

Cable side: IEEE1394 standards, 6-pin connector (plug)

6) Input/output signals and pin configuration

For details, see [Part 5: 8. Connector Position and Pin Arrangement \(Page 5-74\)](#).

2.3 Printer Driver Types

The relationship between the required operating environment and drivers for this printer and the supplied software is shown in the table below.

	Windows XP	Windows 2000	Windows NT 4.0	Windows Me	Windows 98	Windows 95	MacOS X	MacOS 8.6/9.x
GARO Printer Driver	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙
LPR Port	-	-	-	○	○	○	×	×
USB Driver	-	-	×	- (*1)	○	×	-	-
IEEE1394 Driver	○	○	×	○	×	×	○	× /○
NetSpot Suite Service	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	⊙	×	×
NetSpot Job Monitor	△	△	△	△	△	△	×	×
NetSpot Console	△	△	△	△	△	×	×	×
Remote User Interface	△	△	△	△	△	△	△	△
Device Status Extension	△	△	×	×	×	×	×	×
Port Setting Tool	-	-	-	△	△	△	-	-

⊙ : Installation required

○ : Installation required for some interfaces

△ : Install if necessary

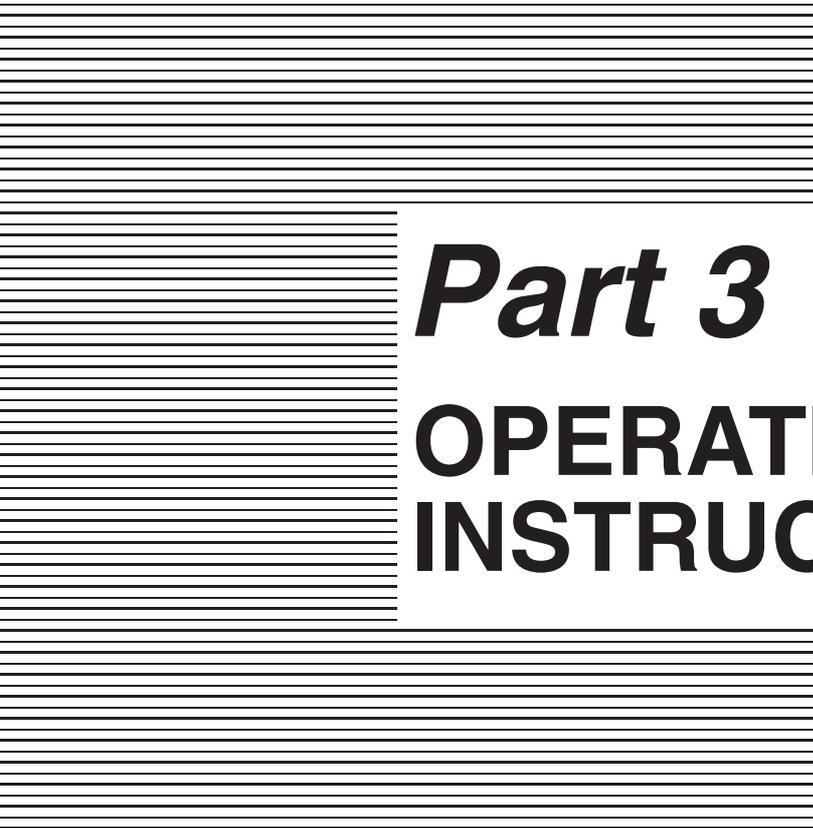
- : Installation not necessary

×

*1 : Only inf file is necessary



The abbreviation GARO displayed in the printer driver stands for "Graphic Arts Language with Raster Operations." GARO is a printer language for creating raster image data.



Part 3

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

Page	
3 - 1	1. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF COMPONENTS
3 - 1	1.1 Names and Functions of Components
3 - 5	2. PRINTER SETUP
3 - 5	2.1 Installation
3 -21	3. TRANSPORTING THE PRINTER
3 -21	3.1 Transporting the Printer
3 -26	3.2 Reinstalling the Printer
3 -27	4. OPERATION
3 -27	4.1 User Replacements
3 -36	4.2 Operation Panel
3 -38	4.3 Change of Printer Status
3 -39	4.4 Main Menu
3 -50	5. PRINTER SERVICING FUNCTIONS
3 -50	5.1 Service Mode
3 -63	5.2 Error Indicators
3 -74	6. Printer Service Software
3 -74	6.1 Overview of Service Software
3 -74	6.2 Firmware version update software
3 -76	6.3 Service Information Access Software

1. NAMES AND FUNCTIONS OF COMPONENTS

1.1 Names and Functions of Components

The names and functions of the printer parts are shown below.

1.1.1 Front

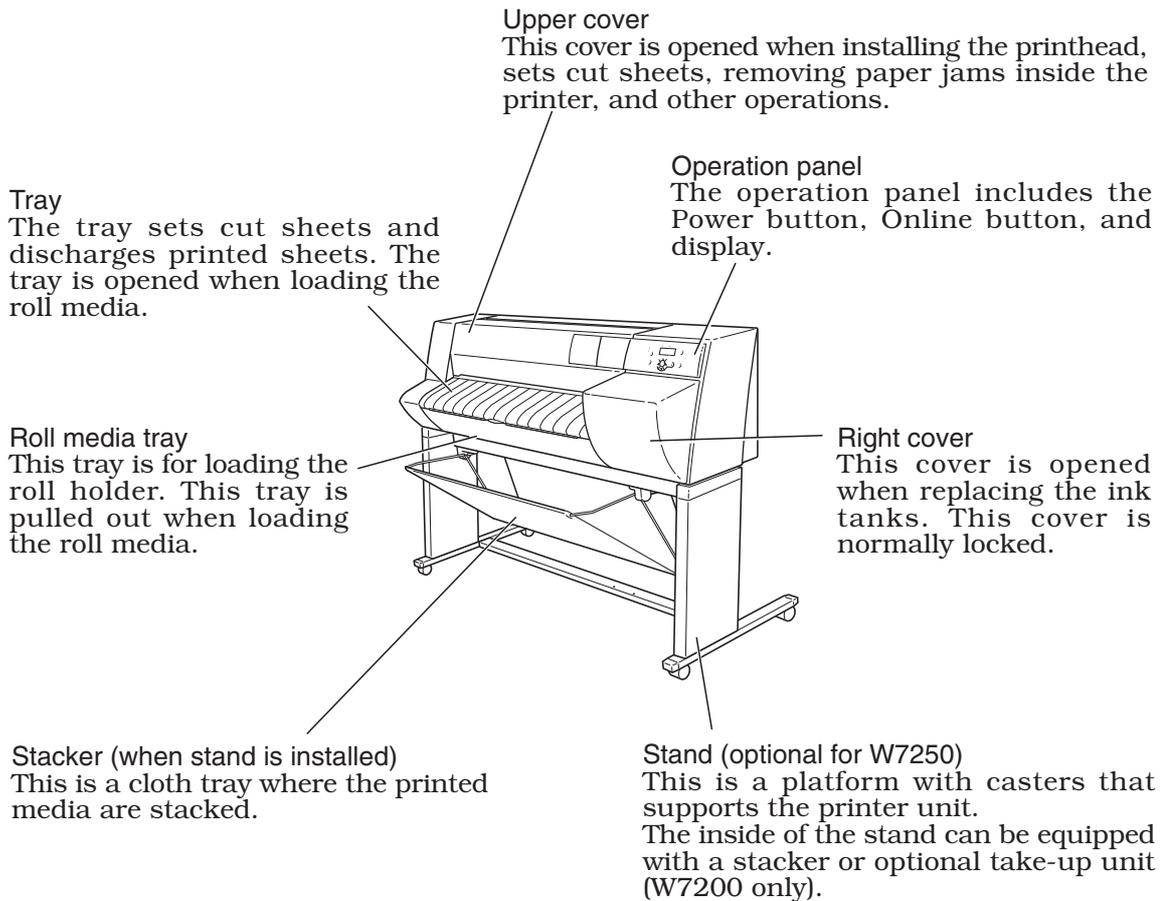


Figure 3-1 Front View of the Printer

1.1.2 Rear

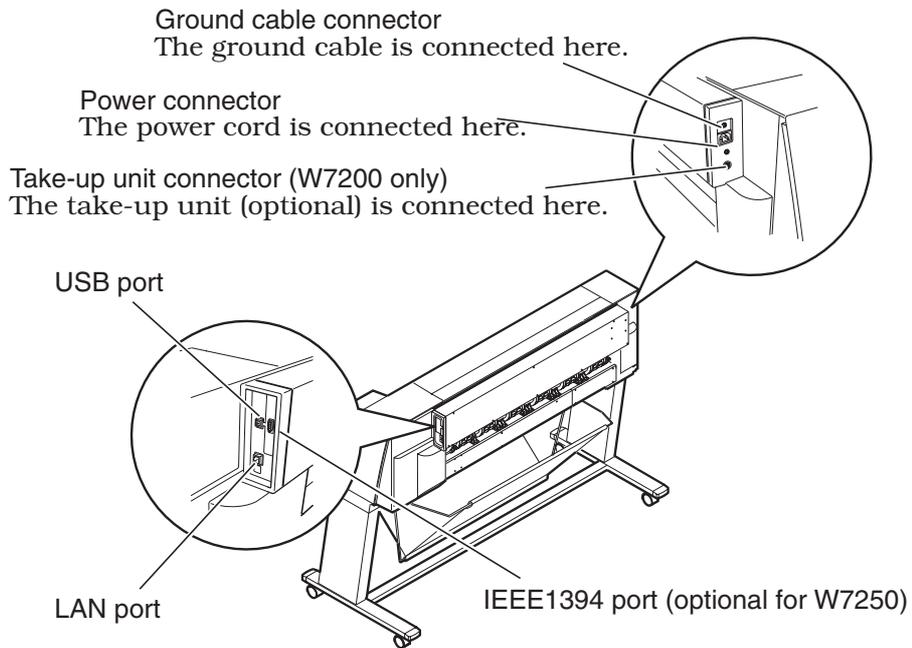


Figure 3-2 Rear View of the Printer

1.1.3 Carriage unit

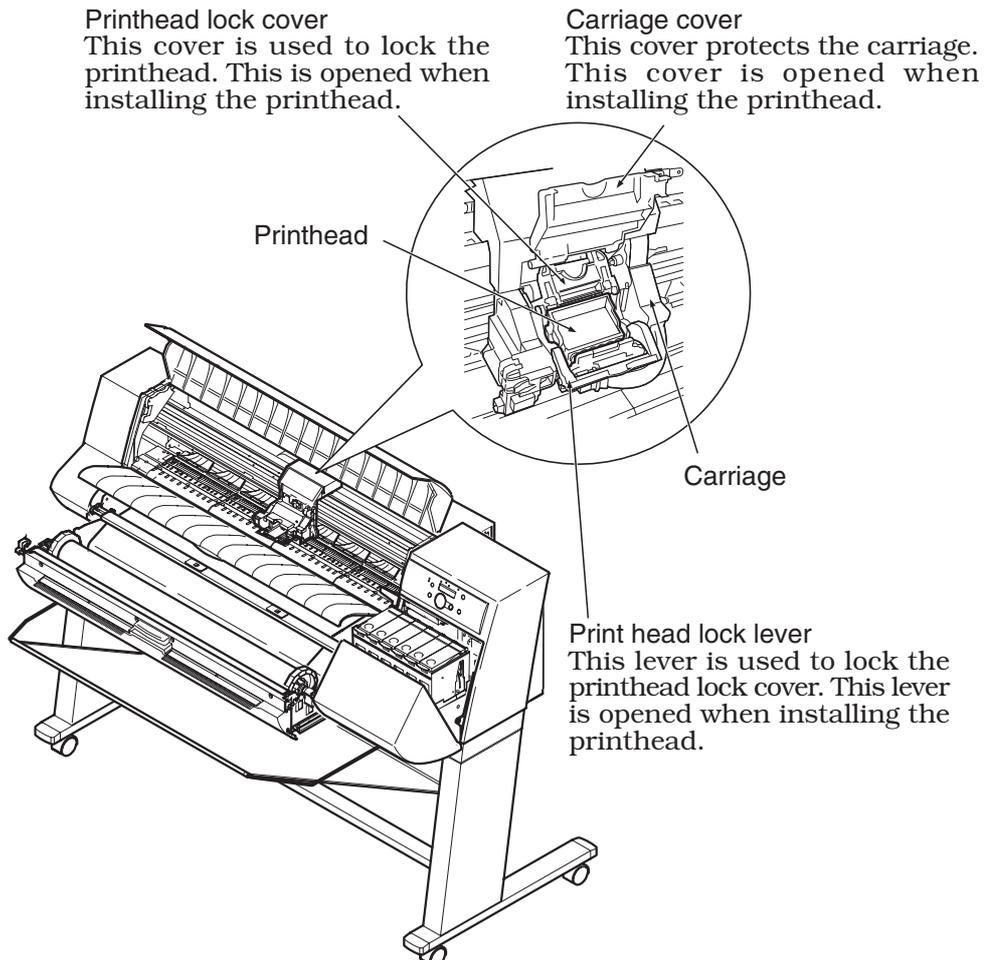


Figure 3-3 Carriage Unit

1.1.4 Internal part

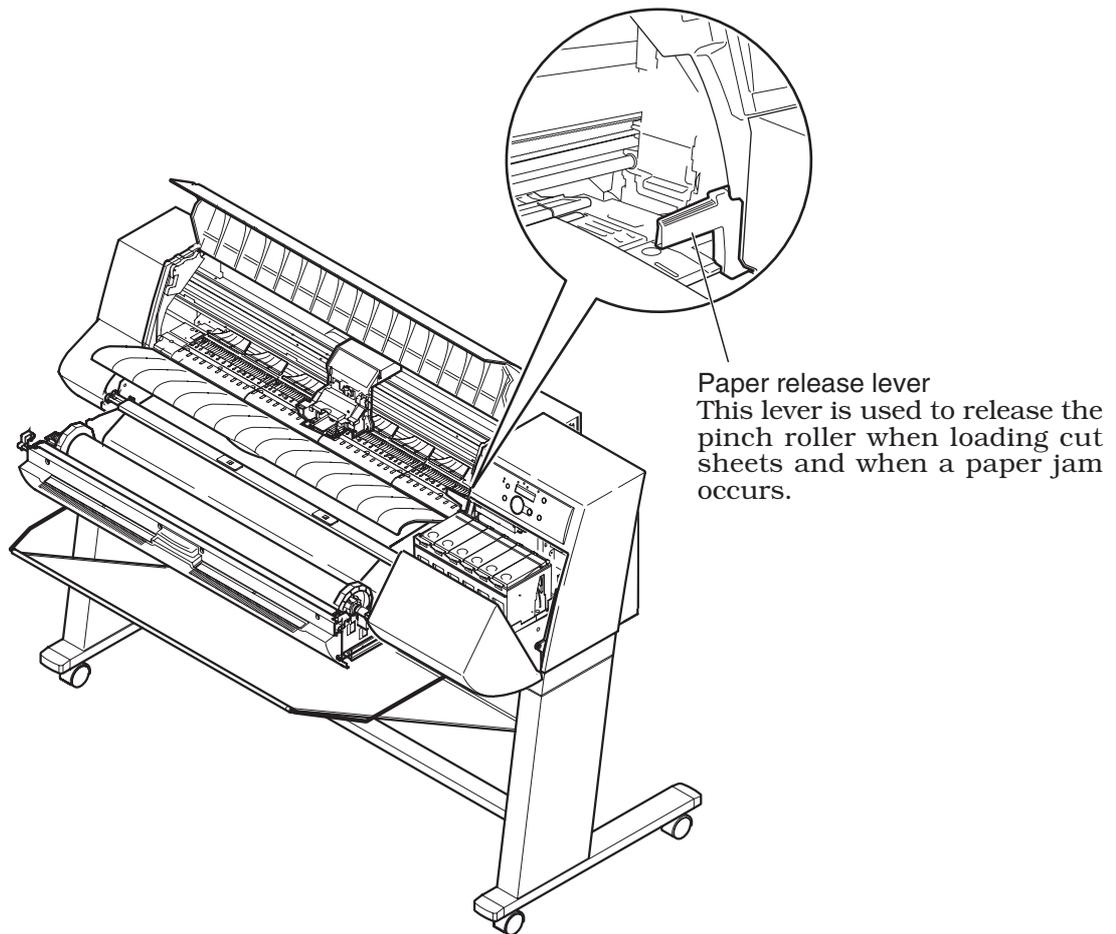


Figure 3-4 Internal Parts of the Printer

1.1.5 Roll media tray unit

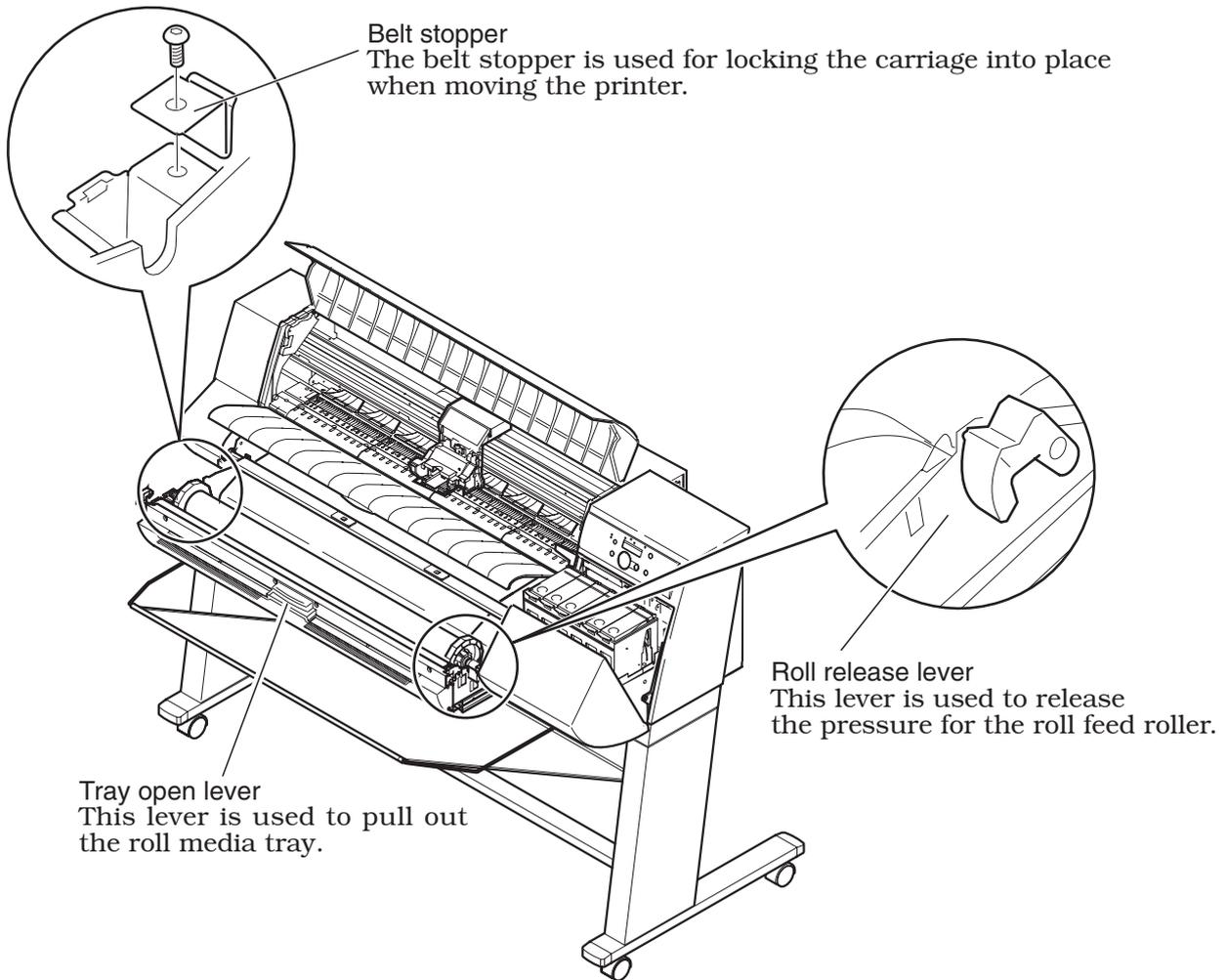


Figure 3-5 Roll Media Tray Unit

2. PRINTER SETUP

2.1 Installation

In addition to the printer unit, an accessory kit is needed when installing the printer. The kit also includes regional components.



Take the following precautions when installing the printer.

- Always hold the handles when lifting and moving the printer. Never hold the printer by any other parts.
- The printer unit weighs approximately 64 kg for the W7200 and approximately 51 kg for the W7250. At least two people are required to unpack the printer and take it out from the box.

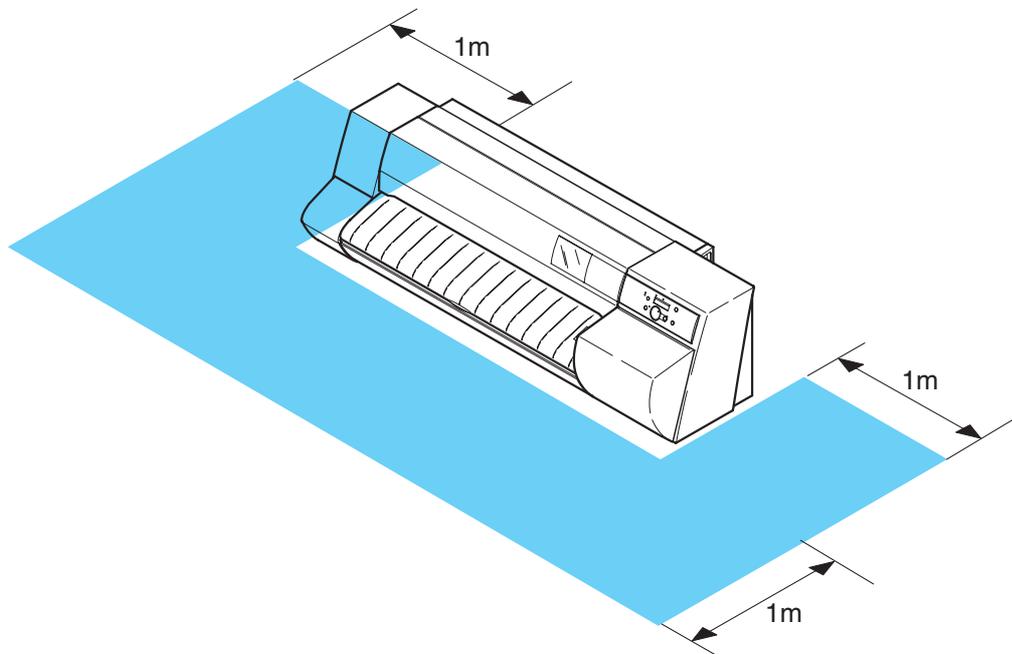
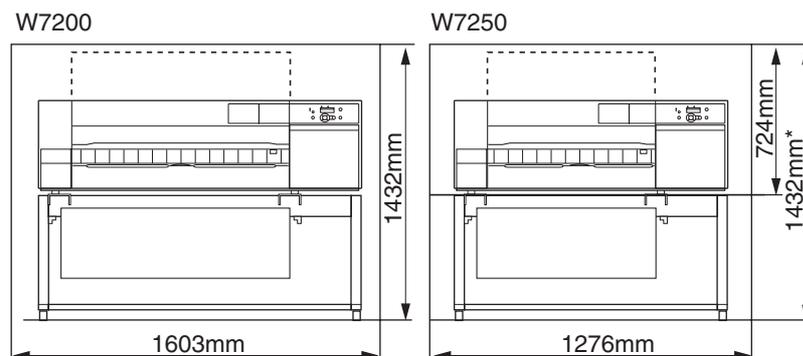


Figure 3-6 Required Space when Removing from Box

2.1.1 Installation environment

Leave a clear space around the printer to ensure easy operation and maintenance.

Height and Width



Depth

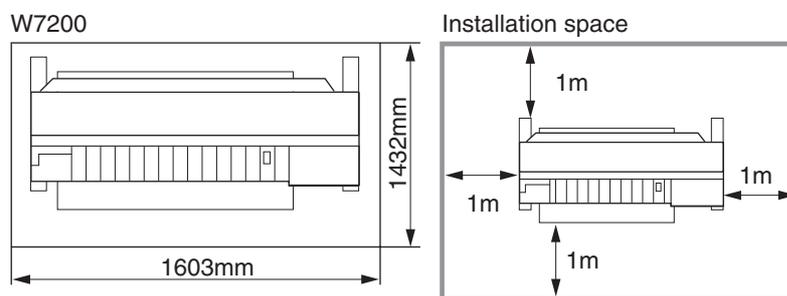


Figure 3-7 Space Required for Installation



Follow the precautions below when choosing the location.

- Do not subject the printer to extremely high or low temperature. Also avoid extremely high or low humidity. The operating temperature is 5°C - 35°C with humidity 10% - 90% RH.
- Avoid direct sunlight. Use curtains if there is no alternative.
- Avoid abrupt changes in temperature.
- Avoid dusty locations.
- Avoid placing it in the vicinity of an air conditioner or an electric fan. Their air currents may damage the printer.
- Avoid places prone to vibrations.
- Install the printer unit on a stable floor or table which safely supports the printer weight (approx. 88 kg for the W7200 (including stand) and approx. 51 kg for the W7250) and will not subject the printer to vibrations. Do not install the printer on a carpeted floor, table with weak support, or other surface where it cannot remain level and stable. Doing so can harm the print quality. If the printer must be installed on a weak surface due to unavoidable circumstances, install it on top of a sturdy plate (such as an iron plate) which is broad enough to accommodate the printer.

2.1.2 Unpacking

a) Unpacking the printer

1) Open the package and make sure that the items below have been included:

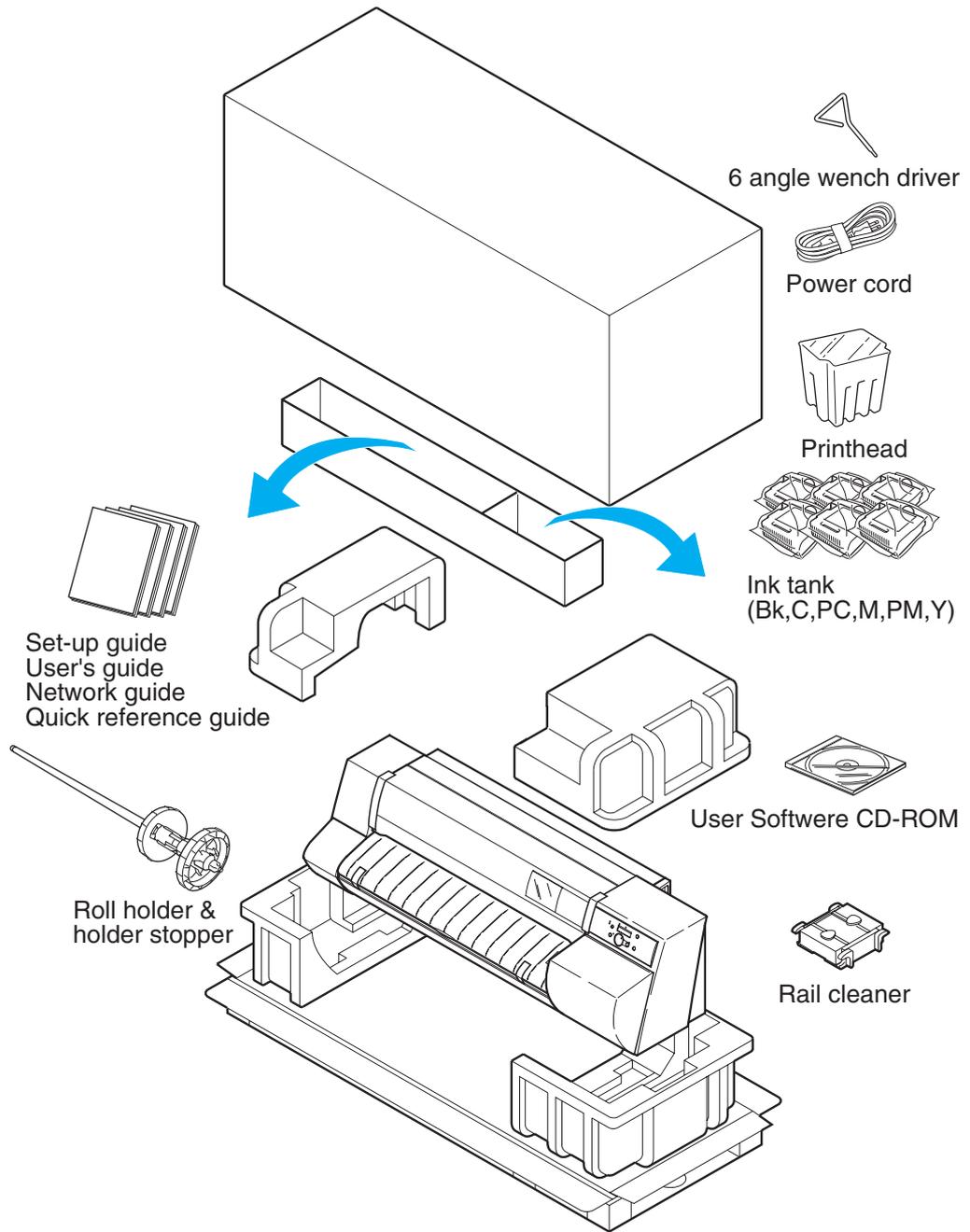


Figure 3-8 Unpacking the Printer (1/2)



Follow the precautions below when unpacking the printer.

- Always hold the handles when lifting and moving the printer. Holding the printer by its cover can deform the cover.

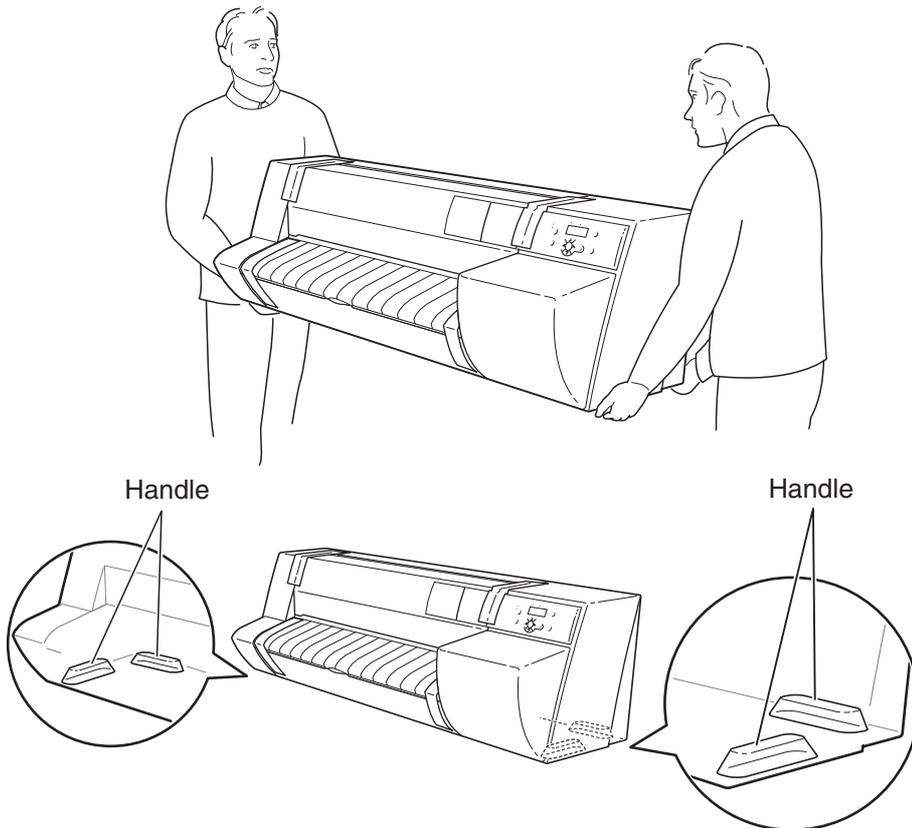


Figure 3-9 Handles the Printer (2/2)

b) Unpacking the accessory kit

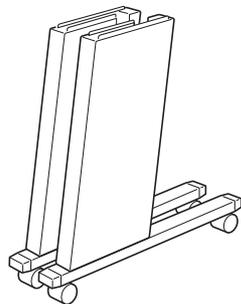
Unpack the accessory kit and make sure that the items below have been included: Hex key wrench, Power cord, Printhead, Ink tank, Set-up Guide, User's guide, Network guide, Quick reference guide, User software CD-ROM, and Rail cleaner.



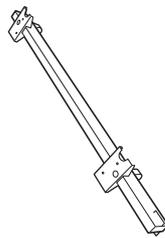
- Other types of power cords are also available. Make sure to use the correct type of accessory kit in accordance with the region (country) where the printer is installed.
- A interface cable is needed to connect the printer to a computer.

c) Unpacking the stand (optional for W7250)

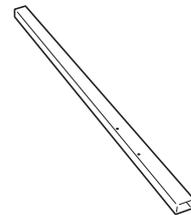
Unpack the stand, and check that the items shown below are provided.



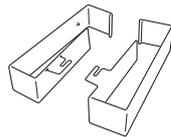
Stand leg L,R



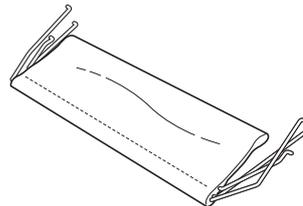
Stand upper stay



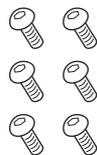
Stand lower stay



Leg cover L,R



Stacker



Hex screw (16 pcs.)



Hex key wrench



Anti-slip sheet (2 pcs)

Figure 3-10 Unpacking the Stand

2.1.3 Assembling the stand (optional for W7250)

The stacker, leg cover L, leg cover R, anti-slip sheets (2) are used after the printer is installed on the stand.

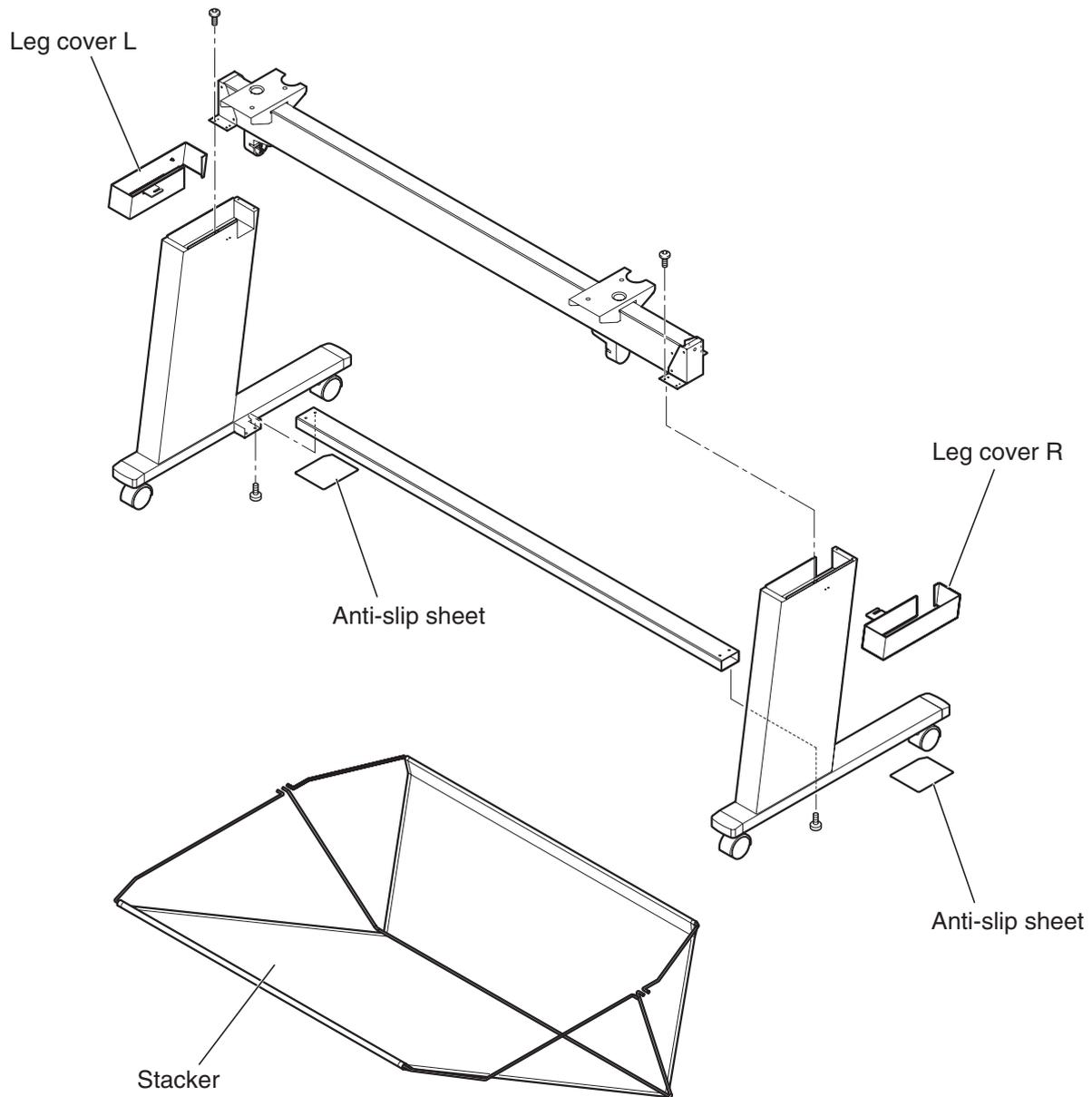


Figure 3-11 Assembling the Stand

2.1.4 Installing the printer

Place the printer on a stand or table.

- 1) Grasp the handles on the bottom of the printer, and place the printer on the stand or table.

If placing on a stand, proceed with the following steps.

- 2) Use the screws supplied with the stand to secure the printer to the stand.
- 3) Mount the right cover and left cover.

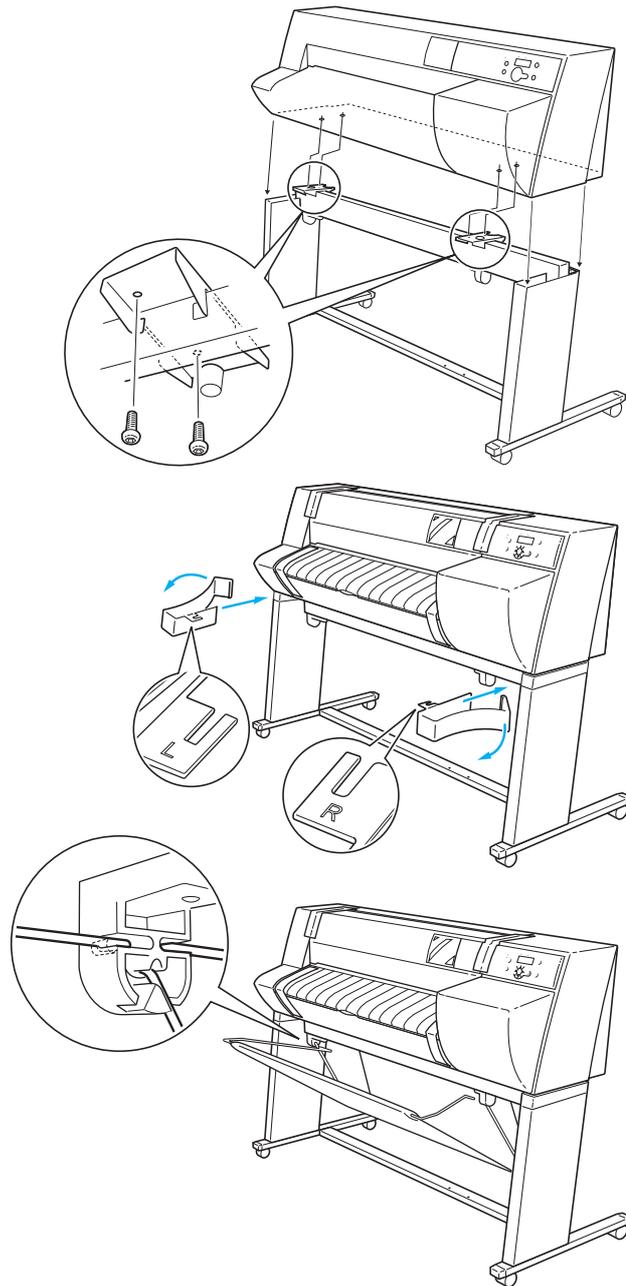


Figure 3-12 Installing the Printer



Always hold the handles when lifting and moving the printer. Holding the printer by its cover can deform the cover.

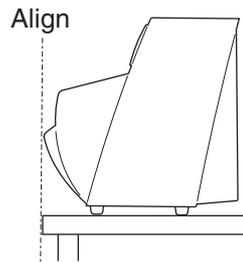


Figure 3-13 Installing the Printer (Desktop 1/2)



- For the W7250, the printer unit itself weighs approximately 51 kg. When installing on a table or other location, be sure to select a flat surface with adequate strength to support the printer. Installing on unstable locations or slanted surfaces can cause the printer to fall over, resulting in an injury or damage to the printer.
- Do not press down on the roll media tray or lean on it when it is pulled out. This can cause the printer to fall over, resulting in an injury or damage to the printer.



In this printer, the roll media can develop slack due to the rewinding operation and touch the installation location. As a result, if the surface of the installation location has a rough texture or has dust and dirt on it, the printing surface for certain types of roll media can become soiled. In this case, affix regular or other types of paper (except for film-type paper) under the printer as shown in the figure below.

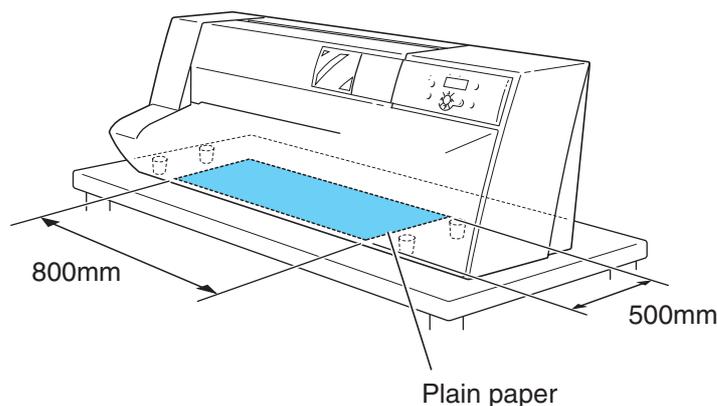


Figure 3-14 Installing the Printer (Desktop 2/2)

2.1.5 Removing packing materials

After installing the printer on a stand or table, remove all of the packing materials attached to the printer.

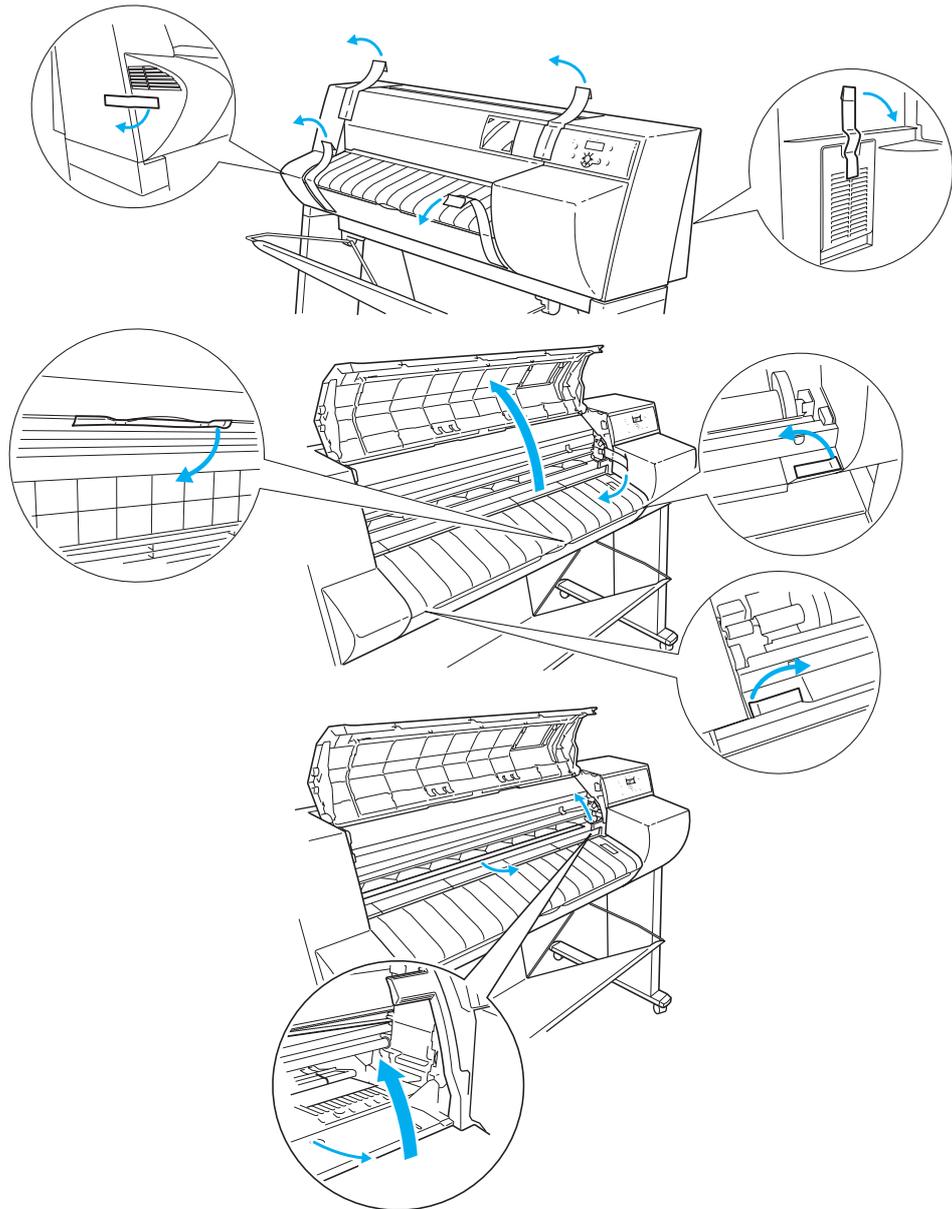


Figure 3-15 Removing Packing Materials

2.1.6 Removing the belt stopper

Remove the belt stopper (one screw).

The belt stopper is needed when transporting the printer, and so store the belt stopper by screwing it to the left side of the roll media tray.



When removing the belt stopper, be careful not to bring it into contact with the linear scale. If the linear scale is scratched, the printer may not operate properly.

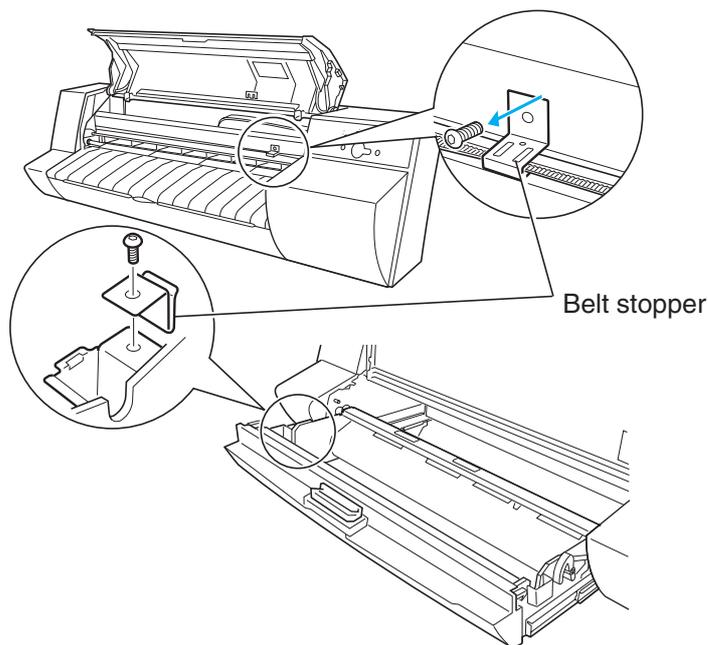


Figure 3-16 Removing and Storing the Belt Stopper



To prevent ink leakage and damage to the printhead, be sure to always use the belt stopper to secure the carriage before moving the printer.

2.1.7 Connecting the power supply

- 1) Connect the power cord and the ground wire to the printer.
- 2) Connect the ground wire to a ground terminal. Connect the power plug to an electrical outlet.

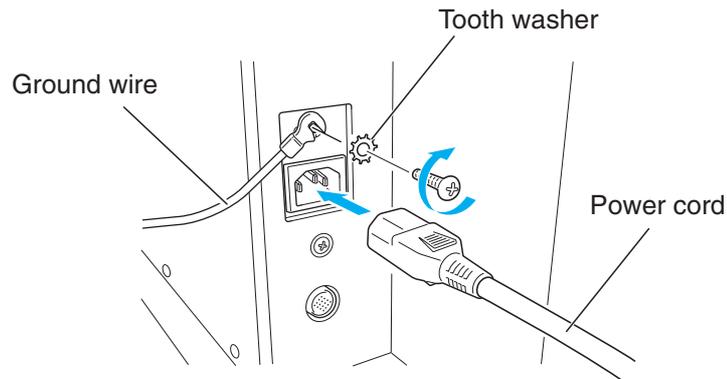


Figure 3-17 Connecting the Power Supply



- Be sure to connect the ground wire if a groundless power cord is being used. Failure to connect the ground wire can result in electric shocks.
- You may connect the ground wire to:
 1. Grounding terminals of electrical outlets.
 2. Terminals used to make a connection to a ground.

2.1.8 Installing the printhead

Follow the steps below to install the printhead.

- 1) Check that all covers are closed.
- 2) Press the Power button to turn on the printer.
- 3) Open the upper cover.
- 4) Remove the tape from the carriage cover and cutter.
- 5) Open the carriage cover, printhead lock lever, and printhead lock cover until they stop.
- 6) Open the package containing the printhead.
- 7) Remove the orange protective cap on the printhead.
- 8) Install the printhead in the carriage.
- 9) Close the printhead lock cover, printhead lock lever, and the carriage cover, in that order, and then lock the printhead into position.
- 10) Close the upper cover.

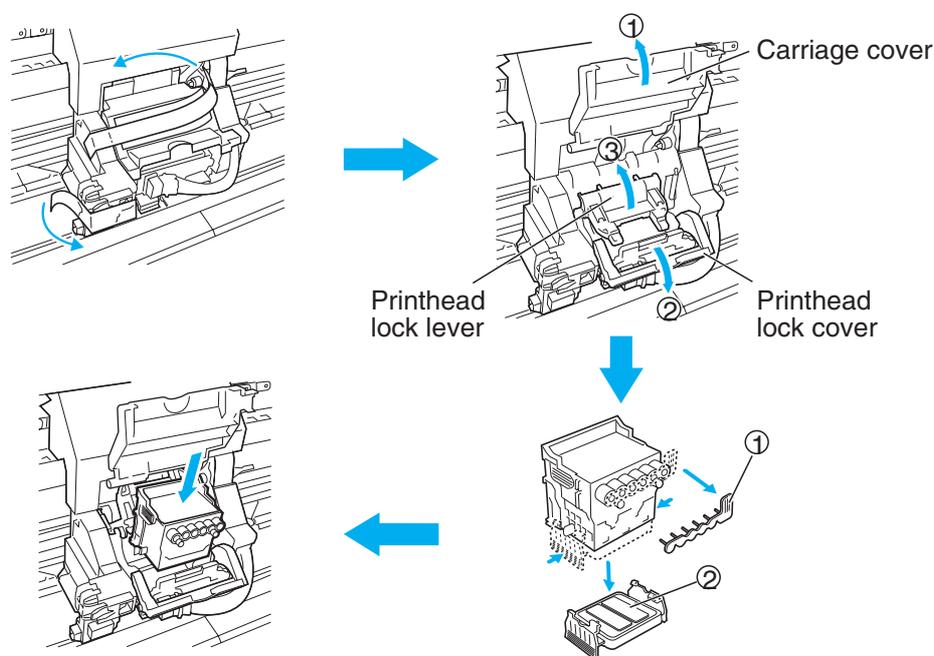


Figure 3-18 Installing Printhead



Take the following precautions when handling the printhead.

- Unseal the package of the printhead only when you are ready to install it.
- Do not replace the orange protective cap once you have removed it from the printhead. If there is foreign matter stuck to the protective cap, it may scratch the printhead.
- Never put a printhead on racks or tables with the nozzles facing downward. If the head becomes scratched or dirty, it may result in poor quality printing.
- Never touch the head area or the electrodes. If those areas become soiled by dirt or finger grease, it may result in poor quality printing.

2.1.9 Installing the ink tanks

Follow the steps below to install the ink tanks.

- 1) After installing the printhead, open the right cover.
- 2) Open the package containing the ink tank.
- 3) Install the ink tank while holding up the ink tank lever.
- 4) Press down the ink tank cover firmly until you feel a click as the ink tank is locked into position.
- 5) Repeat steps 2) to 4) until the ink tanks are installed for all six colors.
- 6) Close the right cover. The message "Ink Filling" is shown on the display, and the initial filling of the ink is started automatically. It takes about 8 minutes for the initial filling to be completed.
- 7) In the case of the W7250, "Stand" is displayed. Use the right and left arrow buttons to select "Use" when the stand is installed and "No use" when the stand is not installed, and then press the ENTER button. (It is not displayed in the case of the W7200.)

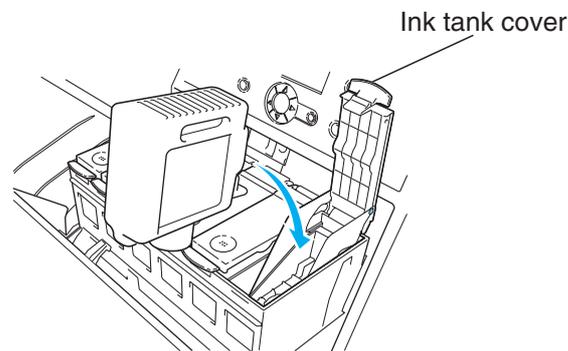


Figure 3-19 Installing an Ink Tank



The ink tank covers have a mark which indicates which ink color goes in a particular slot, and each tank can be installed only in the correct slot. Never try to force a tank into a wrong slot, as this may damage the printer. Install Black (Bk), Photo cyan (PC), Cyan (C), Magenta (m), Photomagenta (PM) and Yellow (Y) from left to right.

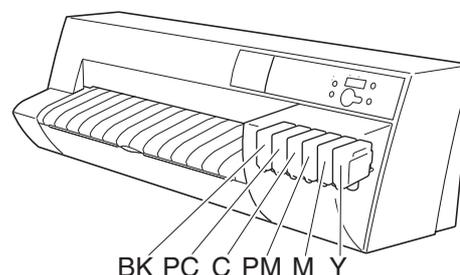


Figure 3-20 Installing Order of Ink Tanks

2.1.10 Language setting

This feature allows the user to specify which language should be used for message display. Select from the following six languages: English, Japanese, French, German, Italian and Spanish.

Follow the steps below to specify the language.

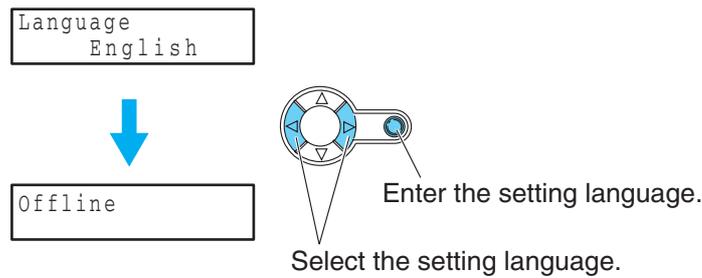


Figure 3-21 Specifying Language



- To change the language setting, refer to [Part 3: 4.4 Main Menu \(Page 3-39\)](#) and select the "Language" menu.
- After making the language setting, all messages are displayed in the specified language except for those in Service mode. The messages in Service mode are displayed in English regardless of the language setting made in the menu.

2.1.11 Loading paper

Roll media and cut sheet media are available for this printer. Refer to [Part 3: 4.1 User Replacements \(page 3-27\)](#) for how to load the print media.

2.1.12 Checking and adjusting the print status

After installing the printer, perform a nozzle check print and print position adjustment to confirm that the printer is operating properly.



The printer may not produce satisfactory printing results when printing on paper types other than those used for the adjustment or when the vertical position of a printhead has been changed. It is recommended that you make the "Adjustment" setting before a print job for producing optimum print quality when a new paper type has been selected or when the vertical position of a printhead has been changed.

a) Nozzle check

- 1) Select the media to be used. (Roll media or cut sheets that are A3 size or larger are needed.)
- 2) Enter the Main menu. (See [page 3-39](#).)
- 3) Select "Test Print" --> "Nozzle Check".
- 4) After printing, confirm that the check pattern printout is normal.

b) Adjusting the printhead position

- 1) Select the media to be used for adjustment. (Roll media or cut sheets that are A3 size or larger are needed.)
- 2) Enter the Main menu. (See [page 3-39](#).)
- 3) Select "System Setup" --> "Adjust Printer" --> "Print Pattern A".
- 4) After printing, check the adjustment pattern, and then perform adjustment.

c) Adjusting the sheet feeding rate

- 1) Select the media to be used for adjustment. (Roll media or cut sheets that are A3 size or larger are needed.)
- 2) Enter the Main menu. (See [page 3-39](#).)
- 3) Select "System Setup" --> "Adjust Printer" --> "Print Pattern B".
- 4) After printing, check the adjustment pattern, and then perform adjustment.

2.1.13 Connecting the interface cable

The printer is provided with USB port, IEEE1394 port (optional for W7250), and LAN port interfaces. Connect to these ports according to the computer that you are using and the connection method.

Note that this printer does not include an interface cable. Please obtain the suitable cable (available commercially) for the required length and connection method that you are using.



The available interfaces on the printer are 10Base-T/100Base-TX, USB (v1.1), and IEEE1394 (optional for W7250). Use the following lengths for the connected interface cable.

10Base-T/100Base-TX: 100 m max., USB: 5.0 m max., IEEE1394: 4.5 m max.



The printer can be damaged if the connectors of the interface cable are connected in the wrong direction. Be sure to check the direction of the connectors before connecting the interface cable.

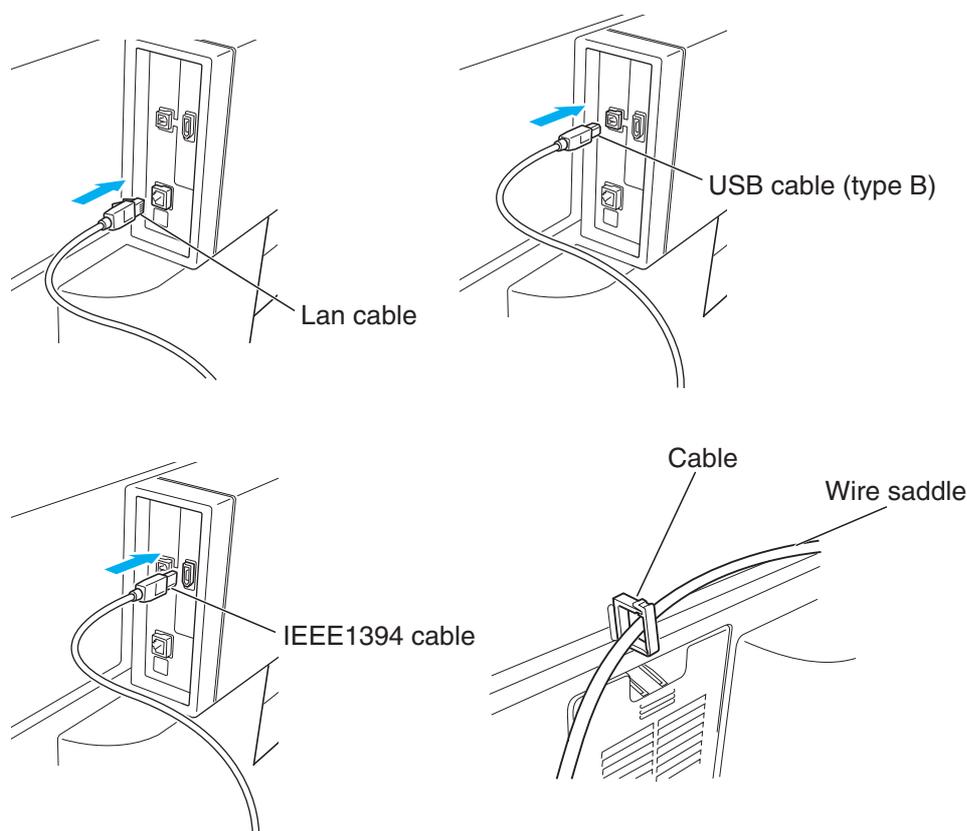


Figure 3-22 Connecting the Interface Cable

3. TRANSPORTING THE PRINTER

Do not remove the printhead once they are installed, as this may cause the nozzles to dry out or accumulate foreign matter. Also the head must be capped and stay in the carriage while transporting the printer. In spite of this precaution, shocks incurred during transportation can still damage the print heads. Print the "Nozzle Check" before moving the printer, print the "Nozzle Check" after installing in a new location, and compare the two printouts. If any deterioration is evident in the output quality, replace the printhead with new ones.

3.1 Transporting the Printer

This subsection describes how to transport the printer.

When moving the printer to another place on the same floor of the building, move it slowly so that it does not receive any shocks. Follow the steps shown in [3.1.1 Moving the printer on the same floor \(Page 3-22\)](#).

When moving it elsewhere, follow the steps shown in [3.1.2 How to transport the printer to a different floor, \(Page 3-23\)](#) to a Different Floor and Means of Transportation to prevent ink leakage during transportation.



Always hold the handles at the bottom of the printer when lifting and moving the printer. Holding the printer by its cover can deform the cover. Moving or transport operations where the printer needs to be temporarily tilted or stood upright must be performed by service personnel.

3.1.1 Moving the printer on the same floor

- 1) Turn off the power button, and check that the heads are capped.
- 2) Open the upper cover, and mount the belt stopper.



When mounting the belt stopper, be careful not to move the carriage by applying too much pressure. If the carriage moves when the heads are capped, the rubber part of the cap may touch the nozzles on the heads and damage the printheads.

- 3) Close the upper cover.
- 4) Open the roll media tray, and wind the roll media back into the media cassette.
- 5) Remove the roll media from the roll media tray, and then close the roll media tray.
- 6) Remove the interface cable and power cord (ground wire) from the printer.
- 7) If using a stand, unlock the casters on the stand.
- 8) Grasp the printer by the handles at the bottom, and then slowly move the printer.



If the printer is subjected to strong vibrations when it is moved, it can cause ink leakage or damage to the printhead. Be sure to move the printer slowly and carefully.

3.1.2 How to transport the printer to a different floor

If the W7200 has a take-up unit or other optional devices mounted on it, remove these devices and have them packed for transportation.

Follow the steps shown in *a) When the printer is operating properly*. When the printer is not operating properly due to breakdown or a power-supply problem, follow the steps shown in *b) When the printer is not operating properly*.

a) When the printer is operating properly



Before starting the operation, be sure to always check the value for COUNTER > PRINTER > LIFE under Service mode.

If the LIFE value exceeds 9000 sheets for the W7200 or 5000 sheets for the W7250, the waste ink may leak when the printer is temporarily tilted or stood upright. To prevent the waste ink from leaking, drain the ink, and then remove the waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit. Package the removed waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit separately so that the waste ink does not leak from them.

- 1) Turn on the **power button** on the printer
- 2) Open the roll media tray, and wind the roll media back into the media cassette.
- 3) Remove the roll media from the roll media tray, and then close the roll media tray.
- 4) While referring to [Part 3: 4.4 Main Menu \(Page 3-39\)](#), enter the Main menu, and then select "System Setup" > "Move Printer". Follow the instructions in the messages, and remove all of the ink tanks.

It takes approximately 4 minutes to complete the "Move Printer" operation.



- Never turn off the power button, disconnect the power cord, or open the covers while the "Move Printer" operation is in progress since this can cancel the operation. If the "Move Printer" operation is canceled while in progress, the printer will remain in offline mode, and it will not switch to online mode. If the operation is canceled accidentally, restart the procedure from step 4).
- The "Move Printer" operation will drain ink from the printer to the waste ink absorber. The drain amounts are approximately 35g of ink.

- 5) Once the "Move Printer" operation is completed, turn off the **power button**.
- 6) Open the upper cover, check that the heads are capped, and then use the belt stopper to secure the carriage in place. (See [page 1-10](#).)



When mounting the belt stopper, be careful not to move the carriage by applying too much pressure. If the carriage moves when the heads are capped, the rubber part of the cap may touch the nozzles on the heads and damage the printheads.

- 7) Close the upper cover.
- 8) Disconnect the interface cable and power cord (ground wire) from the printer.
- 9) If the value for COUNTER > PRINTER > LIFE under Service mode that was checked before operation exceeds 9000 sheets for the W7200 or 5000 sheets for the W7250, remove the waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit, and package them separately so that waste ink does not leak from them.
Reattach the parts removed in the process of removing the waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit to the printer.
- 10) While referring to [Part 3: 2.1.5 Removing the Packing Materials \(Page 3-13\)](#), attach the cushioning materials and tape.
- 11) If the stand is used, remove the printer from the stand.
- 12) Pack the printer into the packing box, and then put the roll media, ink tank, and optional devices in another packing box for moving.
Use the original packing material for the printer and optional devices. If it is not available, pack them with a sufficient amount of cushioning materials.

b) When the printer is not operating properly

- 1) Make sure that the printer is turned off.
- 2) Disconnect the interface cable and power cord (ground wire) from the printer.
- 3) Open the roll media tray, and wind the roll media back into the media cassette.
- 4) Remove the roll media from the roll media tray, and then close the roll media tray.
- 5) While referring to [Part 5: 5.4.2 Manual Ink Drainage \(Page 5-35\)](#), drain the ink from the printer.
- 6) While referring to [Part 3: 3.1.3 Manual Capping \(Page 3-25\)](#), perform the capping operation.
- 7) Remove the waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit, and then package them separately so that the waste ink does not leak from them.
Reattach the parts to the printer that were taken off in the process of removing the waste ink absorber and air flow unit.
- 8) Attach all of the exterior covers
- 9) Open the upper cover, and then use the belt stopper to secure the carriage in place. (See [page 1-10](#).)
- 10) Close the upper cover.
- 11) While referring to [Part 3: 2.1.3 Removing the Packing Materials \(Page 3-13\)](#), attach the cushioning materials and tape.
- 12) If the stand is used, remove the printer from the stand.
- 13) Use the original packing material for the printer and optional devices. If it is not available, pack them with a sufficient amount of cushioning materials.

3.1.3 Manual capping

When transporting the printer, cap the Printhead to protect the nozzles from drying out and to keep them clean. Follow the procedures described below:

- 1) While referring to [Part 5: 5.3.1 Opening the caps and releasing the carriage lock pins](#) (Page 5-33), open all of the caps.
- 2) Move the carriage to the home position.
- 3) While referring to [Part 5: 5.3.1 Opening the caps and releasing the carriage lock pins](#) (Page 5-33).



Manual capping is an emergency measure when the printer does not operate. Manual capping can damage the printheads.

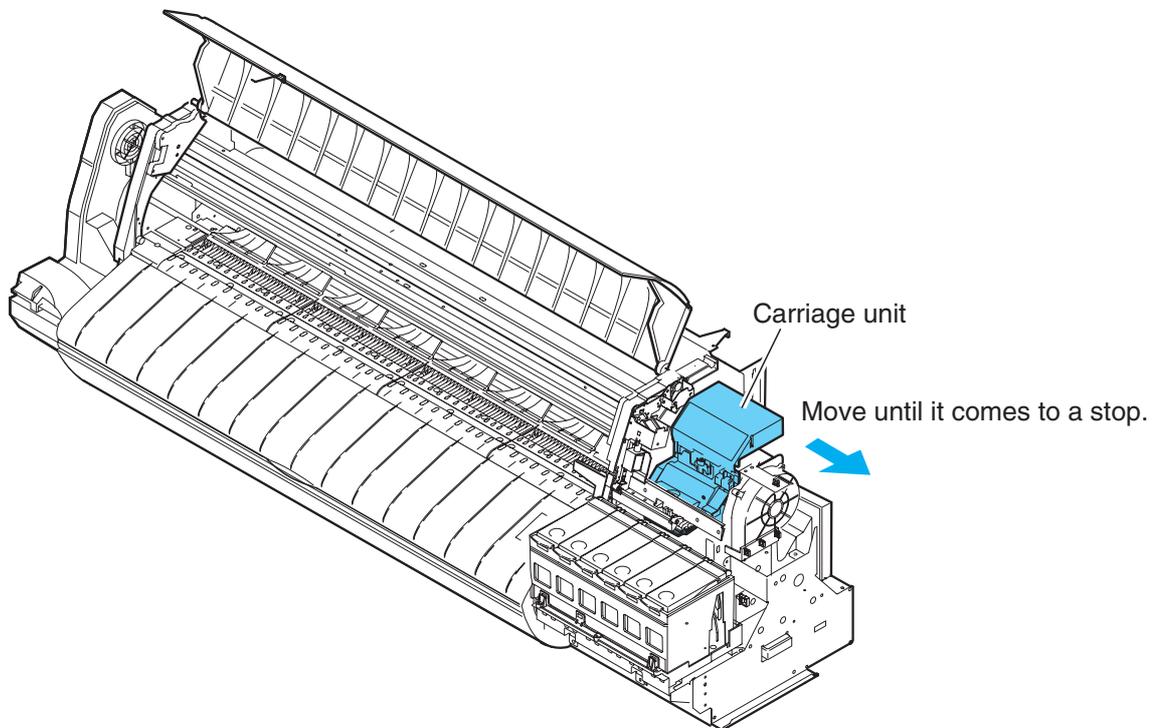


Figure 3-23 Position of the Carriage During Manual Capping

3.2 Reinstalling the Printer

3.2.1 Installing the printer on the same floor

If ink has not been drained from the printer when moving it to another place on the same floor, then an operation check (Nozzle Check) needs to be performed after the printer is moved to a new location. Refer to [Part 3: 2.1.12 Checking and adjusting the print status \(Page 3-19\)](#).

3.2.2 Installing the printer on a different floor

If ink has been drained when transporting the printer to a different floor, follow the installation procedure below. It is nearly identical to the procedure when installing for the first time.

- 1) Unpack the printer, and place it on a stand or table.
- 2) Remove the cushioning materials and tape. Refer to [Part 3: 2.1.2 Unpacking \(Page 3-7\)](#) and [Part 3: 2.1.5 Removing packing materials \(Page 3-13\)](#).
- 3) Remount the waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit if they were removed.
- 4) Remove the belt stopper. Refer to [Part 3: 2.1.6 Removing the belt stopper \(Page 3-14\)](#).
- 5) Connect the power cord and ground wire. Refer to [Part 3: 2.1.7 Connecting the power supply \(Page 3-15\)](#).
- 6) Install the ink tanks. Refer to [Part 3: 2.1.9 Installing the ink tanks \(Page 3-17\)](#).
- 7) Load the media, and perform the operation check. Refer to [Part 3: 2.1.12 Checking and adjusting the print status \(Page 3-19\)](#).

4. OPERATION

4.1 User Replacements

The print media, the ink tanks, the printhead, and the waste-ink absorber can be replaced by the user as required. When it is necessary to replace the ink tanks a message is shown on the display.

4.1.1 Replacing print media

The printer can load roll media and cut sheet.



When loading the print media, always hold the paper edges, outside the print area. If you hold the print area, finger grease or foreign matter may adhere to the paper surface, which may affect the print quality.

4.1.2 When to replace roll media

Each roll media tray has a window indicating the amount of roll media remaining. This window allows you to check visually the approximate amount of roll media remaining in the tray.

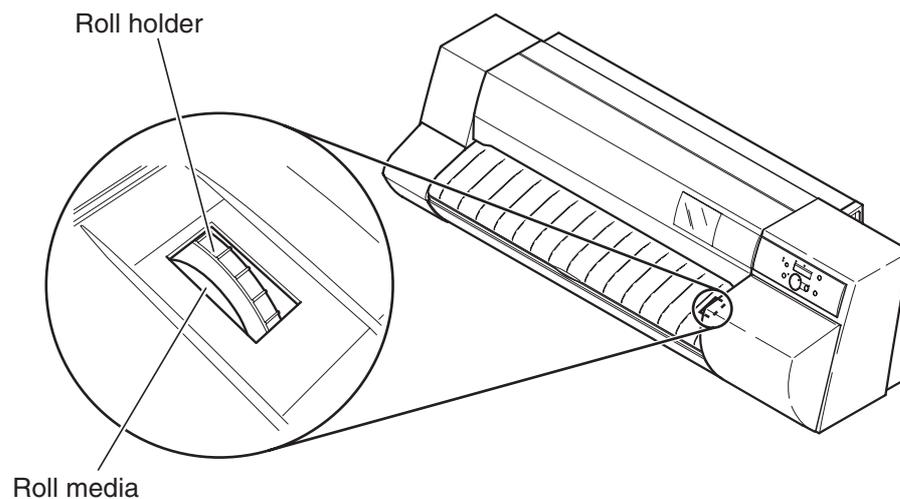


Figure 3-24 Remaining Roll Media Window

4.1.3 How to replace roll media

- 1) Pull out the roll media tray until it moves no more.
- 2) Wind back the media, and then hold both ends of the roll holder to remove it from the roll cassette.
- 3) Remove the holder stopper from the roll holder, and then pull out the roll holder from the roll cassette.

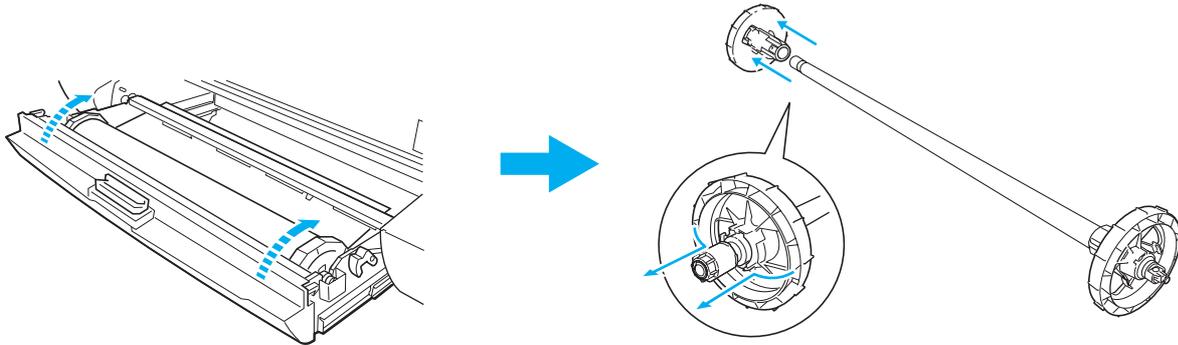


Figure 3-25 Loading the Roll Media (1/5)

- 4) Prepare a new media roll.
- 5) Insert the roll holder while paying attention to the winding direction of the roll media.
- 6) Attach the holder stopper.
- 7) Load the roll holder with the mounted roll media into the roll media tray.

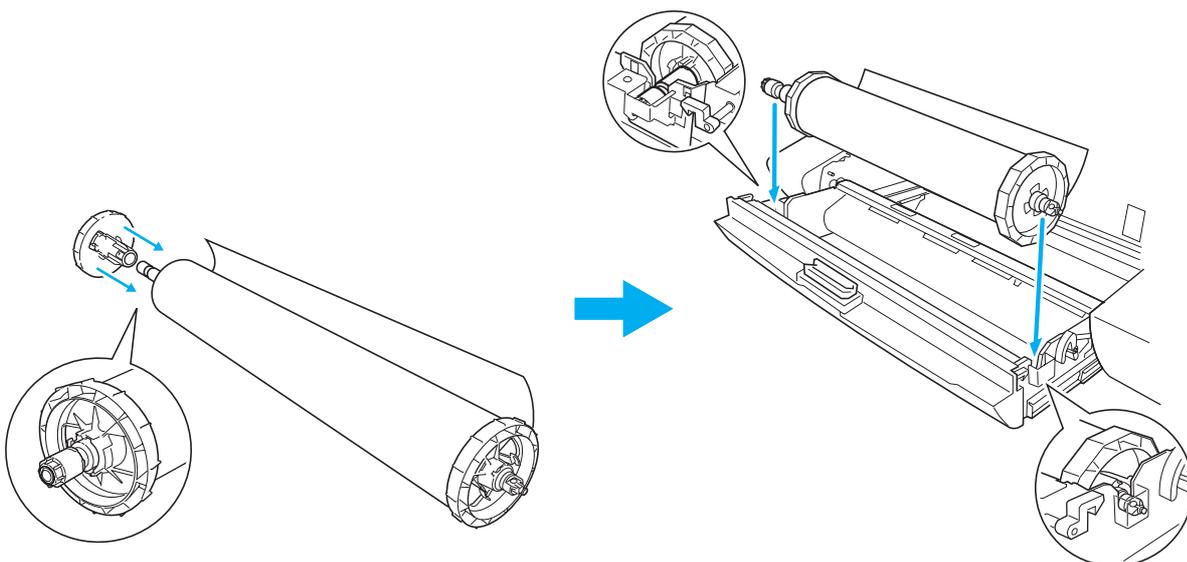


Figure 3-26 Loading the Roll Media (2/5)

- 8) Flip the roll release lever to the back to release the paper guide.
- 9) Pull out the roll media with the leading end facing up, and then insert it between the paper guides.

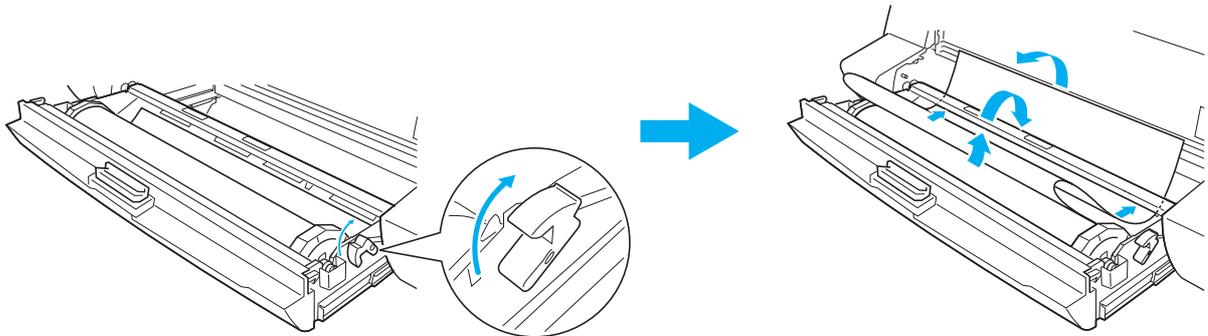


Figure 3-27 Loading the Roll Media (3/5)

- 10) Pull out the media edge evenly up to the roll media so that the right and left edges are parallel. Using the edges of the roll media as a guide, pull out the right and left edges evenly.
- 11) While holding down the center of the roll media, turn the roll holder in the direction shown in the figure below to take up any slack.

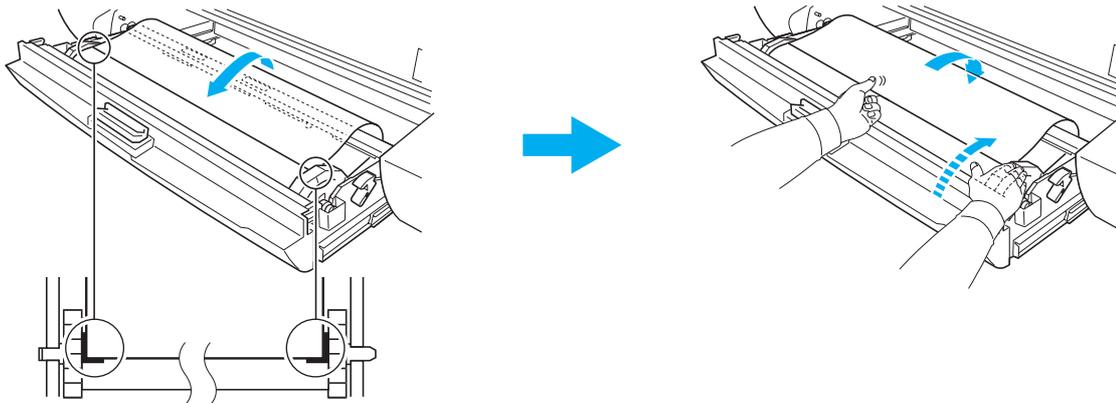


Figure 3-28 Loading the Roll Media (4/5)

- 12) Pull the roll release lever forward while pressing down the roll holder to lock the paper guides.
- 13) Turn the right and left roll holders in the direction of the arrows, and wind the leading edge of the media so that approximately 1 to 2 mm is visible from the edge of the paper guides.

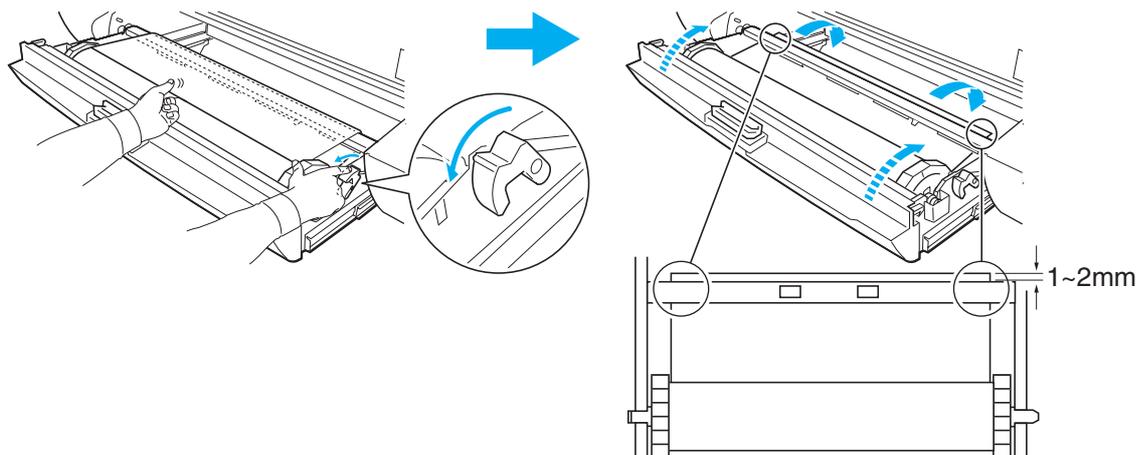


Figure 3-29 Loading the Roll Media (5/5)



Make sure that the leading edge of the loaded media is straight and clean. If it is not, unwind and trim the media as necessary. Slide a cutter along the guide plate to cut the media.

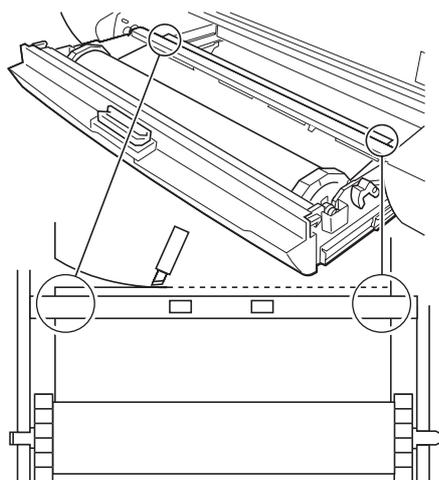


Figure 3-30 Cutting the Roll Media

- 14) Close the roll media tray. The message display will ask you to specify the type of media to be loaded in the media tray.
Select the media type, and then press the [ENTER] button. The printer feeds the paper forward, cuts off about 100 mm (about 300 mm if the W7250 is being used as a desktop) from the leading edge, and then winds it back to the print starting position over the platen.



- The selected media type can be checked on the printer driver screen.
- If the roll media tray is pulled out of the printer, the printer assumes that the media has been changed, and it will display the screen for selecting the media type.

4.1.4 Loading the cut sheets

- 1) Press the Online button, and then select either "Offline" or "Main Menu".
- 2) Press the Paper Source button so that the Cut Sheet lamp turns on. The paper release lever raises up, and the roll media is automatically rewound to the standby position. If the W7250 is used without a stand, raise the paper release lever, pull out the roll media tray, and then manually wind up the roll media.
- 3) Open the upper cover.
- 4) With the printing surface of the cut sheets facing upward, insert the sheet flatly into the pinch roller, load in alignment with the right-side guide and rear-side guides, and then close the upper cover.

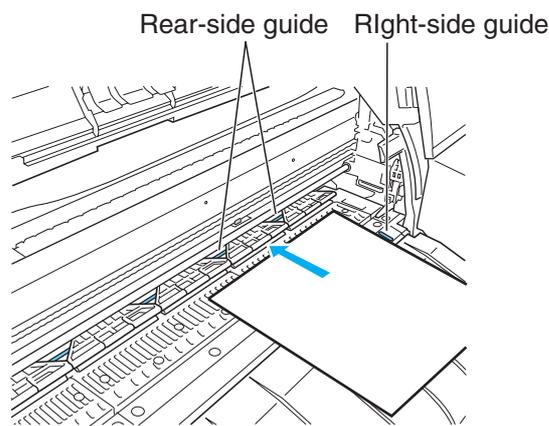


Figure 3-31 Loading the Cut Sheet Media

- 5) Closing the upper cover shows the screen on the display for selecting the media type that is loaded. Select the media type, and then press the ENTER button.



You can not load the cut sheet media and print on the roll media. If the roll media has been selected but cut sheet media is loaded, the printer will eject the cut sheet automatically. Likewise it is impossible to load the cut sheet media while the roll media is being fed.

4.1.5 Replacing the printhead

The printer prints using four printhead. Each print head has six arrays of integrated nozzles.

a) When to replace the printhead

If white lines appear on the printed image, it is possible that ink is not being discharged due to clogging of the nozzles in the printhead. In this case, enter Main menu, and perform the "Cleaning" operation two or three times, and then select "Nozzle Check" under "Test Print" to print the check pattern. Verify the check pattern, and then replace the printhead if there are any clogged nozzles.

b) How to replace the printhead

- 1) Enter the Main menu. (See [page 3-39](#)).
- 2) Select "Replace Head" under the "System Setup" menu.
The printer uncaps the printheads, and the carriage moves over the platen.
- 3) Open the upper cover.
- 4) Open the carriage cover, printhead lock lever, and printhead lock cover until they come to a stop.
- 5) Open the package containing the printhead, and take out the printhead.
- 6) Remove the printhead from the carriage.

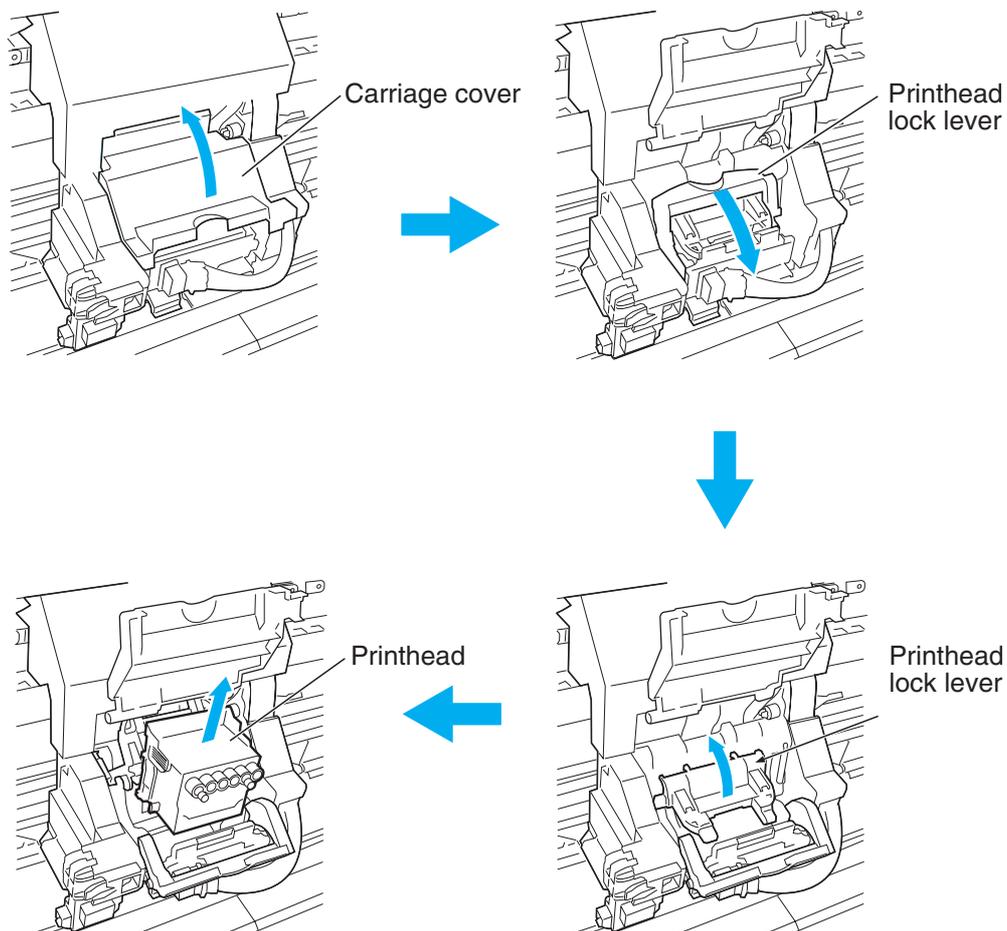


Figure 3-32 Replacing the Printhead (1/2)

- 7) Remove the orange protective cap from the new printhead.
- 8) Install the new printhead in the carriage.
- 9) Lower the printhead lock cover.
- 10) Lower the Printhead locking lever to secure the Printhead in place.
- 11) Close the carriage cover.
- 12) Close the upper cover.
- 13) The carriage moves to the home position, and filling of the ink starts.

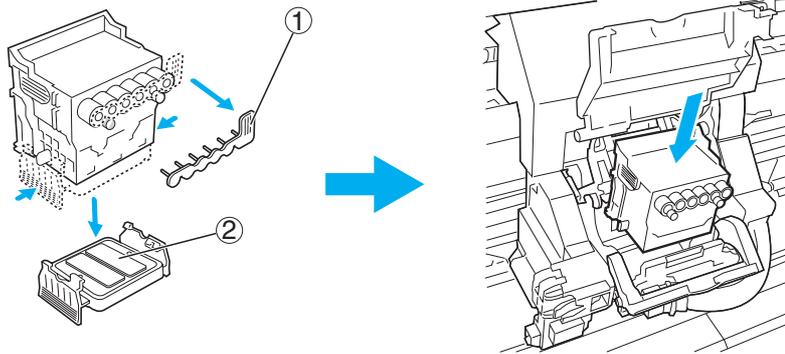


Figure 3-33 Replacing the Printhead (2/2)



- Unseal the package containing the printhead only when you are ready to install it.
- Do not replace the orange protective cap once you have removed it from the printhead. If there is any foreign matter on the protective cap, it may scratch the printhead.
- Never put a printhead on any surface with the nozzles facing downward. If the head becomes scratched or dirty, it may produce poor quality printing.
- Never touch the head area or the electrodes. If these areas become soiled by dirt or finger grease, this may result in poor quality printing.

4.1.6 Replacing the ink tank

The printer supplies ink from the six separate ink tanks. The user can replace the ink bottles even when the printer is printing.

a) When to replace the ink tank

When the printer detects no ink in the ink tank, the "Replace X Tank" message appears on the message display (X = the ink color).

If the "Replace X Tank" message appears on the message display during printing, the printer will stop printing.

b) Replacing the ink tanks

- 1) Enter the Main menu.
- 2) Select "Rep. Ink Tank". The lock on the right cover is released, and the right cover is opened.
- 3) Open the ink tank cover for the ink tank to be replaced.
- 4) Grasp the finger slots on the ink tank, and then remove the ink tank in the upward direction. Put the removed ink tanks into a plastic bag, and then close the bag.

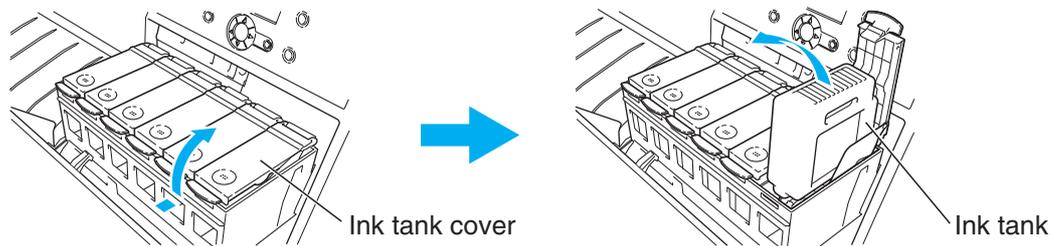


Figure 3-34 Replacing the Ink Tank (1/2)

- 5) Open the package containing the new ink tank.
- 6) Hold the grip and push the ink tank all the way into the slot.
- 7) Press down the ink tank cover firmly until you feel a click as the ink tank is locked in position.
- 8) Close the right cover.

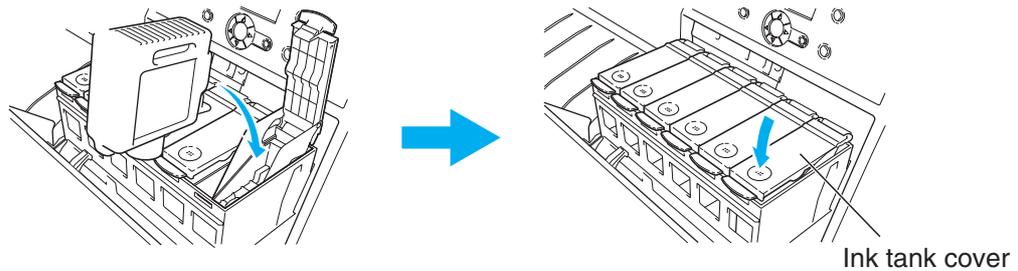


Figure 3-35 Replacing the Ink Tank (2/2)



Do not raise or lower the ink tank cover unnecessarily once the ink tank is installed.

The hollow needle may widen the holes in the ink supplier and the air passage, causing ink -supply problems.

4.2 Operation Panel

This section describes the function of the buttons and the meaning of the LEDs on the operation panel.

Buttons

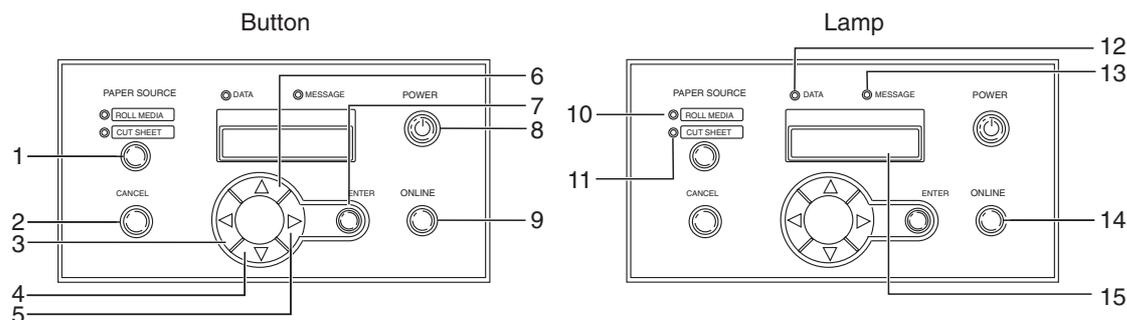


Figure 3-36 Operation Panel

1) PAPER SOURCE button

Offline status: This button switches the paper source between roll media and cut sheets. However, if sheets are loaded on the take-up reel, the paper source is fixed at roll media.

2) CANCEL button

Offline status: Holding down this button for 0.5 seconds or longer aborts the job in progress or ink drying and then discharges the media.

Pause status: Holding down this button for 0.5 seconds or longer aborts the paused job and discharges the media.

3) Left arrow button

Offline status: The carriage moves to the left when the upper cover is close.

When a menu is displayed: This button functions as a selector button and is used to display the previous option.

4) Lower arrow button

Offline status: When roll media is loaded, this button functions as a manual feed button and feeds the media. When a cut sheet is loaded, the sheet is discharged.

When a menu is displayed: This button is used to go to the next lower-level menu.

5) Right arrow button

Offline status: The carriage moves to the left when the upper cover is close.

When a menu is displayed: This button functions as a selector button and is used to display the next option.

6) Upper arrow button

Offline status: When roll media is loaded, this button functions as a manual feed button and reverse-feeds the media. When a cut sheet is loaded, the sheet is discharged.

When a menu is displayed: This button is used to return to the next higher-level menu.

7) ENTER button

When setting values are displayed: This button sets or executes the selected value or operation.

8) Power button

This button is used to turn the printer on and off.

When the power is off: Pressing this buttons turns on the power.

When the power is on: Holding down this button for about 2.5 or more seconds turns off the power.

9) Online button

This button switches between online status, offline status, and menu display.

Online status: This button switches to offline status.

Offline status: This button switches to menu display.

Menu display: This button cancels the menu operation and switches to online status. When an error message is displayed or media is not loaded, however, the printer does not switch to online status until the problem is resolved.

Job processing: This button switches to the pause status and pauses processing of the job.

Error display: The error is cancelled, and the process is executed.

10) Roll Media lamp

On: This indicates that roll media has been selected as the paper source.

11) Cut Sheet lamp

On: This indicates that cut sheets have been selected as the paper source.

12) DATA lamp

On: This indicates that a job is being received or processing.

Flashing: This indicates that there is a job that has been stopped in pause status.

Off: This indicates that there are no jobs.

13) Message lamp

On: This indicates that a warning is displayed.

Flashing: This indicates that an error has occurred.

Off: This indicates that operation is normal.

14) Online lamp

On: This indicates that the printer is in online status or job processing status.

Flashing: This indicates that media are being loaded or a job that cannot be processed is being received.

Off: This indicates that the printer is in offline status, pause status, or turned off.

15) Display

The display shows the printer status and menu options. (16 characters x 2 lines)

4.3 Change of Printer Status

The chart below illustrates the various states of the printer and how they are changed by means of key operations.

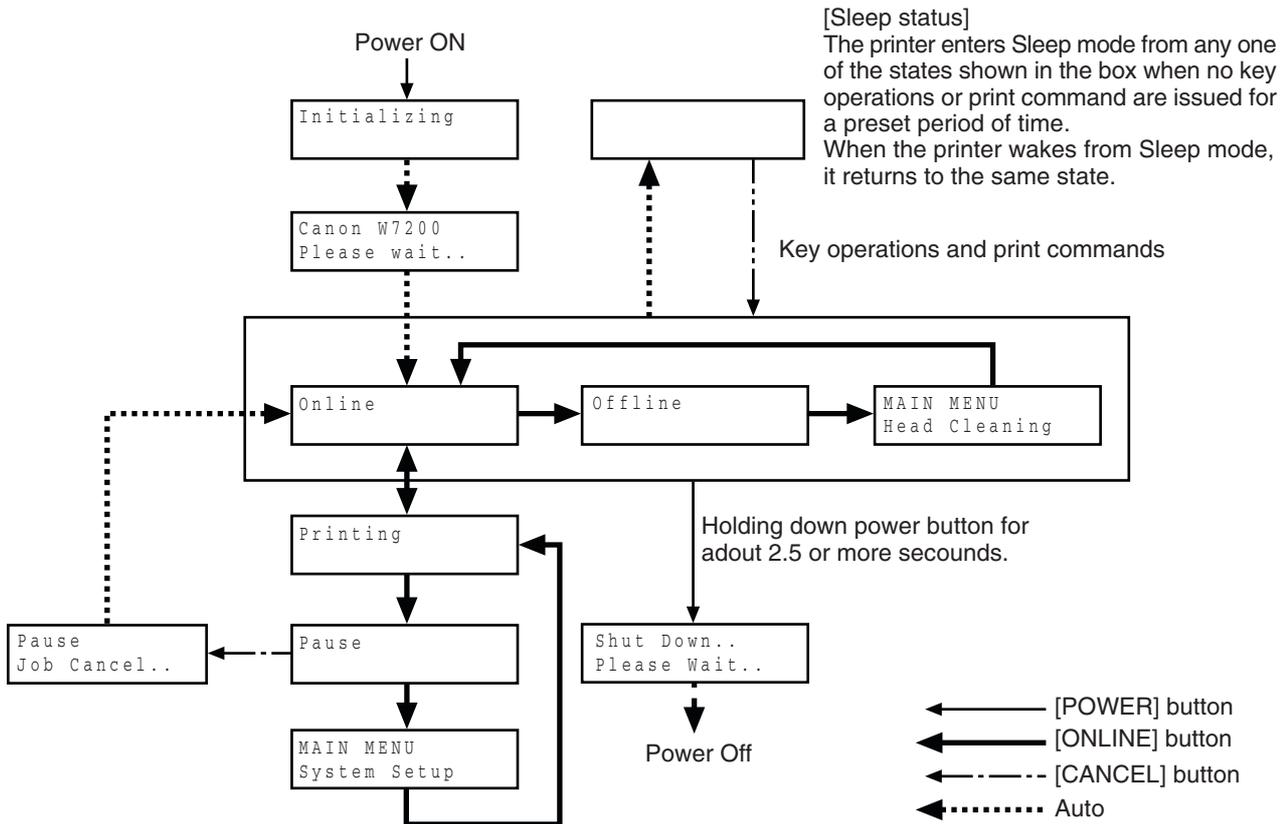


Figure 3-37 Change of Printer States

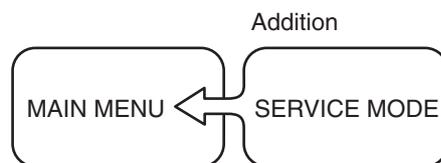


Figure 3-38 Correlation Diagram for Each Mode

4.4 Main Menu

The printer has a User mode which provides the user with access to various adjusting and configuring features, for example: adjusting print position; performing cleaning or other maintenance features; auto-cutting, ink drying period and other print settings; message language and other parameter settings.

4.4.1 Main Menu operations

a) How to enter the Main Menu

To enter the Main menu, press the printer's Online button several times.

b) How to exit the Main Menu

Press the **Online key** once to exit the User mode.

c) Keys used in the Main Menu

- Select menu and parameter: **Left/Right arrow key**
- Confirm menu and parameter, or decrease entered value: **Down arrow key**
- Return to the menu on the upper level, or increase entered value: **Up arrow key**

4.4.2 Map of the main menu

The hierarchy of menus and parameters in the Main Menu is as shown below.

*Default values are underlined

*1: Displayed only for W7200

*2: Displayed only for W7250

*3: Displayed only in roll media mode

*4: Displayed only in cut sheet mode

*5: Displayed only when the take-up reel is enabled

*6: Displayed only when the cutter is enabled

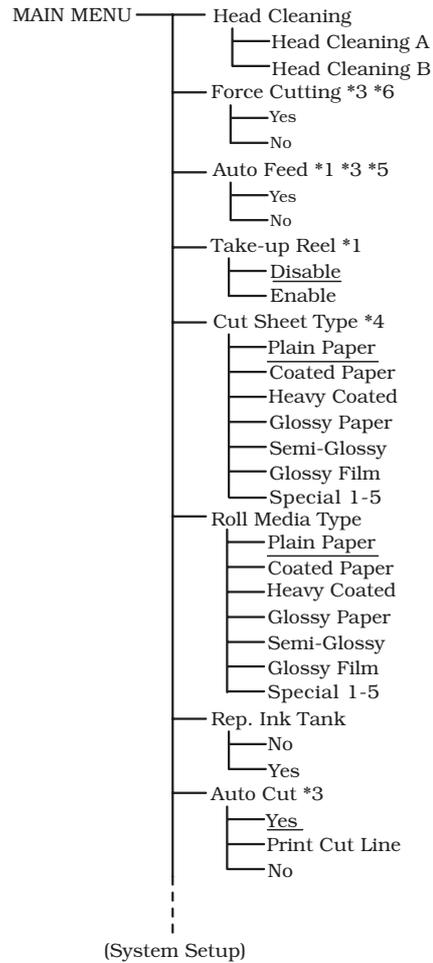


Figure 3-39 Map of the Main Menu (1/3)

manuals4you.com

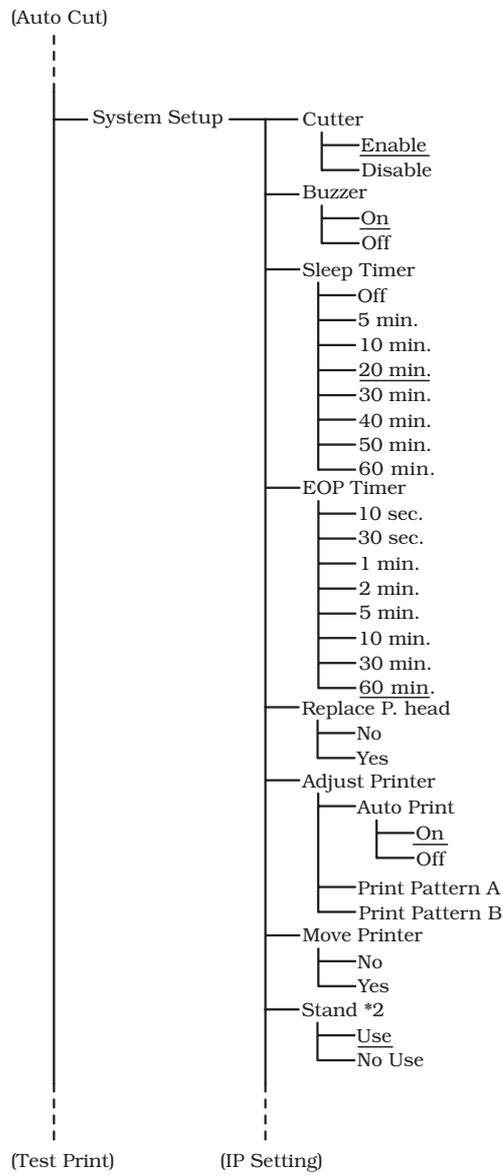


Figure 3-40 Map of the Main Menu (2/3)

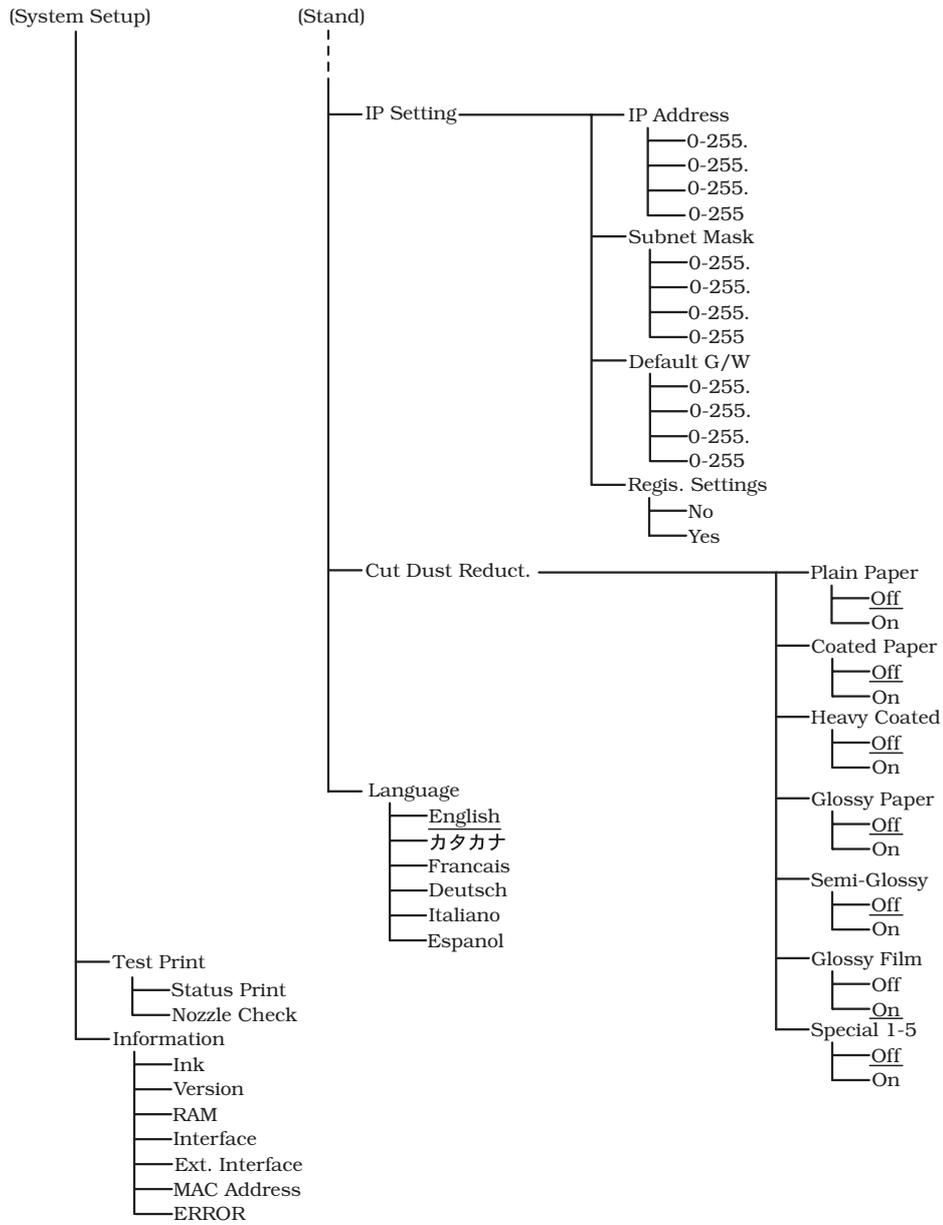


Figure 3-41 Map of the Main Menu (3/3)

4.4.3 Contents of main menu

The available options in the main menu are described below.

1) Head Cleaning

This option cleans the printheads to prevent nozzles from getting clogged and to recover nozzles that are already clogged.

2) Force Cutting

This option is displayed only when "Cutter" is set to "Enable" in Roll Media mode. This option is used to cut the media at any selected position when in Roll Media mode.

However, if the cutting position is within 10 cm of the media leading edge, the media will be fed until there is 10 cm at the edge of the media.

The operation will end without cutting if the media is not fed to the cutting position.

3) Auto Feed (Displayed only for W7200)

This option is displayed in the W7200 only when "Take-up Reel" is set to "Enable" and the roll media is already loaded in Roll Media mode.

When media are loaded in the take-up reel, the setting is changed to "Enable". In this case, the operation is identical to operation when "Cut Type" is set to "No Cut". Cutting can be performed, however, by selecting the "Force Cutting" option in the Main menu.

4) Take-up Reel (displayed only for W7200)

This option is set when the take-up reel is used.

When the "Enable" setting is made, the "Auto Feed" option is displayed in the Main menu.

5) Cut Sheet Type

This option is displayed only in Cut Sheet mode.

This is used to select the media type loaded in the cut sheet tray.

6) Roll Media Type

This is used to select the media type loaded in the roll media tray.

7) Rep. Ink Tank

Select this option when replacing the ink tank. It unlocks and opens the right cover so that the ink tank can be replaced.

8) Auto Cut

This option is displayed only in Roll Media mode.

When printing in Roll Media mode, this is used to select the operation that is performed at the trailing edge of each media after printing is finished.

To cut the media, select the "Yes" setting. To print a cut line at the cut position without cutting, select the "Print Cut Line" setting. Also, to print without cutting, select the "No" setting.

9) System Setup

a. Cutter

This option prohibits all cutting operations when "Disable" is set.

b. Buzzer

When this option is selected, the buzzer sounds whenever a warning or error occurs. The buzzer sounds once for warnings and three times at approximately 0.2 second intervals for errors.

c. Sleep Timer

This sets the time until the device enters the sleep state.

d. EOP Timer

This sets the timeout time for a printing job.

e. Replace P.Head

Select this option when replacing the printhead. This operation uncaps the printhead and moves the carriage over the platen so that the printheads on the printer can be replaced.

f. Adjust Printer

This option allows the user to check if the nozzles are discharging normally or if the discharge positions are misaligned.

Check each test pattern, and make the proper adjustment settings.

Print Pattern B can be set for all media types.

When Auto Print is set to "On", Print Pattern A is performed automatically after the printhead is replaced.

When Print Pattern A is executed in Cut Sheet mode, it is divided as shown below.

First sheet: Even and odd register adjustment and color separation adjustment
(A to I)

Second sheet: Bi-directional register adjustment (J)

Third sheet: Bi-directional register adjustment (K)

- Print Pattern A
 Pattern for even and odd adjustment, bi-directional adjustment, and color separation adjustment.

Even and Odd adjustment : 8-pass, Uni-directional printing

Color separation adjustment : 8-pass, Uni-directional printing

Bi-directional adjustment : 2-pass, Bi-directional printing

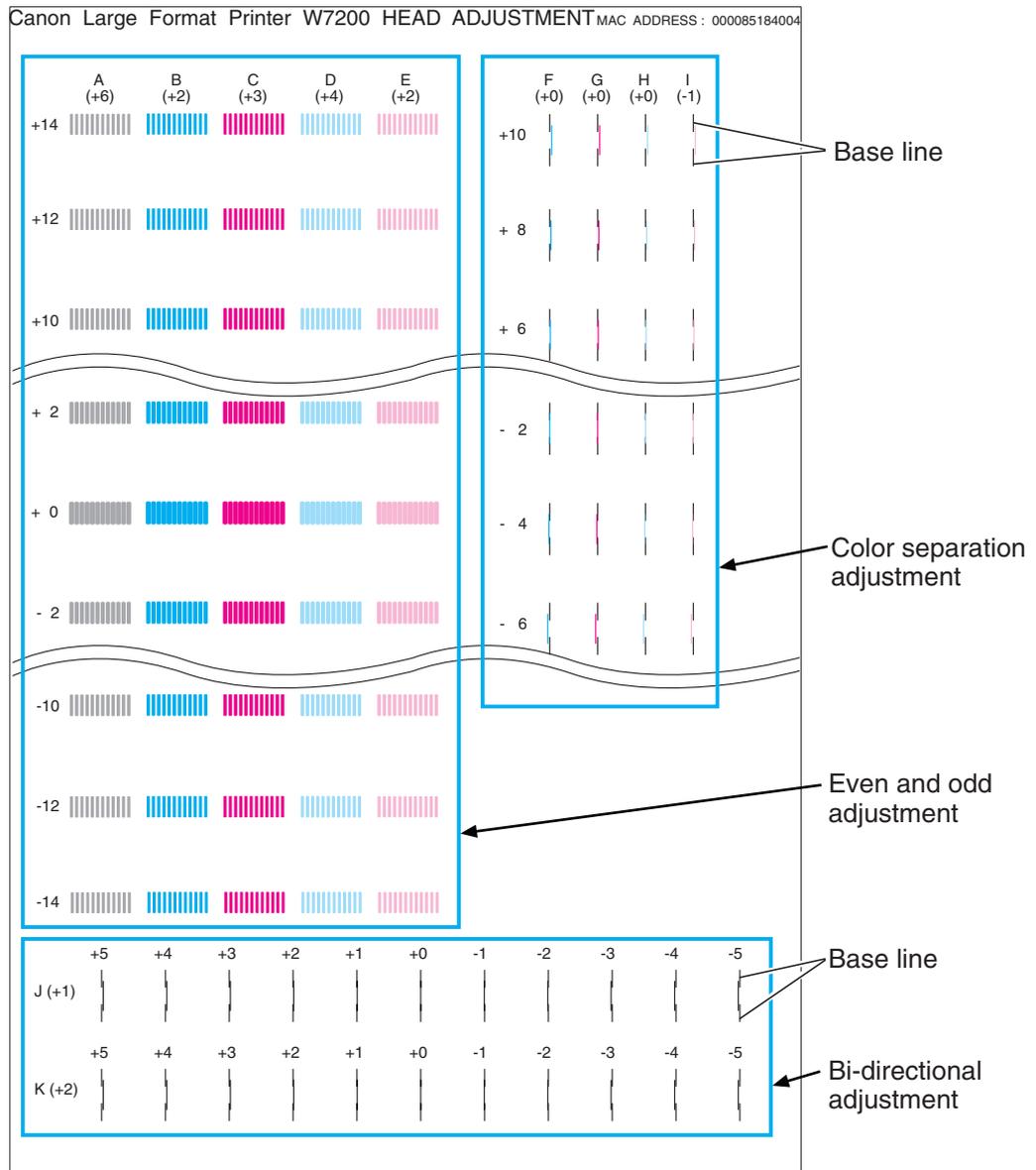


Figure 3-42 Pattern A (Image)

- Print Pattern B (Pattern for band separation correction)

Canon Large Format Printer W7200 BAND ADJUSTMENT

MAC ADDRESS : 000085184004 R (+0) - Glossy Film ← Media type

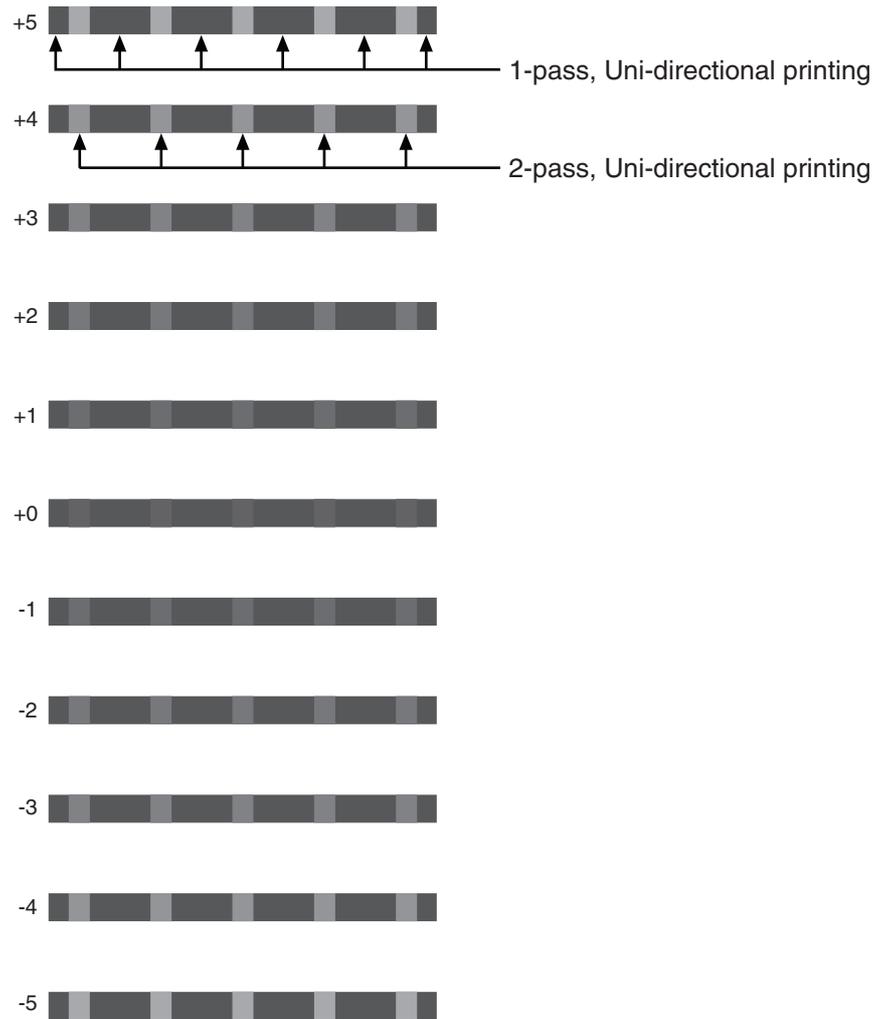


Figure 3-43 Pattern B (Image)

g. Move Printer

This option is selected when transporting the printer or moving it to another floor after installation.

For details, refer to [Part 3: 3.1.2 How to transport the printer to a different floor \(page. 3-23\)](#).

h. Stand (Displayed only for W7250)

This option is set to "Use" when the W7250 is placed on the stand.

When the setting is "No use", the rewind operation for the roll media is disabled to prevent slack forming in the roll media. Also, the leading edge cutting position when loading the roll media is switched to about 300 mm.

i. IP Setting

This option sets the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

j. CutDustReduct.

This option reduces the scattering of cutting dust during roll media printing by printing a line at the cutting position.

This option can be set for all media types.

k. Language

This option is used to change the language for messages on the display.

The available languages are Japanese, English, French, German, Italian, and Spanish.

10) Test Print

This option allows printing of Status Print or Nozzle Check.

In Status Print, a status sheet is printed that contains the setting values, adjustment values, and other data in the "Information" option.

In Nozzle Check, a nozzle check pattern is printed to check that the discharge from the nozzles is normal.

If a check of the pattern reveals that the nozzles are not discharging properly, perform the "Head Cleaning" option from the Main menu. If the clogging of the nozzles is not improved after two or three cleanings, perform the "Replace P.Head" operation to replace the printhead.

Canon Large Format Printer W7200 STATUS PRINT

```

S/C : Ver.0100 S/BOOT : Ver.0100
E/C : Ver.0100 E/Rel :Ver.0100
MAC Address : 00008518408F RAM : 64MB
Panel Status
Cut Sheet Type : Glossy Film Roll Media Type : Coated Paper
Auto Cut : Yes Take-up Reel : Disable
Cutter : Enable Buzzer : On Sleep Timer : 20 min. EOP Timer : 30 sec.
Language : Japanese
Adjust Printer
Auto Adjust : On
A:+0 B:+1 C:+1 D:+0 E:+1 F:+0 G:+0 H:+1 I:+0 J:+2 K:+2
Cut Dust Reduction
Plain Paper : Off Coated Paper : Off Heavy Coated : Off
Glossy Paper : Off Semi-Glossy : Off Glossy Film : On
Special 1 : Off Special 2 : Off Special 3 : Off Special 4 : Off Special 5 : Off
Ink
Bk : 100% C : 100% M : 100% Y : 100% PC : 100% PM : 100%
Interface : LAN/USB1.1 00000000208F
Ext. Interface : IEEE1394 00008514000004DC
Warning
01:W00000 02:W00000 03:W00000 04:W00000 05:W00000
Error
01:E02000 02:E02005 03:E02005 04:E02D03 05:E02D03
TCP/IP
Frame Type : Ethernet II IP Address : 192.168.0.215
Subnet Mask : 255.255.255.0 Default G/W : 0.0.0.0
DHCP : Off BOOTP : Off RARP : Off
Apple Talk
Phase Type : Phase2 Network Number : 65280 Node ID : 128
Name : Canon NB-12FB
Zone : *
Type : GARO

```

Figure 3-44 Status Print (Image)

The nozzle check pattern is printed in the Standard mode for each media type.

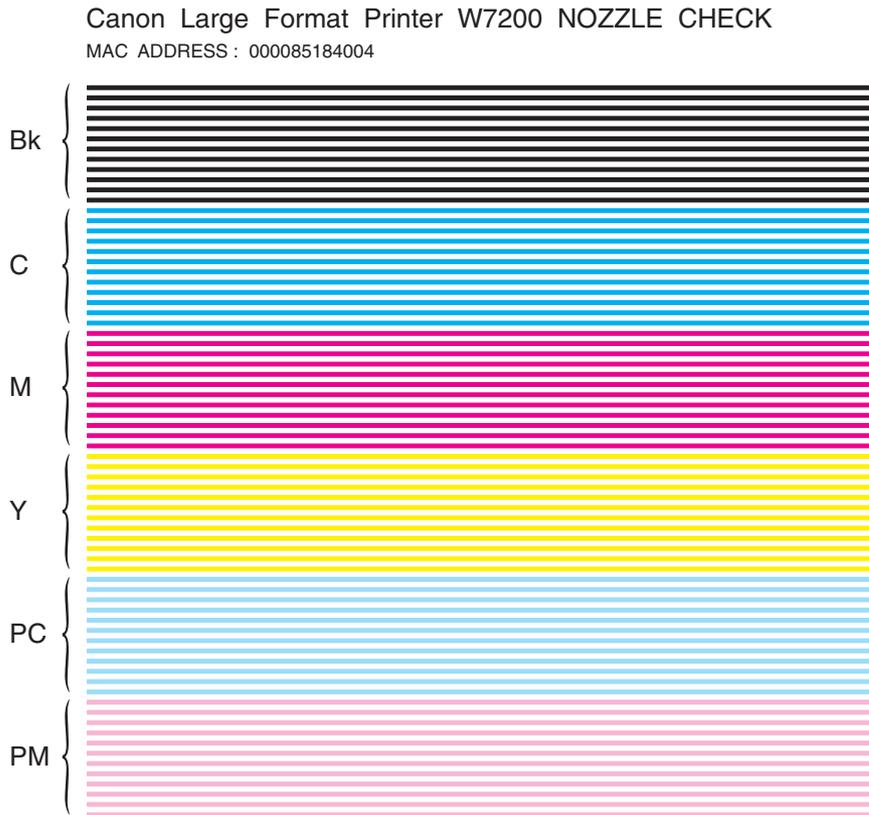


Figure 3-45 Nozzle Check Pattern (Image)

11) Information

This option displays the ink level remaining in the ink tanks, versions of the system controller and engine controller, RAM capacity, interface name, MAC address, and warning and error history.

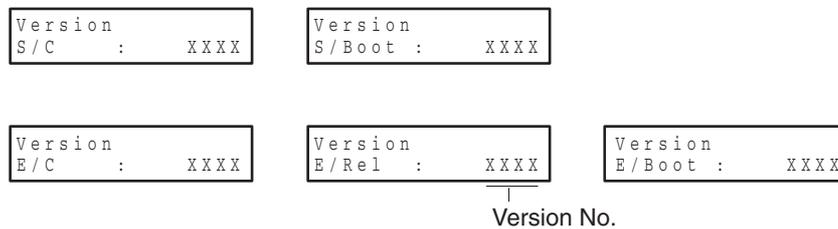


Figure 3-46 Viewing the Software Version

5. PRINTER SERVICING FUNCTIONS

5.1 Service Mode

This mode is used for servicing the printer.

5.1.1 Service mode operation

a) How to enter Service mode

Follow the procedure below to enter Service mode.

- 1) Turn off the printer.
- 2) Turn on the printer while holding down the [PAPER SOURCE] button and [Online] button.
- 3) Check that "Canon W72xx" is shown on the display, and then release the buttons.
- 4) Next, "SERVICE MODE" is shown on the display. (If sheets are inserted, this will be displayed after the sheets are loaded.)
- 5) Use the [down arrow] button to make a selection.

Service mode is added to the options in the Main menu.

Service mode can be entered even during error status (when Exxxx and Wxxxx are shown on the display) by turning the power off and then using the above key operation.

b) How to exit Service mode

To exit Service mode, turn off the printer.

c) Buttons used in Service mode

- Selecting menus and parameters: [Left arrow] button and [right arrow] button
- Entering a lower-level menu: [Down arrow] button
- Entering a higher-level menu: [Up arrow] button
- Setting menus and parameters: [ENTER] button

5.1.2 Map of the service mode

The hierarchy of menus and parameters in the Service mode is as shown below.

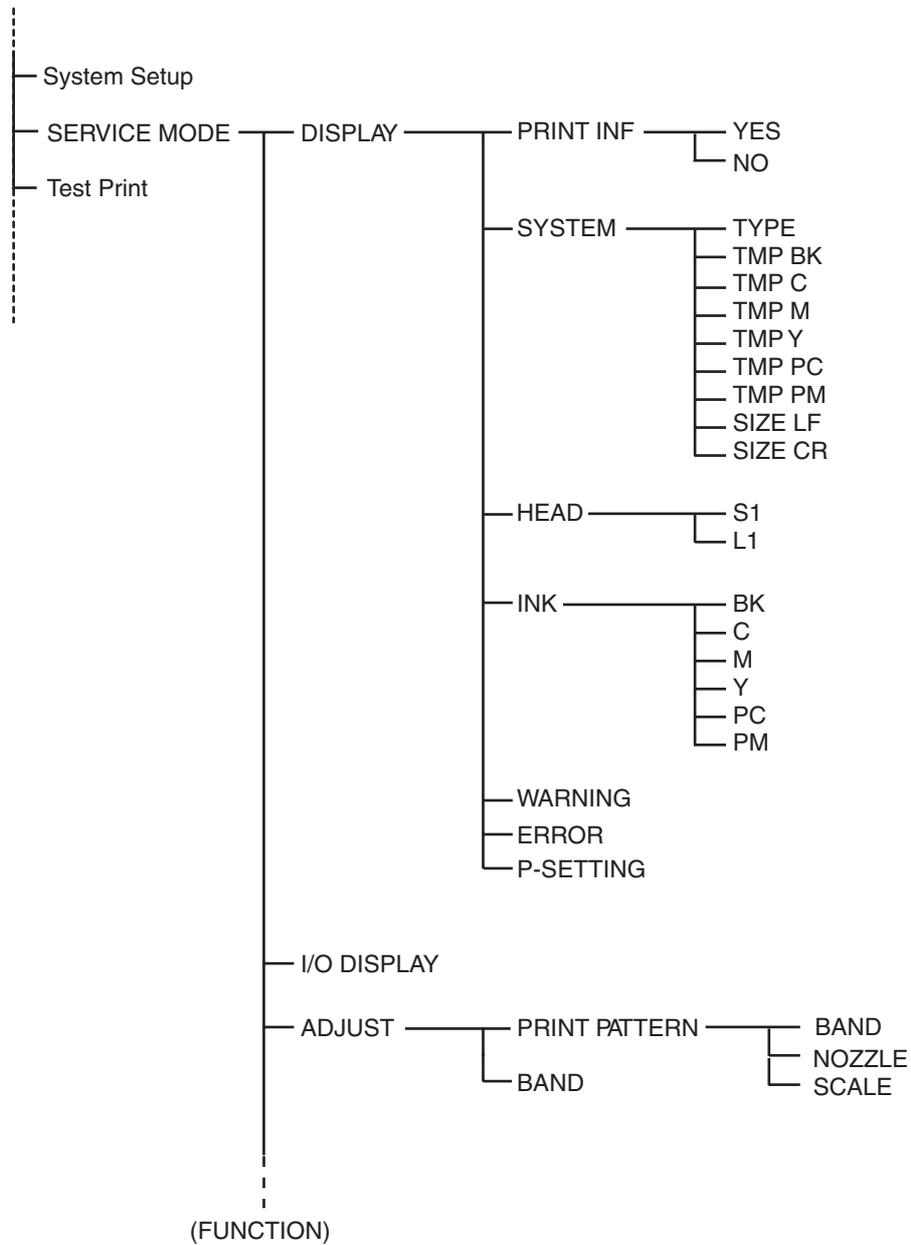


Figure 3-47 Map of the Service Mode (1/3)

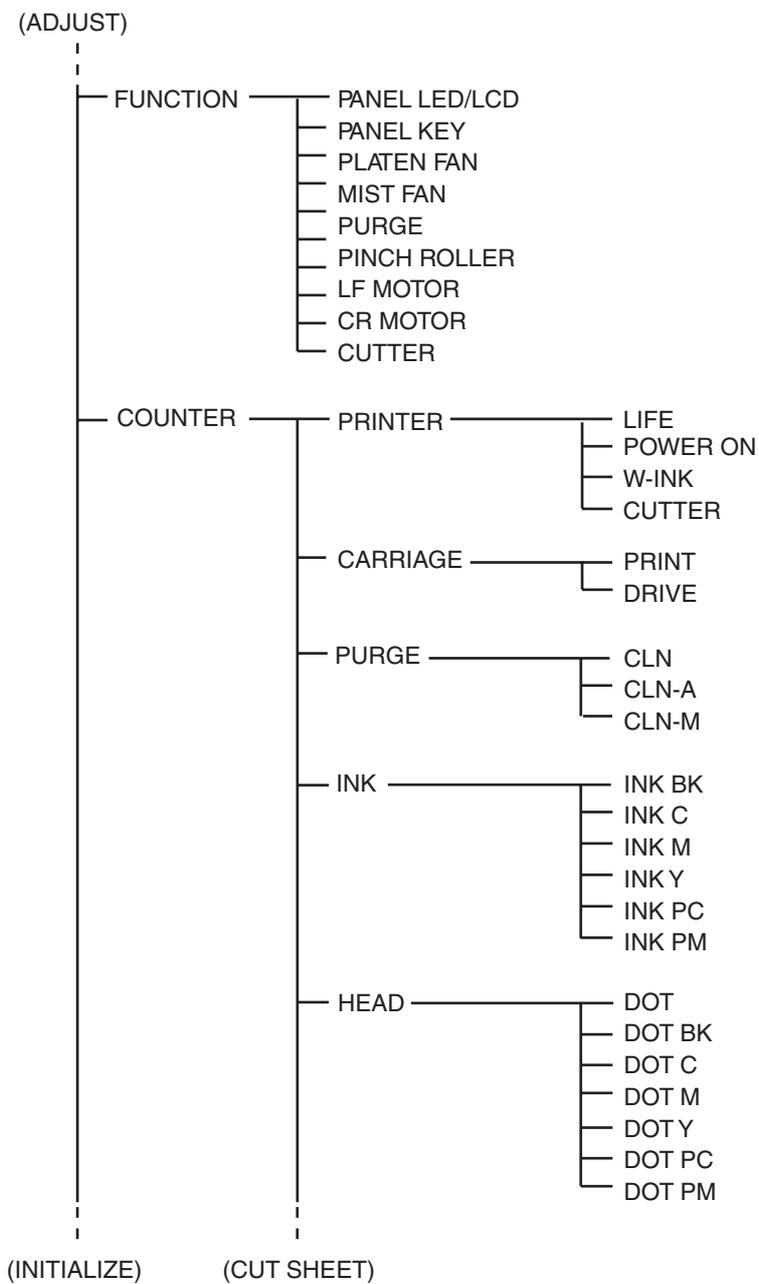


Figure 3-48 Map of the Service Mode(2/3)

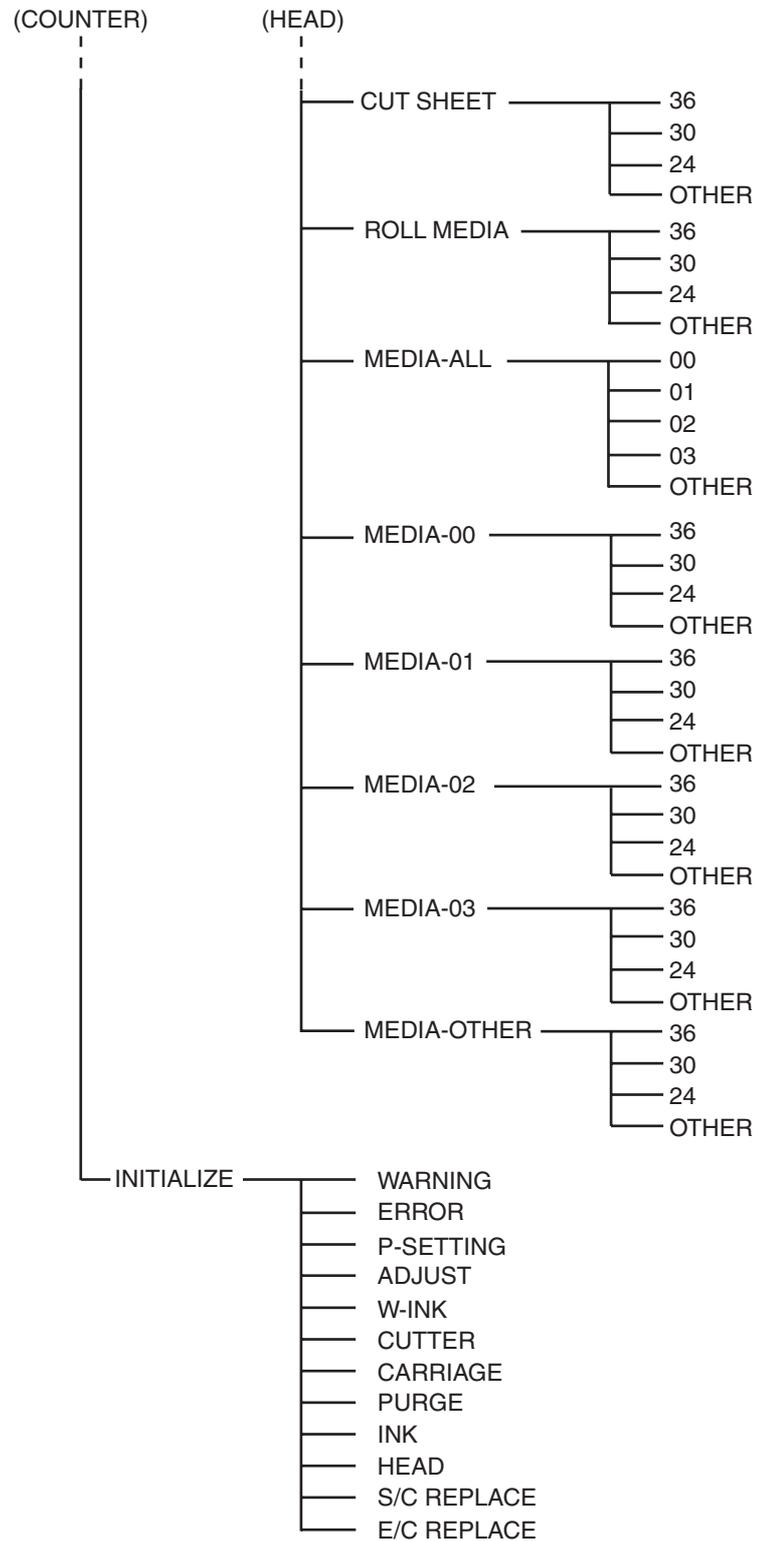


Figure 3-49 Map of the Service Mode(3/3)

5.1.3 Details of service mode

The details of the Service mode menus are as shown below.

a) DISPLAY

Displays and prints the printer information.

1) PRINT-INF

Prints the following information.

- DISPLAY > SYSTEM
- DISPLAY > WARNING
- DISPLAY > ERROR
- DISPLAY > P-SETTING
- ADJUST
- COUNTER

PRINT INF
Canon Large Format Printer W7200

SYSTEM TYPE:36" TMP BK:00.0 TMP C:00.0 TMP M:00.0 TMP Y:00.0 TMP PC:00.0 TMP PM:00.0 SIZE-LF: 0.0 SIZE-CR: 0.0	2)
HEAD S1:00000000 L1:00000000	3)
INK BK:00000000 C:00000000 M:00000000 Y:00000000 PC:00000000 PM:00000000	4)
WARNING 01:Wxxxxx 02:Wxxxxx 03:Wxxxxx 04:Wxxxxx 05:Wxxxxx 06:Wxxxxx 07:Wxxxxx 08:Wxxxxx 09:Wxxxxx 10:Wxxxxx 11:Wxxxxx 12:Wxxxxx	5)
ERROR 01:Exxxxx 02:Exxxxx 03:Exxxxx 04:Exxxxx 05:Exxxxx 06:Exxxxx 07:Exxxxx 08:Exxxxx 09:Exxxxx 10:Exxxxx 11:Exxxxx 12:Exxxxx 13:Exxxxx 14:Exxxxx 15:Exxxxx 16:Exxxxx 17:Exxxxx 18:Exxxxx 19:Exxxxx 20:Exxxxx	6)
P-SETTING 01:R103302S0236E 02:R103302S0236E 03:R103302S0236E 04:R103302S0236E 05:R103302S0236E 06:R103302S0236E 07:R103302S0236E 08:R103302S0236E 09:R103302S0236E 10:R103302S0236E 11:R103302S0236E 12:R103302S0236E	7)
ADJUST A:+0 B:+0 C:+0 D:+0 E:+0 F:+0 G:+0 H:+0 I:+0 J:+0 K:+0 L:+0 M:+0 N:+0 P:+0 Q:+0 R:+0 V:+0 W:+0 X:+0 Y:+0 Z:+0	
COUNTER PRINTER : 5000 000000 000000 000000 CARRIAGE : 8 6 PURGE : 000000 000000 000000 INK : 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000 HEAD : 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000 CUT SHEET : 000000 000000 000000 000000 ROLL MEDIA : 000000 000000 000000 000000 MEDIA-ALL : 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000 MEDIA-00 : 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000 MEDIA-01: 000000 000000 000000 000000 MEDIA-02 : 000000 000000 000000 000000 MEDIA-03: 000000 000000 000000 000000 MEDIA-OTHER: 000000 000000 000000 000000	e)

Adjustment settings of MAIN MENU "Pattern A".
Adjustment settings of MAIN MENU "Pattern B".

L=Plain Paper V=Special 1
M=Coated Paper W=Special 2
N=Heavy Coated X=Special 3
P=Glossy Paper Y=Special 4
Q=Semi-Glossy Z=Special 5
R=Glossy Film

Figure 3-50 PRINT-INF (Image)

2) SYSTEM

Displays the printer information shown below.

Display	Description
TYPE	Engine controller type setting
H-TMP BK	Calibrated temperature of head temperature sensor (Bk)
H-TMP C	Calibrated temperature of head temperature sensor (C)
H-TMP M	Calibrated temperature of head temperature sensor (M)
H-TMP Y	Calibrated temperature of head temperature sensor (Y)
H-TMP PC	Calibrated temperature of head temperature sensor (PC)
H-TMP PM	Calibrated temperature of head temperature sensor (PM)
SIZE LF	Detected size of loaded media (feeding direction)
SIZE CR	Detected size of loaded media (carriage direction)

3) HEAD

Displays the following EEPROM information in the printhead.

Display	Description
S1	Printhead serial number
L1	Printhead lot number

4) INK

Displays the following EEPROM information in the ink tank.

Display	Description
BK	Bk ink lot number
C	C ink lot number
M	M ink lot number
Y	Y ink lot number
PC	PC ink lot number
PM	PM ink lot number

5) WARNING

Displays the warning history (up to 12 events). The newest event has the smallest history number.

WARNING	
01:	Wxxxxxx

|
|
 Record No. Warning code

Figure 3-51 WARNING

6) ERROR

Displays the error history (up to 20 events). The newest event has the smallest history number.

ERROR	
01:	Exxxxxx

|
|
 Record No. Warning code

Figure 3-52 ERROR

7) P-SETTING

Displays the print setting history (up to 12 events). The newest event has the smallest history number.

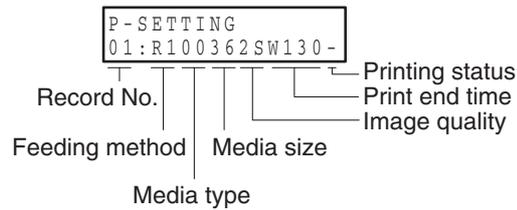


Figure 3-53 P-SETTING

Classification	Display	Description
Feeding method	R1	Roll media feeding
	C1	Cut sheet feeding
Media type	00	Plain paper
	01	Coated paper
	02	Glossy paper
	03	Film
	ZZ	All other types
Media size	36	36 inches or more
	30	30 to less than 36 inches
	24	24 to less than 30 inches
	LL	Banner-size sheets exceeding the maximum fixed size
	ZZ	Other sizes
Image quality	2W	2-pass, bi-directional (fast)
	4S	4-pass, Uni-directional (standard)
	8W	8-pass, bi-directional (standard/high image quality)
	8C	8-pass, Uni-directional (highest image quality)
Print end time	0000	Seconds
Printing status	-	Printing ends normally
	W	Warning occurs during printing
	E	Error occurs during printing

b) I/O DISPLAY

Displays the status of the port I/O signal of the sensors and other devices connected to the engine controller.

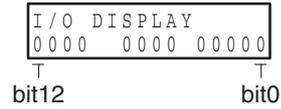


Figure 3-54 I/O DISPLAY

Bit	Sensor name	Description
1	Pump homeposition sensor	1: Homeposition
2	Carriage homeposition sensor	1: Homeposition
3	Roll media tray set sensor	1: Open
4	Pinch roller sensor	0: Cancel
5	Right cover sensor	0: Open
6	Feed sensor	0: With media
7	Cap sensor	0: With flag
8	Roll media set sensor	0: Set
9	Tray sensor	0: Open
10	Roll media end sensor	0: No roll media
11	Upper cover sensor	1: Open
12	Carriage cover sensor	0: Open

c) ADJUST

Performs adjustment and prints the adjustment and check patterns needed for adjusting the printer parts.

The adjustment values under this option can be printed using the "PRINT-INF" option.

- PRINT PATTERN > BAND

The same pattern as Print Pattern B in the Main menu is adjusted to the media width and printed over the entire area.

- PRINT PATTERN > NOZZLE

This is used for a nozzle check pattern during servicing that prints a single pass in a single direction.

This is used to check for nozzles that are not discharging properly.

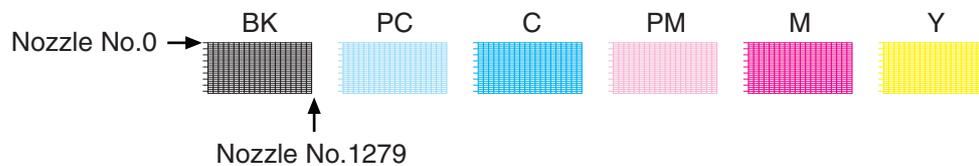


Figure 3-55 NOZZLE (Image)

- PRINT PATTERN > SCALE
Maintenance test pattern

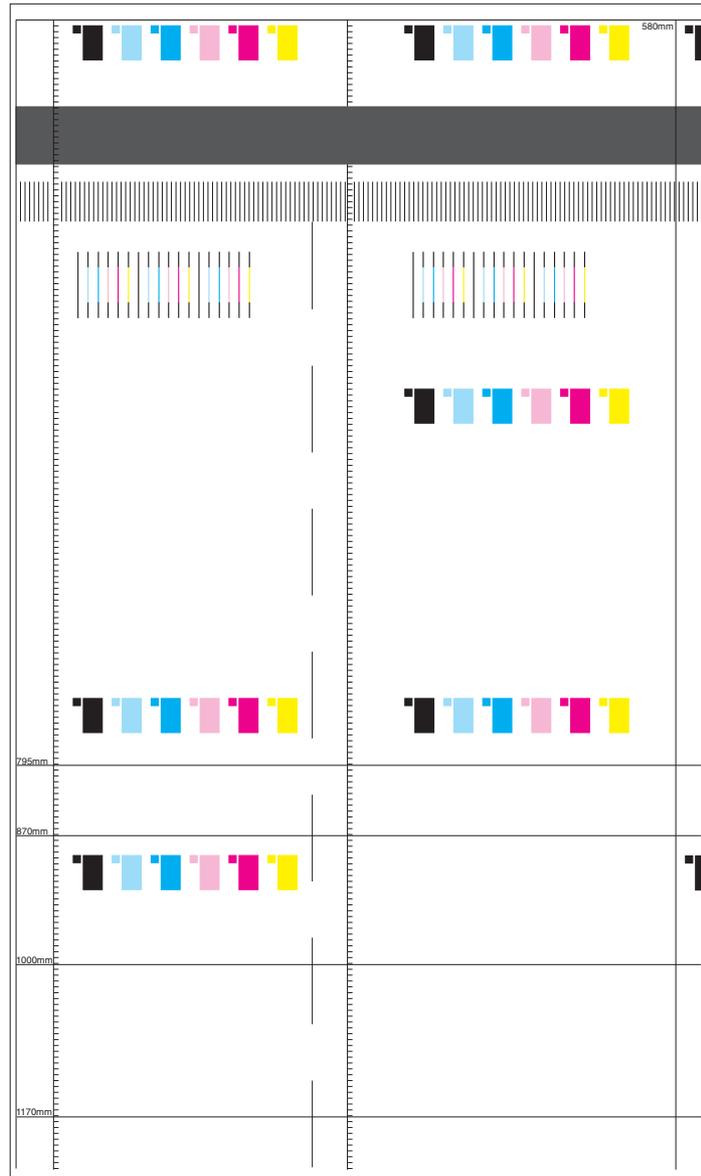


Figure 3-56 SCALE (Image)

- BAND
Not used.

d) FUNCTION

Checks the operation of the buttons on the operation panel and printer parts.

Display	Description
PANEL LED/LCD	This checks the LEDs and LCD on the operation panel. The LEDs flash, and the squares in the LCD are displayed in a checkerboard pattern with and flash alternately.
PANEL KEY	This checks the buttons on the operation panel. The name and symbol of the pressed button is displayed. Pressing the upper arrow button exits this mode after the key name is displayed. Also, pressing the Power button turns off the printer.
PLATEN FAN	This checks operation of the suction fan. The fan rotates for five seconds at maximum speed and then rotates for five seconds at minimum speed.
MIST FAN	This checks operation of the air flow fans. The right and left fans operate simultaneously for 10 seconds.
PURGE	This checks operation of the recovery system. After the carriage is moved to the homeposition, the recovery suction operation is performed independently in the recovery system.
PINCH ROLLER	This checks the up/down operation of the pinch roller. After the carriage is moved to the homeposition, the release (up) and pressure (down) operations are performed each time the ENTER button is pressed.
LF MOTOR	This checks operation of the feed motor. The media is moved forward 500 mm and then stopped regardless of whether media is loaded or not.
CR MOTOR	This checks operation of the carriage motor. The carriage moves back and forth once at the maximum printing width regardless of whether media is loaded or not.
CUTTER	This checks operation of the cutter. When roll media is loaded, the roll media is cut for each 100-mm that it is fed. No operation is performed if roll media is not loaded. Press the CANCEL button to stop operation in progress. If using glossy film, shavings can adhere to the nozzle face of the printhead and damage the printhead.

e) COUNTER

Displays the service life (number of operation times and time) of each unit and print counts for each media type.

The count values under this option can be printed using the "PRINT-INF" option.

- PRINTER Counter for product life

Display	Description	Unit
LIFE	Number of printed media expressed as A0/A1 equivalent (for checking printer durability)	sheets
POWER ON	Cumulative power-on time	Hours
W-INK	Waste ink full detection counter	ml
CUTTER	Number of cutter usages	Single usage

- CARRIAGE Counter for carriage unit

Display	Description	Unit
PRINT	Cumulative printing time	Hours
DRIVE	Cumulative carriage driving time	Hours

- PURGE Counter for purge unit

Display	Description	Unit
CLN	Number of automatic and manual cleanings	Single cleaning
CLN-A	Number of automatic cleanings Each type (cleaning object) of automatic cleaning is counted as one cleaning.	Single cleanings
CLN-M	Number of manual (main menu) cleanings	Single cleanings

- INK Counter for ink tank

Display	Description	Unit
INK xx	Number of times ink tank is replaced (xx indicates the color)	Single replacement

- HEAD Counter for printhead

Display	Description	Unit
DOT	Total amount of ink discharged from integrated printhead	Display value (minimum unit=100,000)x 65,535 dots
DOT xx	Amount of ink discharged (xx indicates the color)	

- CUT SHEET Cumulative printing length of cut sheets for different media widths

- ROLL MEDIA Cumulative printing length of roll media for different media widths

Display	Description	Unit
36	36" or more	m
30	30" to less than 36"	m
24	24" to less than 30"	m
OTHER	Less than 24"	m

- MEDIA-ALL Cumulative printing length for different media types

Display	Description	Unit
00	Plain paper	m
01	Coated paper	m
02	Glossy paper	m
03	Film	m
OTHER	Other media	m

- MEDIA-00 Cumulative printing length for different media widths (plain paper)

- MEDIA-01 Cumulative printing length for different media widths (coated paper)

- MEDIA-02 Cumulative printing length for different media widths (glossy paper)

- MEDIA-03 Cumulative printing length for different media widths (film)

- MEDIA-OTHER Cumulative printing length for different media widths (other media)

Display	Description	Unit
36	36" or more	m
30	30" to less than 36"	m
24	24" to less than 30"	m
OTHER	Less than 24"	m

f) INITIALIZE

The DISPLAY histories, ADJUST settings, COUNTER values, and other parameters can be cleared individually.

Display	Description
WARNING	Initialization of DISPLAY>WARNING
ERROR	Initialization of DISPLAY>ERROR
P-SETTING	Initialization of DISPLAY>P-SETTING
ADJUST	Initialization of ADJUST and Main menu
W-INK	Initialization of COUNTER>PRINTER>W-INK
CUTTER	Initialization of COUNTER>PRINTER>CUTTER
CARRIAGE	Initialization of COUNTER>CARRIAGE
PURGE	Initialization of COUNTER>PURGE
INK	Initialization of COUNTER>INK
HEAD	Initialization of COUNTER>HEAD
S/C REPLACE	Not used
E/C REPLACE	Not used

5.2 Error Indicators

The printer indicates errors using the display and LEDs.

If an error occurs while a print job is in progress, the printer status is also displayed on the status monitor of the printer driver.

There are two types of errors indicated on the display.

- Warnings

Status where the print operation can be continued without remedying the cause of the problem. This can, however, adversely affect the print results.

- Errors

Status where the print operation is stopped, and regular operation cannot be recovered until the cause of the problem is remedied.

Refer to [Part 5: 7 Troubleshooting \(Page 5-44\)](#) for the remedy procedures when warning and errors occur.

5.2.1 Overview of warning and error codes

<i>Codes*</i>	<i>Problem type</i>
W0100z	Ink warning
W0100a	Other warning
W0102x	Media warning
W0103x	GARO warning
E020xx	Media feeding error
E020Bx	Cover error
E025xx	Ink error
E024xx	Pass mismatch error
E028xx	Printhead/Ink tank error
E02Axx	Engine controller internal error
E02Dxx	Other error
E02Exx	Other error
E02Fxx	System controller internal error
E040xx	Service call error

*: THE ABOVE CODES SHOW "X" TO INDICATE A NUMBER OR LETTER, "A" TO INDICATE A LETTER, AND "Z" TO INDICATE A NUMBER.

5.2.2 Warning and error codes

a) Warnings

<i>Code</i> ^{*1}	<i>Display message</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Maintenance No.</i> ^{*2}
(W01000)	Bk Ink Check	Bk ink tank is almost empty	7.2.1
(W01001)	Y Ink Check	Y ink tank is almost empty	
(W01002)	M Ink Check	M ink tank is almost empty	
(W01003)	C Ink Check	C ink tank is almost empty	
(W01004)	PM Ink Check	PM ink tank is almost empty	
(W01005)	PC Ink Check	PC ink tank is almost empty	
(W01006)	W-Ink Full Soon	Waste ink absorber is almost full	7.2.2
(W0100C)	Memory Overflow	Data fault due to insufficient memory	7.2.3
(W0100F)	Feed Limit..	Manual feed limit	7.2.4
W01021	Incorrect Media	Media type is not correct	7.2.5
W01030	GARO W1030	Unsupported command in GARO image mode	7.2.6
W01031	GARO W1031	Invalid number of parameters in GARO image mode	
W01032	GARO W1032	Required item was omitted in GARO image mode	
W01033	GARO W1033	Data out of range in GARO image mode	
W01034	GARO W1034	Other warning in GARO image mode	
W01035	GARO W1035	Unsupported command in GARO setting mode	
W01036	GARO W1036	Invalid number of parameters in GARO setting mode	
W01037	GARO W1037	Required item was omitted in GARO setting mode	
W01038	GARO W1038	Data out of range in GARO setting mode	
W01039	GARO W1039	Other warning in GARO setting mode	

*1: The codes correspond to the numbers shown on the display in the service mode.
Codes in parentheses are not shown on the display when warning occurs.

*2: The maintenance numbers correspond to the section title numbers in [Part 5: 7 Troubleshooting \(page 5-44\)](#).

b) Errors

<i>Code*</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Maintenance No.*2</i>
E02000	No roll media	7.3.1
E02005	Roll media feeding jam	7.3.2
E0200A	Media sensor light intensity adjustment error	7.3.3
E0200B	Media loading position error	7.3.3
E0200C	Media leading edge not detected	7.3.3
E0200D	Cut sheet trailing edge not detected	7.3.2
E0200E	Media is too small	7.3.3
E0200F	Media is too large	7.3.3
E02010	Media is skewed	7.3.3
E02011	Roll media tray was open during loading or printing	7.3.4
E02015	Cutting failure	7.3.3
E02016	Cut sheet trailing edge error during printing	7.3.2
E02017	Media right edge not detected	7.3.3
E02018	Media left edge not detected	7.3.3
E02400	Cut sheets were loaded even though the received data indicated roll media	7.3.5
E02401	Roll media was not loaded even though the received data indicated roll media	7.3.5
E02402	Cut sheets were not loaded even though the received data indicated cut sheets	7.3.5
E02403	Media was too small during printing of adjustment pattern	7.3.5
E02500	No ink (Bk)	7.3.6
E02501	No ink (Y)	
E02502	No ink (M)	
E02503	No ink (C)	
E02504	No ink (PM)	
E02505	No ink (PC)	
E02506	Ink tank not installed (Bk)	7.3.7
E02507	Ink tank not installed (Y)	
E02508	Ink tank not installed (M)	
E02509	Ink tank not installed (C)	
E0250A	Ink tank not installed (PM)	
E0250B	Ink tank not installed (PC)	
E02800	No head	7.3.8
E02801	Head overheating	7.3.8
E02802	Incorrect head was installed	7.3.8
E02803	Head EEPROM error	7.3.8

*1: The codes correspond to the numbers shown on the display in the service mode.

Codes in parentheses are not shown on the display when warning occurs.

*2: The maintenance numbers correspond to the section title numbers in *Part 5: 7 Troubleshooting* (page 5-44).

<i>Code</i> ^{*1}	<i>Status</i>	<i>Maintenance No.</i> ^{*2}
E02804	Incorrect ink tank was installed (Bk)	7.3.9
E02805	Incorrect ink tank was installed (Y)	
E02806	Incorrect ink tank was installed (M)	
E02807	Incorrect ink tank was installed (C)	
E02808	Incorrect ink tank was installed (PM)	
E02809	Incorrect ink tank was installed (PC)	
E0280A	Ink tank EEPROM error (Bk)	7.3.9
E0280B	Ink tank EEPROM error (Y)	
E0280C	Ink tank EEPROM error (M)	
E0280D	Ink tank EEPROM error (C)	
E0280E	Ink tank EEPROM error (PM)	
E0280F	Ink tank EEPROM error (PC)	
E02811	Unable to correct head DI	7.3.8
E02812	Engine controller internal error	7.3.10
E02A00		
E02A01		
E02A02		
E02A03		
E02B01	Manual feed tray was open during loading or printing	7.3.11
E02B04	Upper cover was open when upper cover was locked	7.3.12
E02B05	Right cover error	7.3.13
E02B06	Carriage cover was open when upper cover was locked	7.3.14
E02D00	Unable to detect home position of purge motor	7.3.15
E02D01	Unable to detect home position of pump motor	7.3.15
E02D02	Unable to detect home position of carriage motor	7.3.16
E02D03	Feed motor timeout	7.3.17
E02D04	Roll feed motor timeout	7.3.18
E02D05	Air flow fan was locked	7.3.19
E02E01	Cannot move carriage	7.3.20
E02E02	Paper holder opening/closing failure	7.3.21
E02E03	Pinch roller up/down failure	7.3.22
E02E04	Roll media does not feed	7.3.23
E02E05	Carriage movement timeout	7.3.20
E02E10	IEEE1394 interface error	7.3.24
E02F00	System controller internal error	7.3.25

*1: The codes correspond to the numbers shown on the display in the service mode.

Codes in parentheses are not shown on the display when warnig occurs.

*2: The maintenance numbers correspond to the section title numbers in [Part 5: 7 Troubleshooting \(page 5-44\)](#).

c) Service call error list

<i>Code</i> ^{*1}	<i>Display message</i>	<i>Status</i>	<i>Maintenance No.</i> ^{*2}
(E04000)	Printhead Error!	Head voltage error	7.4.1
(E04001)	Waste Ink FULL!	Waste ink absorber is full	7.4.2
(E04002)	Scale Read Error	Linear scale reading error	7.4.3

*1: The codes correspond to the numbers shown on the display in the service mode.

Codes in parentheses are not shown on the display when warning occurs.

*2: The maintenance numbers correspond to the section title numbers in [Part 5: 7 Troubleshooting \(page 5-44\)](#).

5.2.3 Description of warning and error codes

a) Warning description

1) **x Ink Check (the ink color is indicated by x)**

This is displayed when the electrodes mounted to the hollow needle detect that the ink is below the prescribed level.

2) **W-Ink Full Soon**

This is displayed when a nearly full (approx. 95% capacity of the waste ink absorber) waste ink level is detected in the waste ink absorber.

3) **Memory Overflow**

This is displayed when a data fault occurs due to insufficient memory.

4) **Feed Limit..**

This is displayed when the engine controller has detected the feed limit during manual feeding.

During back feeding, the print standby position (on feed roller) is the feed limit.

During forward feeding, however, the feed limits are as follows.

Roll media: 18 m

Cut sheet: Detected size when sheets are loaded

5) **Incorrect Media**

During data reception, this is displayed when the media type required by the received data is different from the media type that is currently loaded.

6) **GARO W0103x (number is indicated by x)**

During data reception, this is displayed when an error occurs in the data reception GARO command.

b) Error description**1) E02000****End of Roll**

This is displayed when a roll media end sensor has detected the roll media trailing edge during printing or loading of the roll media.

2) E02005**Media Jam**

This is displayed when the feed sensor could not detect the roll media even after feeding the prescribed length during loading of the roll media.

3) E0200A**Size undetected**

This is displayed when the light intensity of the media sensor could not be adjusted during media loading.

4) E0200B**Size undetected**

This is displayed when the media sensor has detected a media loading position error during detection of the media right edge.

5) E0200C**Size undetected**

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media leading edge during detection.

6) E0200D**Size undetected**

This is displayed when the feed sensor could not detect the cut sheet trailing edge even after feeding the prescribed length during cut sheet loading.

7) E0200E**Media Too Small**

This is displayed when the media sensor has detected a media smaller than the prescribed size during media loading.

Media width: Less than 200 mm

Media length: Less than 100 mm

8) E0200F**Media Too Large**

This is displayed when the media sensor has detected a media larger than the prescribed size during media loading.

Media width: More than 927 mm (W7200)/More than 645 mm (W7250)

Media length (roll media): More than 18 m

Media length (cut sheets): More than 1.6 m (W7200) / More than 1.4m (W7250)

9) E02010**Media Skewed**

This is displayed when the media sensor detects slanting that exceeds the prescribed amount during media loading.

10) E02011**Close Roll Tray (cut sheet mode) / Remove Roll Media (roll media mode)**

This is displayed when a roll media tray set sensor has detected that the roll media tray has been pulled out during printing or loading of the roll media.

11) E02015**Cut Failed**

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media leading edge during detection after cutting of the roll media.

12) E02016**Load Cut Sheet**

This is displayed during printing when the feed sensor has detected the cut sheet trailing edge at a different position from the media loading position.

13) E02017**Size undetected**

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media right edge during media loading.

14) E02018**Size undetected**

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media left edge during media loading.

15) E02400**Eject Cut Sheet**

This is displayed when the loaded media is a cut sheet when the received data is designated for roll media.

16) E02401**Load Roll Media**

This is displayed when the roll media is not loaded when the received data is designated for roll media.

17) E02402**Load Cut Sheet**

This is displayed when the cut sheet is not loaded when the received data is designated for cut sheets.

18) E02403**Media Too Small**

This is displayed when the loaded media is smaller than the prescribed size during printing of the adjustment pattern.

19) E02500/E02501/E02502/E02503/E02504/E02505**Replace x Tank (the ink color is indicated by x)**

This is displayed when no ink is detected in the ink tank.

The final digit indicates the ink color. <0:Bk, 1:Y, 2:M, 3:C, 4:PM, 5:PC>

20) E02506/E02507/E02508/E02509/E0250A/E0250B**No x Ink Tank (the ink color is indicated by x)**

This is displayed when the sensor detects that the right cover is closed with an ink tank removed during ink tank replacement.

This error is canceled when the required ink tank is installed and the right cover is closed.

The final digit indicates the ink color. <6:Bk, 7:Y, 8:M, 9:C, A:PM, B:PC>

21) E0250C/E0250D/E0250E/E0250F/E02510/E02511**Remove x Tank (the ink color is indicated by x)**

This is displayed when the sensor detects installation of the ink tank after all of the ink tanks have been removed during head replacement or secondary transport processing. This error is canceled by removing the respective ink tank so that the process being performed can be completed.

The final digit indicates the ink color. <C:Bk, D:Y, E:M, F:C, 0:PM, 1:PC>

22) E02800**No Printhead**

This is displayed when no printhead is detected.

23) E02801**Check Printhead**

This is displayed when unusually high temperatures are detected in the printhead.

24) E02802**Check Printhead**

This is displayed when an incorrect printhead is installed.

25) E02803**Check Printhead**

This is displayed when a checksum error is detected in the printhead EEPROM.

26) E02804/E02805/E02806/E02807/E02808/E02809**Check x Tank (the ink color is indicated by x)**

This is displayed when an incorrect ink tank is installed.

The final digit indicates the ink color. <4:Bk, 5:Y, 6:M, 7:C, 8:PM, 9:PC>

27) E0280A/E0280B/E0280C/E0280D/E0280E/E0280F**Check x Tank (the ink color is indicated by x)**

This is displayed when a checksum error is detected in the ink tank EEPROM.

The final digit indicates the ink color. <A:Bk, B:Y, C:M, D:C, E:PM, F:PC>

28) E02811**Check Printhead**

This is displayed when a DI correction failure is detected in the printhead.

29) E02812**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when an error has occurred in the EEPROM of the engine controller.

30) E02A00**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when an error occurs in the firmware of the engine controller.

31) E02A01/E02A02/E02A03**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when an error occurs in the FLASH ROM of the engine controller.

32) E02B01**Close Tray**

This is displayed when the manual feed tray sensor has detected that the tray is open during media loading or printing.

33) E02B04**Close Upper Cover**

This is displayed when the upper cover sensor has detected that the upper cover is open while the upper cover is locked.

34) E02B05**Close Right Cover**

This is displayed when the right cover sensor has detected that the right cover has been opened not using operations from the main menu.

Turn Power Off!!

This is displayed when the right cover sensor has detected that the right cover is closed even though the right cover opening operation has been performed the prescribed number of times.

35) E02B06**Close CRG Cover**

This is displayed when the carriage cover sensor has detected that the carriage cover is open while the upper cover is locked.

36) E02D00/E02D01**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when sensors for the purge unit could not detect the positions of the motors within the prescribed time.

37) E02D02**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when the carriage homeposition sensor could not detect the home position of the carriage motor within the prescribed time.

38) E02D03**End of Roll**

This is displayed when the feed motor could not reach the prescribed speed within the prescribed time or the feed roller sensor could not detect the prescribed number of steps from the encoder slit.

39) E02D04**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when the roll feed motor could not reach the prescribed speed within the prescribed time.

40) E02D05**Turn Power Off!!**

This message is displayed when a fan lock is detected when the air flow fan is running.

41) E02E01**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when a jam or other physical problem puts an excessive load on the carriage motor so that the carriage cannot operate.

42) E02E02**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when the roll media set sensor could not detect positional changes by the paper holder during the paper holder opening and closing operations.

43) E02E03**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when the pinch roller up/down sensor could not detect positional changes by the pinch roller during the pinch roller up/down operations.

44) E02E04**End of Roll**

This is displayed when the roll feed sensor has detected stoppage of the rotating flag during supplying or feeding of the roll media.

45) E02E05**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when the carriage motor could not reach the prescribed speed within the prescribed time.

46) E02E10**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when an error has occurred in the IEEE1394 interface.

47) E02F00**Turn Power Off!!**

This is displayed when an error has occurred in the firmware of the system controller.

c) Service call error description**1) Printhead Error!**

This is displayed when a voltage error occurs in the printhead.

2) Waste Ink FULL!

This is displayed when a full waste ink absorber is detected.

3) Scale Read Error

This is displayed when the carriage sensor could not read the linear scale.

6. PRINTER SERVICE SOFTWARE

6.1 Overview of Service Software

In this printer, the service tools can be used to update the versions of the firmware for the two controllers installed in the printer.

The service tools can also be used to access various types of information from the printer.

The required operating environment and conditions for upgrading the firmware and obtaining service information are shown below.

	Software	OS	Printer port	Interface cable
Upgrading firmware version	lpr.exe ⁽¹⁾	Windows 95, 98, Me, Windows NT, 2000, XP	LAN (10Base-T/100Base-TX)	Crossover type
Obtaining service information	hypertrm.exe ⁽²⁾	Windows 95, 98, Me, Windows NT, 2000, XP	RS-232C (9-pin, male)	Crossover type

*1: Included in standard installations of Windows NT, 2000, and XP.

*2: Included in standard installations of Windows 95, 98, Me, Windows NT, 2000, and XP.

6.1.1 Firmware version update software

This tool is used to update the versions of the firmware for the system controller and engine controller.

The required operating environment and conditions are shown below.

Software	OS	Printer port	Interface cable
lpr.exe ⁽¹⁾	Windows 95, 98, Me, Windows NT, 2000, XP	LAN (10Base-T/100Base-TX)	Crossover type

*1: Included in standard installations of Windows NT, 2000, and XP.

6.1.2 Service information access software

This tool is used to access various types of Service mode information from the system controller.

The required operating environment and conditions are shown below.

Software	OS	Printer port	Interface cable
hypertrm.exe ⁽²⁾	Windows 95, 98, Me, Windows NT, 2000, XP	RS-232C (9-pin, male)	Crossover type

*2: Included in standard installations of Windows 95, 98, Me, Windows NT, 2000, and XP.

6.2 Firmware Version Update Software

In Windows NT, 2000, and XP, use the lpr.exe file that is provided in the standard installation.

This is a software tool that connects the LAN cable to the LAN port on the system controller.

This allows the software to upgrade the firmware (for the system controller and engine controller) contained the printer.

6.2.1 Upgrade procedure

- 1) Connect the printer and computer using a LAN cable, and then turn the printer on.
- 2) Check the IP address of the printer by referring to [Part 3: 4.4 Main Menu \(page 3-39\)](#).
- 3) Check whether the printer is in online or offline status, and then start the program below.

- Windows NT, 2000, and XP
"Command Prompt" program
- Windows 95, 98, and Me
"MS-DOS Prompt" program

- 4) In the case of Windows NT, 2000, and XP, proceed to step 5.

In the case of Windows 95, 98, and Me, enter the following command after the ">" prompt.

```
set TEMP=c:\windows\temp
```

- 5) Enter the following command after the ">" prompt to run the lpr.exe program.

- Windows XP
c:\windows\system32\lpr.exe
- Windows NT and 2000
c:\winnt\system32\lpr.exe
- Windows 95, 98, and Me

Since lpr.exe is not provided in the standard installation, obtain lpr.exe as a freeware file, and then specify the storage location of lpr.exe and run the file.

Example: d:\lpr.exe

- 6) Enter the following commands after the ">" prompt to designate the IP address and firmware of the printer, and then perform the upgrade.

Example: IP address=192.168.1.1

Firmware=v0001.cpa

Storage location=d:\firm\v0001.cpa

- Windows NT, 2000, and XP
lpr -S192.168.1.1 -Plp -o l d:\firm\v0001.cpa
- Windows 95, 98, and Me
lpr -Plp -S192.168.1.1 -l d:\firm\v0001.cpa

- 7) If the version is update correctly, the "ROM Update OK?" is shown in the printer display.

Press the ENTER button to upgrade the version.

Pressing the CANCEL button cancels the upgrading operation.

After "Turn Power Off!" is displayed, turn off the printer.

- 8) Turn on the printer, and then check the firmware version.

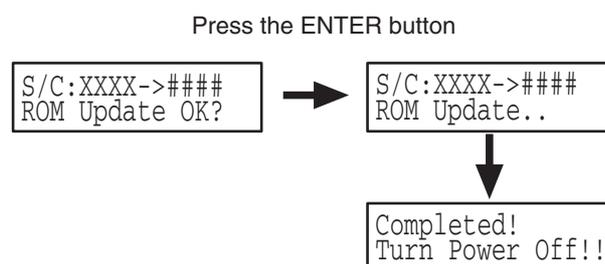


Figure 3-57 Message Displayed when Updating the Firmware Version

6.3 Service Information Access Software

Use the HyperTerminal software supplied in the standard installation in Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, and XP.

HyperTerminal is a software tool used to connect the serial cable to the serial port on the system controller.

The following service information can be accessed based on the code that is entered.

a) Access service mode information

Entering the code below will display as log data all the information for the Service mode and Main menu stored in the printer.

Input code: ssw

```

ssw
MachineType:36"
TMP:26.0 TMP BK:25.0 TMP C:26.0 TMP M:25.0 TMP Y:26.0 TMP PC:25.0 TMP PM:25.0
SIZE-LF:0.0 SIZE-CR:914.3
HeadEEPLOTNo:001B01A0
HeadSerialNo:00017BB3
TankLotNo BK:20222810
TankLotNo C:21240310
TankLotNo M:21240310
TankLotNo Y:20212510
TankLotNo PC:21240310
TankLotNo PM:21240310
WARNING 01:W00000 02:W00000 03:W00000 04:W00000 05:W00000 06:W00000
07:W00000 08:W00000 09:W00000 10:W00000 11:W00000 12:W00000
ERROR 01:E02000 02:E02005 03:E02005 04:E02D03 05:E02D03 06:E02D03 07:E02D03
08:E02D03 09:E02010 10:E02010 11:E02000 12:E02B04 13:E00000 14:E00000
15:E00000 16:E00000 17:E00000 18:E00000 19:E00000 20:E00000
P-SETTING 01:R101ZZ8W0244- 02:R101248W0420- 03:R101368W0235- 04:R101368W1206-
05:C103368W1030- 06:R103368W0002E 07:R101308W0924- 08:R101308W0757-
09:R100ZZ4S0049W 10:00000000000000 11:00000000000000 12:00000000000000
ADJUST A:+0 B:+1 C:+1 D:+0 E:+1 F:+0 G:+0 H:+1 I:+0 J:+2 K:+2
L:+4 M:+2 N:+2 P:+2 Q:+2 R:+2 V:+0 W:+0 X:+0 Y:+0 Z:+0
COUNTER PRINTER: 19 7131 59
CARRIAGE: 2 2
PURGE: 5 5 0
INK: 2 2 2 2 2 2
HEAD: 10 1 1 1 1 1 1
CUT SHEET: 0 0 0 0
ROLL MEDIA: 0 0 0 0
MEDIA ALL: 0 0 0 0 0 0
MEDIA-00: 0 0 0 0
MEDIA-01: 0 0 0 0
MEDIA-02: 0 0 0 0
MEDIA-03: 0 0 0 0
MEDIA-OTHER: 0 0 0 0
S/C:Ver. 00.34.00 S/BOOT:Ver. 01.00.00 E/C:Ver. 0.13 E/Rel:Ver. 00010.01
MAC Address:00008518408F RAM:64MB
Current Path:1 CutSheetType:Glossy Film RollMediaType:Coated Paper
AutoCut:Yes TakeUpReel:Disable
Cutter:Enable Buzzer:On SleepTimer:20 min. EOPTimer:30 sec.
Stand:J504Only Language:Japanese
Auto Adjust:On
Adjust A:+0 B:+1 C:+1 D:+0 E:+1 F:+0 G:+0 H:+1 I:+0 J:+2 K:+2
L:+4 M:+2 N:+2 P:+2 Q:+2 R:+2 V:+0 W:+0 X:+0 Y:+0 Z:+0
CutDustReduct Plain:Off Coated:Off HeavyCoated:Off
GlossyPaper:Off Semi-Glossy:Off GlossyFilms:On BPF:Off
Special1:Off Special2:Off Special3:Off Special4:Off Special5:Off
InkBk:100% InkC:100% InkM:100% InkY:100% InkPC:100% InkPM:100%
Interface:LAN/USB1.1 00000000208F Ext.Interface:IEEE1394 00008514000004DC
Warning 01:W00000 02:W00000 03:W00000 04:W00000 05:W00000
Error 01:E02000 02:E02005 03:E02005 04:E02D03 05:E02D03
TCP/IP FrameType:Ethernet II IPAddress:192.168.0.215 SubnetMask:255.255.255.0
DefaultG/W:0.0.0.0
DHCP:Off BOOTP:Off RARP:Off
Apple Talk PhaseType:Phase2 NetworkNo:65280 NodeID:128
Name:Canon NB-12FB
Zone:*
Type:GARO
value = 10 = 0xa
->

```

Figure 3-58 ssw (Image)

c) Access ink tank EEPROM information

Entering the code below will display the serial numbers and all other information stored in each color's ink tank EEPROM in the form of log data for the six colors simultaneously.

Input code: ssw_ink

```

ssw_ink
InkTank EEPROM Dump
Black Tank
4341 4E4F 4E20 494E
432E 1401 424B F122
0521 0000 0000 0000
F122 0521 0000 0001
DBF4 0001 D4BF 6100
0001 43F4 0001 DBF4
0001 D4BF 6100 0001
43F4 0000 3134 3031
0000 8979 0001 FBDO
0001 DBF4 0061 0001
0000 7953 0001 DBF4
0061 0001 0000 7953
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
Light Cyan Tank
0000 0000
0000 0000
Yellow Tank
4341 4E4F 4E20 494E
432E 1401 5900 F122
0822 0000 0000 0000
F122 0822 0000 0001
A8B0 0000 2C0F 6100
0001 1FE9 0001 A8B0
0000 2C0F 6100 0001
1FE9 0000 3134 3031
0000 8354 0001 FBDO
0001 A8B0 0061 0001
0000 AC97 0001 A8B0
0061 0001 0000 AC97
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
0000 0000 0000 0000
value = 3 = 0x3
->

```

Figure 3-60 ssw_ink (Image)

6.3.1 Service information access procedure

- 1) Connect the printer and computer with a serial cable, and then turn on the printer.
- 2) Check that the printer is in the Online or Offline mode, and then start the computer.
- 3) At the Run command of the start menu, enter "hypertrm.exe", and then click OK.

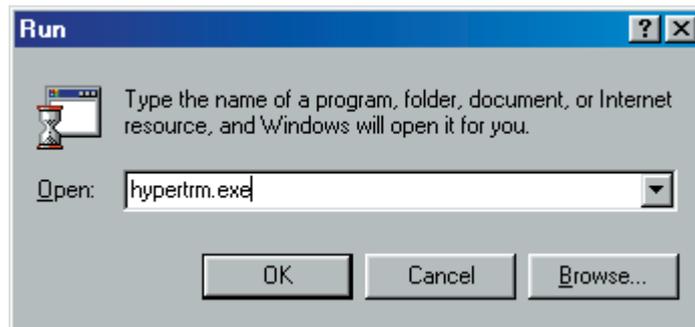


Figure 3-61 Service Information Access Software (Startup 1)

- 4) Enter the name, select the icon, and then click OK.

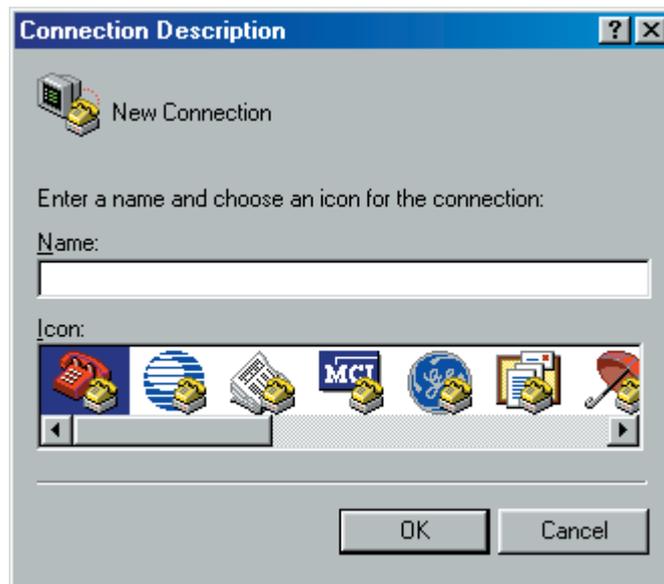


Figure 3-62 Service Information Access Software (Startup 2)

- 5) Once the screen shown below is displayed, select the serial port of the computer that is used, and then click OK.



Figure 3-63 Service Information Access Software (Setup 1)

- 6) Once the screen shown below is displayed, set the values as indicated below, and then click OK,

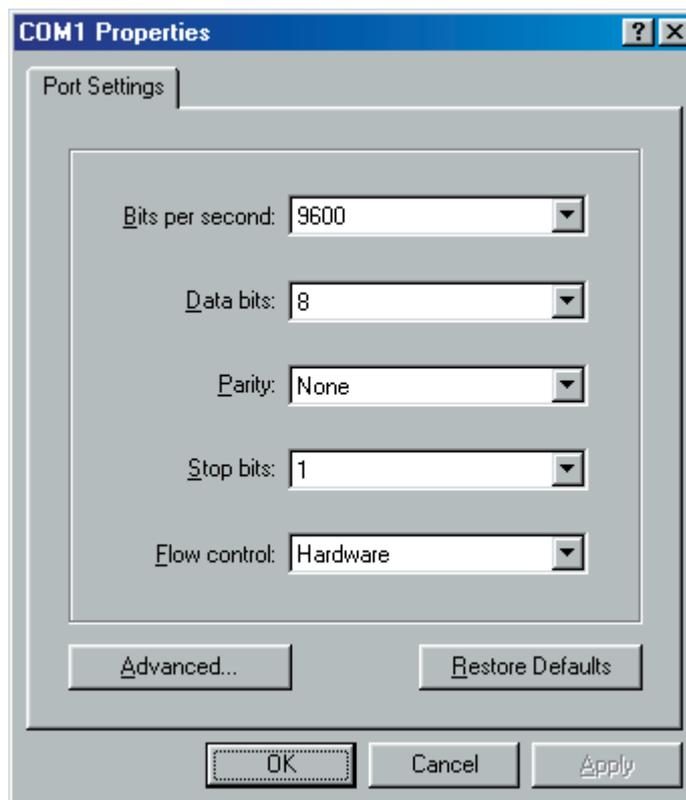


Figure 3-64 Service Information Access Software (Setup 2)

- 7) Enter the access information code, and then press Enter.

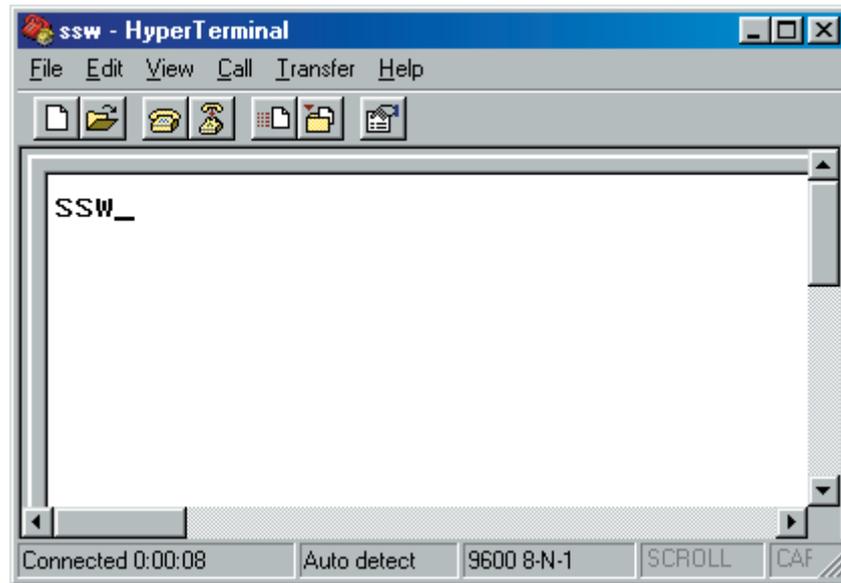


Figure 3-65 Service Information Access Software (Code Input)

- 8) The log data corresponding to the input code is displayed.

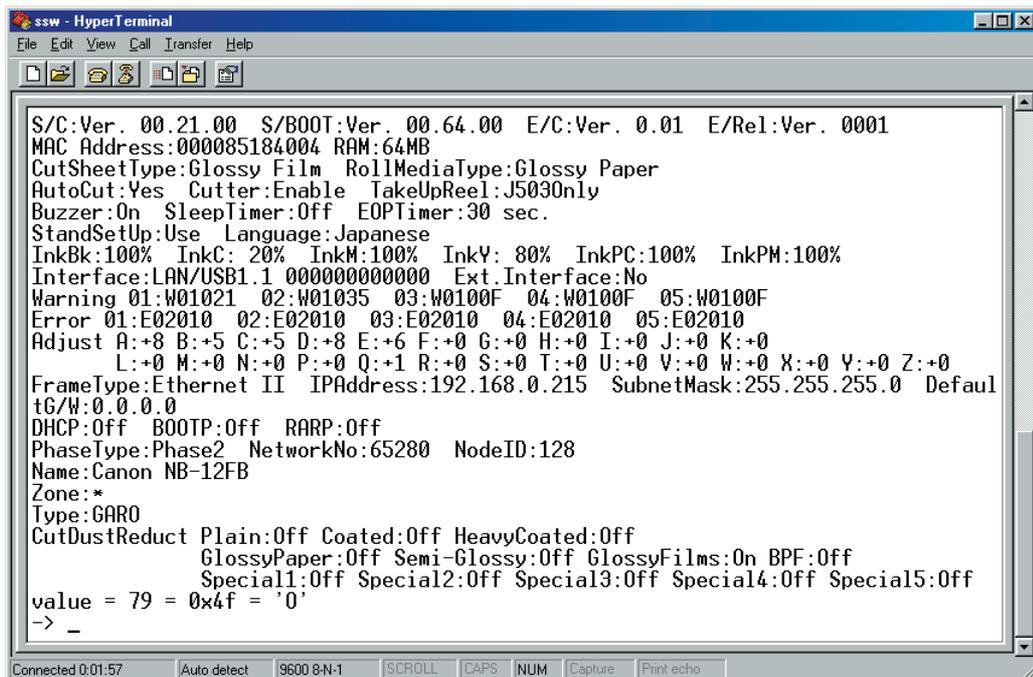


Figure 3-66 Service Information Access Software (Access Information Image)

Part 4

TECHNICAL REFERENCE

Page		Page	
4 - 1	1. OVERVIEW	4 - 22	3.4 Printhead
4 - 1	1.1 Printer Block Diagram	4 - 26	3.5 Purge Unit
4 - 2	1.2 Print Signal Sequence	4 - 31	3.6 Waste Ink Absorber
4 - 5	1.3 Print Driving	4 - 32	3.7 Air Flow
4 - 7	2. FIRMWARE	4 - 33	3.8 Paper Path
4 - 7	2.1 Power On/Off	4 - 37	3.9 Structure of Paper Path
4 - 8	2.2 Power Off	4 - 40	4. PRINTER ELECTRICAL SYSTEM
4 - 9	2.3 Print Control	4 - 40	4.1 Overview
4 - 11	2.4 Print Position Adjustment	4 - 42	4.2 System Controller
4 - 11	2.5 Overheating Protection Control of Printhead	4 - 45	4.3 Engine Controller
4 - 12	2.6 Pause between Pages	4 - 49	4.4 Carriage Relay PCB
4 - 12	2.7 White Raster Skip	4 - 50	4.5 Head Relay PCB
4 - 12	2.8 Sleep Mode	4 - 51	4.6 Motor Driver
4 - 13	3. PRINTER'S MECHANICAL SYSTEM	4 - 52	4.7 Power Supply
4 - 14	3.1 Ink Passage	4 - 54	5. DETECTION FUNCTIONS
4 - 16	3.2 Ink Tank Unit	4 - 54	5.1 Detection Functions Based on Sensors
4 - 18	3.3 Carriage Unit		

1. OVERVIEW

1.1 Printer Block Diagram

A block diagram of the printer is shown in Figure 4-1 below.

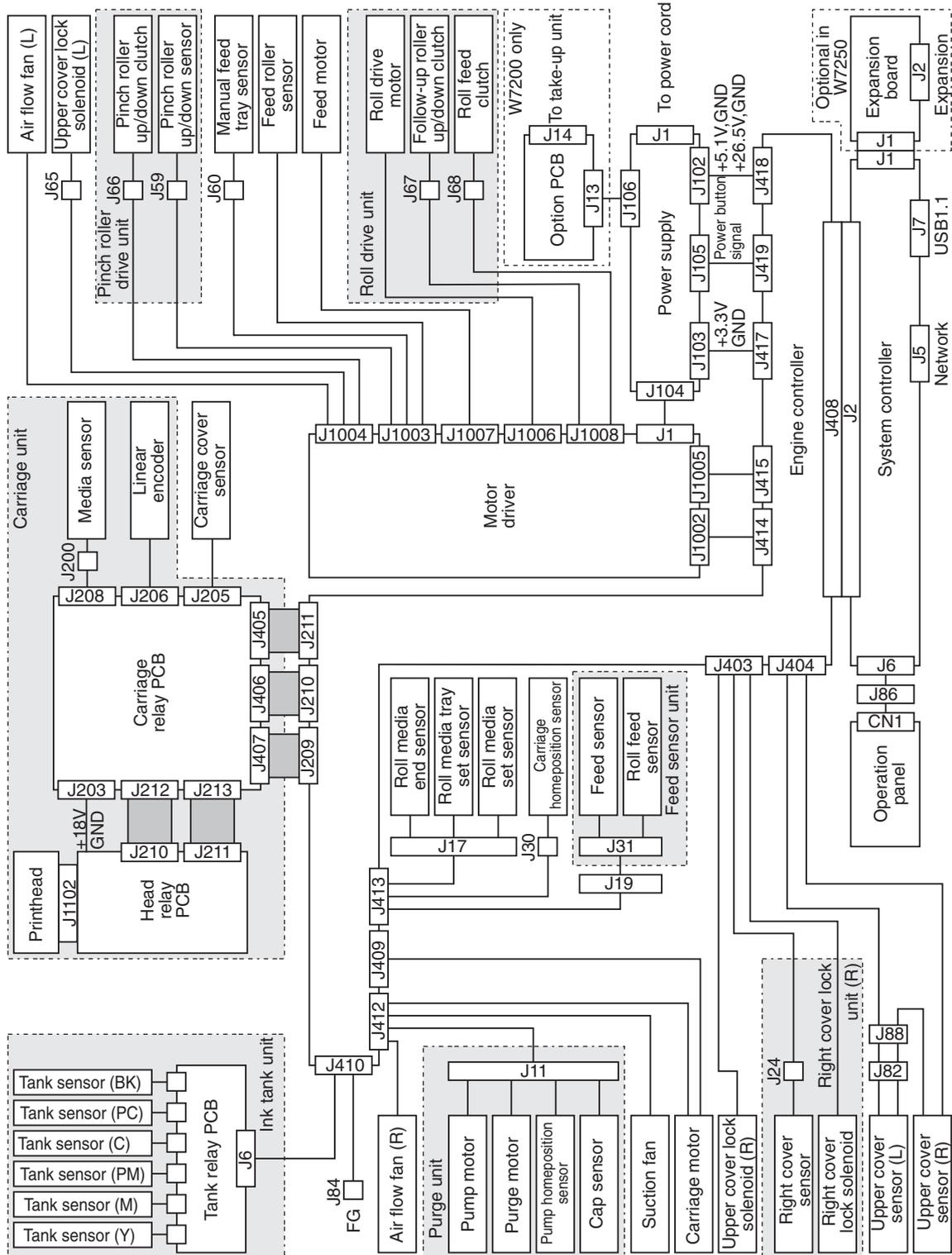


Figure 4-1 Printer Block Diagram

1.2 Print Signal Sequence

The signal sequence from when the printer receives the print signals until printing starts is shown in Figure 4-2 below.

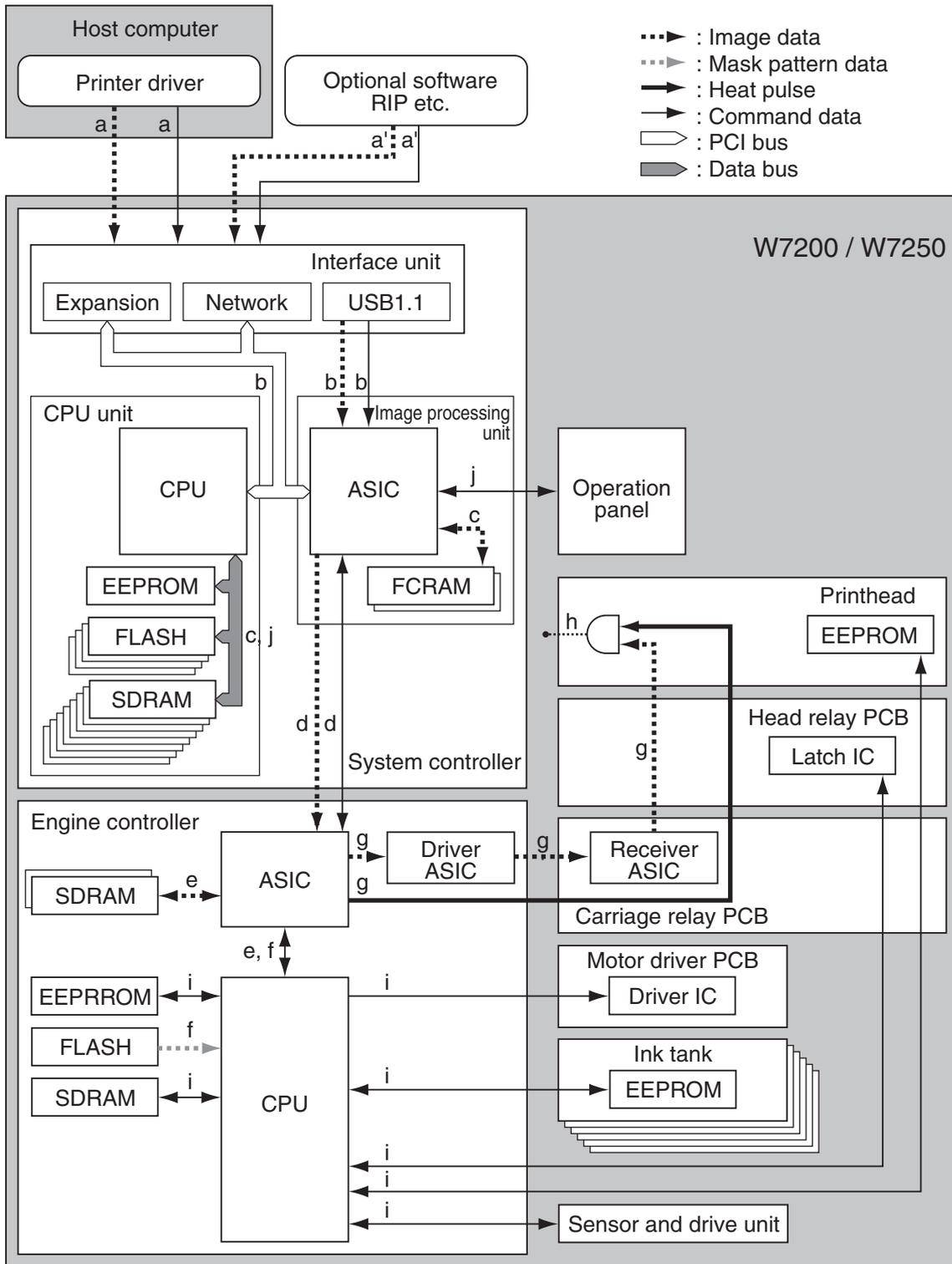


Figure 4-2 Print Signal Sequence

- a) The printer driver in the host PC compresses the image data, and then sends the command data and other print data to the printer.
The resolution conversion, color conversion process, and six-color binary conversion process for the image data are not performed.
The image process table data is used in the color conversion process, binary conversion process, and other operations of the image data to achieve a high-quality image output. This data is created and sent as command data based on the Paper Type setting specified in the printer driver.
- a) An optional software RIP performs resolution conversion of the image and then sends this image data to the printer together with the command data after a color conversion process or six-color binary conversion is performed.
- b) This printer receives the print data from the interfaces controlled by the interface unit of the system controller.
The received print data is sent to the CPU or ASIC.
- c) The system controller extracts the print data that was sent to the CPU or ASIC, and then performs resolution conversion, color conversion process, and six-color binary conversion while storing the data in the SDRAM or FCRAM at the optimal timing.
- d) The ASIC in the system controller converts the print data to six-color binary image data and command data and sends the data to the ASIC in the engine controller.
- e) The ASIC in the engine controller stores the received image data in the SDRAM at the optimal timing, and the data is combined with the mask data in the ASIC and output in coordination with the discharge timing. The ASIC also sends the command data from the system controller to the CPU.
- f) The CPU in the engine controller obtains the mask pattern data from the FLASH ROM based on the command data, printhead information from the EEPROM in the printhead, and internal temperature from the latch IC on the head relay PCB, and sends this data to the ASIC.
- g) The ASIC in the engine controller sends the image data combined with the mask pattern to the printhead as print signals while converting to data corresponding to the printhead information and internal temperature. During this operation, heat pulses are sent to the printhead for performing the optimal head driving.
- g') The print signals undergo differential processing by the driver ASIC to reduce noise and then are restored by the receiver ASIC.
- h) The printheads convert the received print signals internally, which are in serial format, into the parallel data used by a single nozzle array, and then perform heat pulse and AND processing to carry out the printing.

- i) The CPU in the engine controller manages the overall print drive operations while controlling the motor driver and monitoring the status of the printer components based on the adjustment values stored in the EEPROM.
The SDRAM is used as work memory.

- j) The CPU in the system controller manages the overall image processing operations while controlling key operation and message display based on the adjustment values stored in the EEPROM.
The firmware is stored in the FLASH ROM.

1.3 Print Driving

In this printer, the print signals and control signals pass through the carriage relay PCB and head relay PCB and are output to the printheads. This allows the printheads to perform printing operations by discharging ink from the printhead nozzles.

Each printhead has six nozzle arrays (Bk, PC, C, PM, M, and Y from the left with the carriage installed).

The print signals received by each printhead include even nozzle data (E_DTBK1, DTBK2, DTLC1, DTLC2, DTC1, DTC2, DTLM1, DTLM2, DTM1, DTM2, DTY1, DTY2) and odd nozzle data (O_DTBK1, DTBK2, DTLC1, DTLC2, DTC1, DTC2, DTLM1, DTLM2, DTM1, DTM2, DTY1, DTY2). These two data types are sent according to the timing determined by the data transfer clock (HSCLK) and data latch pulse (LTH).

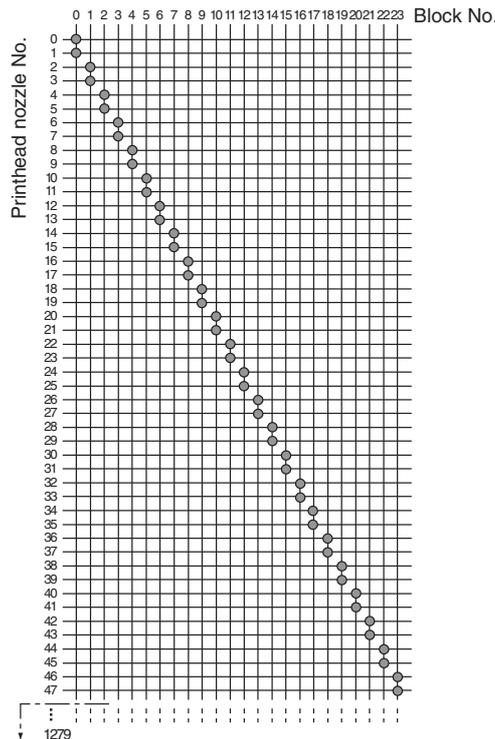
The drive control signals include heat enable signals (HE_BK, LC, C, LM, M, Y) for ejecting ink from the printhead nozzle and subheat enable signals (SHE_BK, LC, C, LM, M, Y) for maintaining stable ink discharge rates by raising the temperature of the head when it is lower than the optimum operating temperature.

1.3.1 Print drive control

Each nozzle array on a printhead has 1280 nozzles.

The nozzles used for discharging ink are selected by the block enable information in the even nozzle data and odd nozzle data and are separated into 24 blocks. (The 1280th nozzle ends at block number 15.) There are 54 nozzles in blocks 0 to 15, and 52 nozzles in blocks 16 to 23.

In the printhead nozzles in the selected block, heat enable signals and subheat enables signals are applied to adjust the pulse width according to the head rank, head temperature, internal temperature, and other factors to ensure optimal ink discharge, and then the heat board in the printhead nozzle is driven so that ink is discharged. The optimal nozzle block is selected based on the printing pass.



The pattern is repeated until 1280 nozzles is reached. The 1280th nozzle ends at block 15.

Figure 4-3 Conceptual Diagram of Nozzle Blocks

1.3.2 Print drive timing

Each printhead has six nozzle arrays (Bk, PC, C, PM, M, Y). These six arrays all use the data transfer clock (HSCLK) and data latch pulse (LTH) signals.

The even nozzle data (E_DTBK1, DTBK2, DTLC1, DTLC2, DTC1, DTC2, DTLM1, DTLM2, DTM1, DTM2, DTY1, DTY2), odd nozzle data (O_DTBK1, DTBK2, DTLC1, DTLC2, DTC1, DTC2, DTLM1, DTLM2, DTM1, DTM2, DTY1, DTY2), heat enable signals (HE_BK, LC, C, LM, M, Y), and subheat enable signals (SHE_BK, LC, C, LM, M, Y) are sent to a specific array as required to control each array separately.

Printing is performed in both the carriage forward and reverse directions.

The encoder sensor installed on the carriage generates 300-dpi pitch linear scale detection signals (CRENCA) and 90°-phase shift signals (CRENCB). The carriage recognizes the movement direction by the state of the CRENCB signals with respect to the rising of the CRENCA signals.

The printhead is driven using the 1200-dpi timing signals (XCOL-STR) that divide the CRENCA signals detected by the 300-dpi timing into four equal parts.

Forward printing is based on the rising of the detection signals (CRENCA).

Reverse printing is based on the falling of the detection signals (CRENCA) and is performed in the same manner as forward printing, except that the transmission order of the even nozzle data and odd nozzle data reverses the heating order of the printhead nozzles.

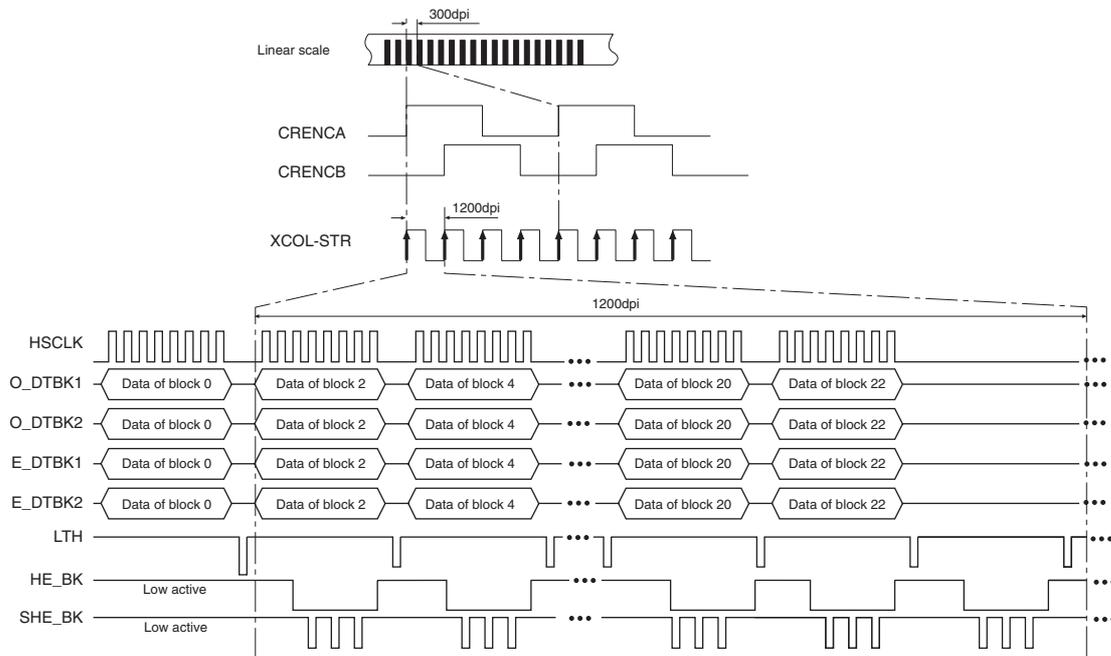


Figure 4-4 Example of Print Drive Timing (Nozzle Array Bk in Forward Printing)

2. FIRMWARE

2.1 Power On/Off

2.1.1 Power On

The initialization sequence when the power is turned on and before the printer enters the online state is shown in the flow chart below. The printer requires about 2 minutes* to perform the initialization sequence.

* This does not include the time required for supplying ink and cleaning after storage for an extended period of time.

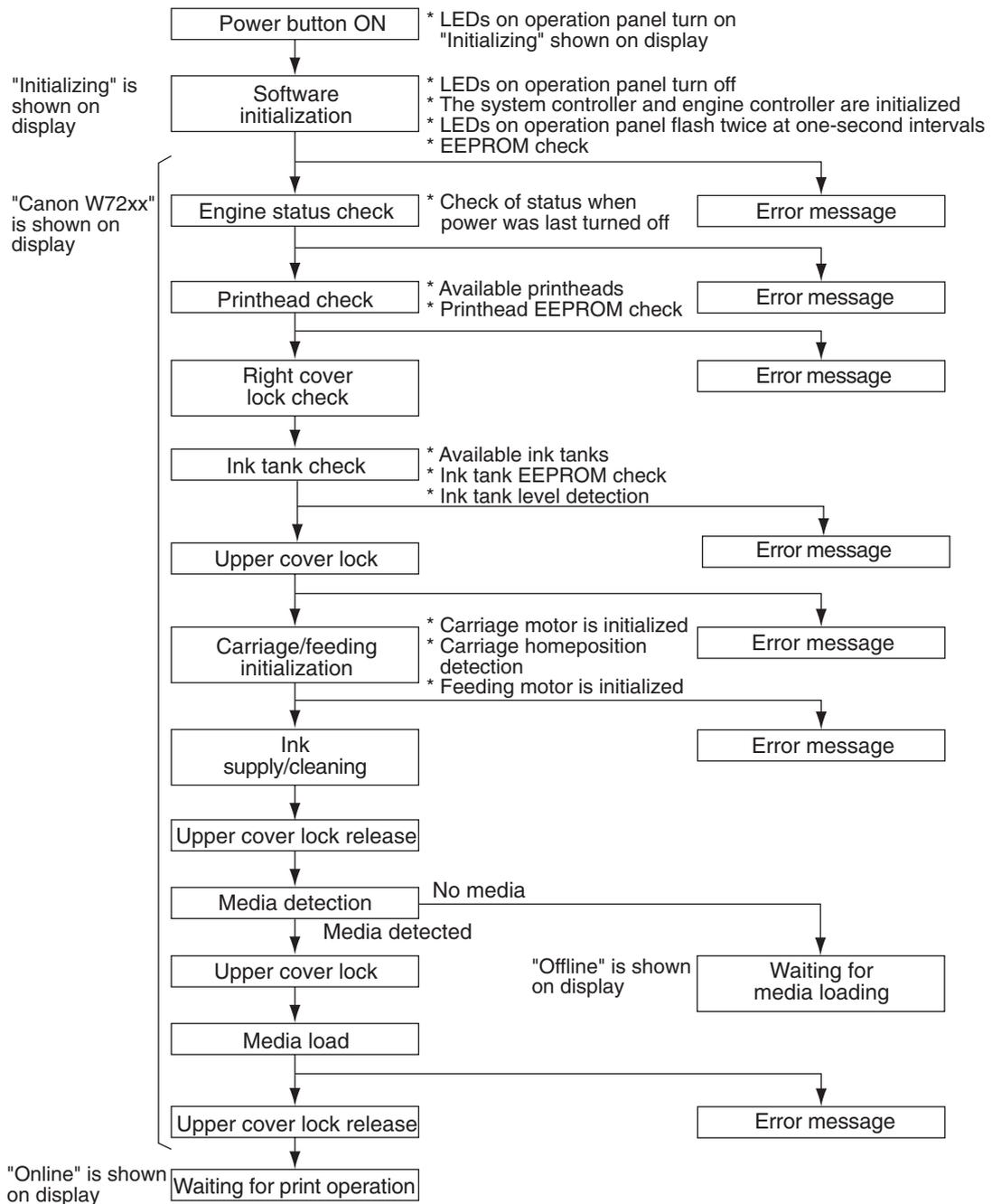


Figure 4-5 Flow chart after Power On

2.2 Power Off

Turning off the power button will cut off the voltage to all driving systems that are supplied power. In this case, the power-off sequence by the firmware is started.



This printer immediately suspends all operations in progress and stops whenever the power cable is unplugged, or the upper cover, right cover, or roll media tray are opened. In this case, the printer may stop without performing the regular capping operation for the printheads. If the power was turned off by unplugging the power cable, plug the power cable into the outlet and turn the power on again so that the printer enters the online state, and then press the power button to turn off the power.

2.2.1 Power Off sequence

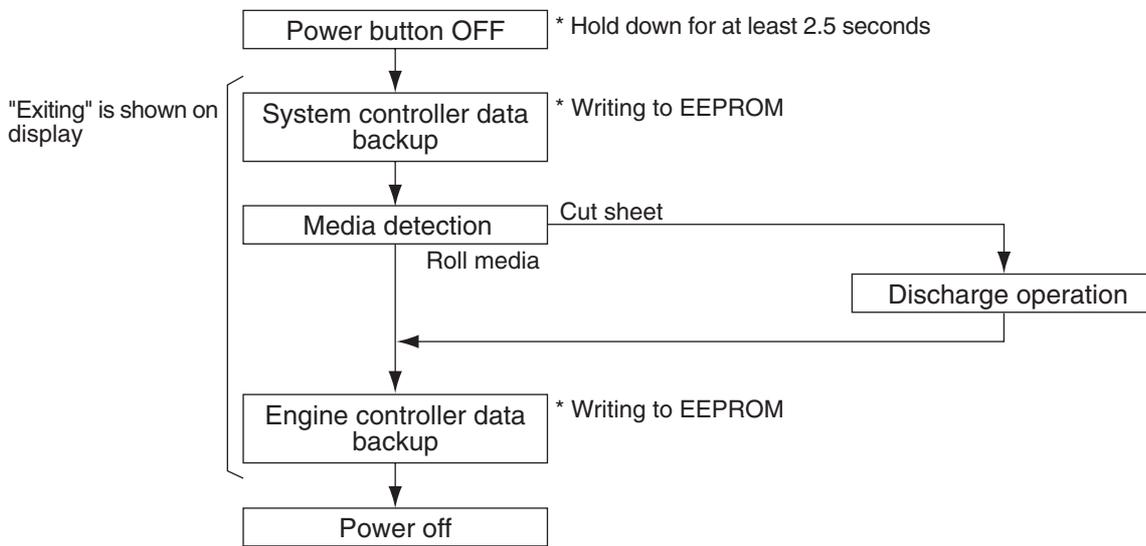


Figure 4-6 Power Off Flow chart

2.3 Print Control

2.3.1 Print mode

This printer is capable of fast, high-quality printing without blurring or inconsistent ink density by changing the carriage operation, sheet feeding operation, and other printing methods according to the selected paper, print quality, and print data. Printing is performed using a multi-pass technique for each color. This allows not only a faster print speed, but also reduces the inconsistency in ink density due to different amounts of ink discharged from the printhead nozzles. Blurring is also prevented since the multi-pass printing technology shifts the print timing so that the ink discharged onto the paper in the previous pass is nearly dry before the next ink discharge occurs in the next pass.

The printer supports a maximum of 8-pass printing according to the required print quality.

a) Draft mode

In the high-speed print mode, the image data is thinned out and a single band (equivalent to the height of a nozzle array) is printed in a two-pass operation.

This mode is used by selecting the "Draft" option under Print Quality settings in the printer driver.

The image data is allocated for each color by the mask pattern control, divided into two parts by the nozzle block control, and then printed by a 2-pass bidirectional.

b) Standard mode

In normal print mode, a single band (equivalent to the height of a nozzle array) is printed using a 4-pass or 8-pass operation.

This mode is used by selecting the "Standard" option under Print Quality settings in the printer driver.

The printing operation varies depending on the sheet settings in the printer driver. If Plain Paper is selected in the sheet settings, the image data is allocated for each color by the mask pattern control, divided into four parts by the nozzle block control, and then printed by a 4-pass single-directional carriage 2x-speed movement.

If a media other than Plain Paper is selected in the sheet settings, the image data is allocated for each color by the mask pattern control, divided into eight parts by the nozzle block control, and then printed by an 8-pass bidirectional.

c) High mode

In high quality print mode, a single band is printed using an 8-pass operation.

This mode is used by selecting the "High" option under Print Quality settings in the printer driver.

The image data is allocated for each color by the mask pattern control, divided into eight parts by the nozzle block control, and then printed by an 8-pass bidirectional.

d) Highest mode

In super-high quality print mode, a single band is printed using an 8-pass operation.

This mode is used by selecting the "Highest" Fine option under Print Quality settings in the printer driver.

The image data is allocated for each color by the mask pattern control, divided into eight parts by the nozzle block control, and then printed by an 8-pass single-directional.

Table 4-1 PRINT MODES

Mode	Print resolution (dpi)	Number of passes	Print direction	Paper type
Draft	1200 x 300	2	Bidirectional	Plain paper, coated paper
Standard	1200 x 600	4	Single-directional	Plain paper
	1200 x 600	8	Bidirectional	All sheets except plain paper
High	1200 x 600	8	Bidirectional	All sheets except plain paper
Highest	1200 x 600	8	Single-directional	All sheets except plain paper and coated paper

2.4 Print Position Adjustment

For instructions on how to perform print position adjustments, see [Part 3: 4.4.3 Contents of main menu \(page 3-43\)](#).

2.4.1 Print position adjustment

This printer incorporates a print position adjustment function for manual adjustment of the vertical/horizontal positions, bidirectional printing position, and sheet feeding rate of the printheads installed on the carriage.

The print position is adjusted by first printing the print position adjustment patterns with slightly modified conditions and setting the adjustment values observed visually from the operation panel.

The print position adjustment requires a roll media or cut sheet that is A3 size or larger.

2.5 Overheating Protection Control of Printhead

This printer is provided with an overheating protection control function that detects abnormally high temperatures in the printheads.

The printheads can overheat, for instance, when the printing process continues for some time with no ink supplied to the printhead nozzles. The overheating protection control function prevents a printhead nozzle from becoming permanently clogged or damaged due to excessive heat.

The overheating protection control process is based on the detected temperature of the head temperature sensors in each nozzle array. If overheating is detected in a single nozzle array, control is performed in one of the two stages below according to the temperature.

Protection level 1:

If the head temperature sensor detects a temperature above 80°C, the printer allows the carriage to continue in the direction of its scanning pass and then stops it at the scan end position. The wait control is activated to allow the heat to dissipate.

Printing resumes when the temperature drops below 80°C or 30 seconds have passed in the wait state.

Protection level 2:

If the head temperature sensor detects a temperature above 120°C, the printer immediately stops the printing operation, and the carriage returns to the home position where capping is performed. An error message is shown on the display.

2.6 Pause between Pages

To prevent ink blots from forming, this printer discharges printed pages so that they hang down from the platen and dry and is provided with a Pause between Pages function for discharging sheets after a specified wait time. The user can set the wait time from the printer driver. This function is particularly useful for film-type and other sheets that need extra time to dry.

2.7 White Raster Skip

To improve the printing throughput, this printer incorporates a White Raster Skip function for skipping the carriage scan operation for continuous blank segments of print data.

2.8 Sleep Mode

This printer has a Sleep mode for reducing the standby power.

The printer automatically enters Sleep mode (Power Save mode) when there are no user operations and no print data has been received for a preset period of time in the Online or Offline mode. The printer wakes from Sleep mode whenever the user performs any key operations on operation manual or print data is received from the host computer. Whenever the roller trace preventive sequence starts automatically, the printer temporarily switches to the normal power mode and then returns to Sleep mode again once the operation is finished.

The time until the printer enters Sleep mode can be changed from the operation panel. See [Part 3: 4.4.3 Contents of main menu \(page 3-43\)](#) for the procedure for changing this setting.

3. PRINTER MECHANICAL SYSTEM

The printer mechanical system can be roughly divided into two major components: the ink passage and paper path.

The ink passage consists of ink tank unit and a carriage unit where printheads are installed, purge unit, and waste ink absorber unit and performs the supply, circulation, and suction/removal of ink.

The paper path includes the roll media tray, roll media feeder, paper feeder and performs two types of feeding, transport, and discharge of media.

This section presents an overview of the components of the mechanical system.

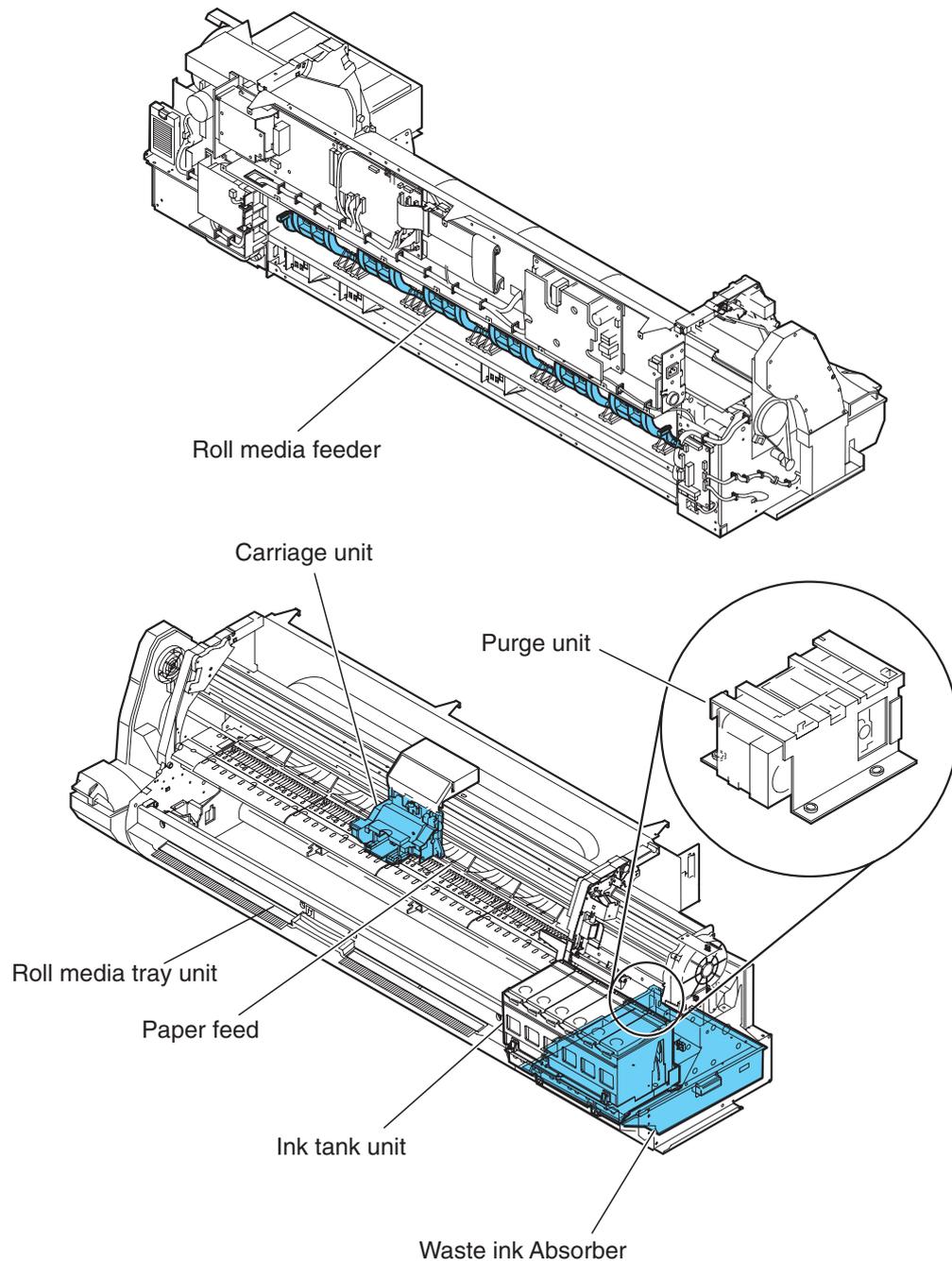


Figure 4-7 Printer Mechanical System

3.1 Ink Passage

3.1.1 Overview of the ink passage

The ink passage consists of the ink tanks, printheads, caps, maintenance jet tray, waste ink absorber, ink tubes for connecting the mechanical components, and ink suction pump that is activated when ink is removed. These components are used to perform the supply, circulation, and suction/removal of ink.

A schematic diagram of the ink passage (for one color) and the ink flow are shown in the figure below.

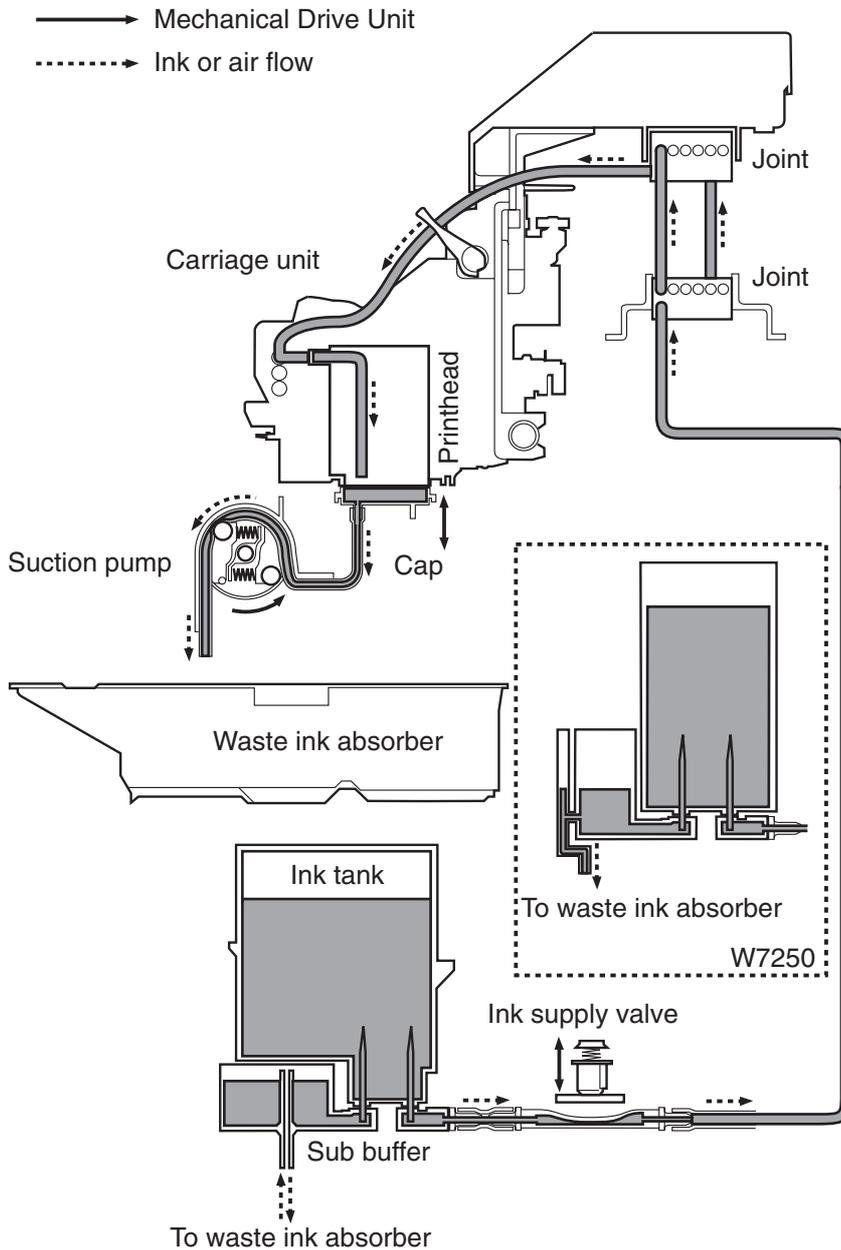


Figure 4-8 Schematic Diagram of the Ink Passage (for One Color)

a) Ink supply from ink tank to ink supply valve

The ink tank contains ink which is supplied to the printhead.

Ink flows from the ink tank to the ink supply valve due to the fluid level difference.

b) Ink inflow from ink tank to sub buffer

Although ink flows from the ink tank to the sub buffer due to the fluid level difference, air also enters from the air passage of the sub buffer to maintain the pressure inside the ink tank at a fixed level. If the ink inside the sub buffer exceeds a certain level, the ink passes through the air passage and flows to the waste ink absorber.

c) Ink supply from ink supply valve to printhead

Ink is supplied from the ink tank to the printhead by opening the ink supply valve, capping the heads, and then driving the suction pump. The ink removed from the caps flows to the waste ink absorber.

d) Ink supply during printing

During the printing operation, ink is constantly filling the printheads from the ink tank due to the negative pressure applied to the printhead nozzle by the opening of the ink supply valve and discharging of the print ink.

Waste ink removed by the cleaning operation and waste ink in the right maintenance jet tray flows to the waste ink absorber.



If all of the ink passages are opened (ink tank is not installed, ink supply valve is opened, and printhead lock lever is opened) when ink fills the ink tube, the ink in the ink tube may reverse-flow due to the difference in the water head, and ink may leak from the ink supply needle. Therefore, do not open all of the ink passages at the same time when the ink tube is filled with ink.

3.2 Ink Tank Unit

3.2.1 Structure of ink tank unit

a) Ink tank

The ink tanks contain ink (approx. 330 ml for W7200, approx. 130 ml for W7250) for each color.

The amount of ink is stored in the EEPROM mounted on the ink tank.

The remaining ink level in the ink tank is detected using a dot count based on the EEPROM information.

When the electrodes mounted to the hollow needle detect that there is no electrical current, a message appears on the display indicating that the ink is nearly empty. If the dot count reaches the prescribed value from this state, the ink tank is considered to be empty.

b) Ink port

The hollow needle enters the ink port (covered by a rubber plug) when the ink tank lever of the printer is pressed down to the ink tank fixing position, and this establishes an ink passage between the printer and ink tank.

c) Air passage

The open hollow needle enters the air passage (covered by a rubber plug) when the ink tank lever of the printer is pressed down to the ink tank fixing position, and the internal pressure of the ink tank is opened so that the internal pressure is maintained at a fixed level.

d) Notches for preventing incorrect installation

The ink tanks have notches for preventing incorrect installation. The wrong ink tanks cannot be inserted and set because of these notches.

The ink tank lever can be lowered only when the ink tank has been installed in the set position, and the ink supply will not start unless the ink tank lever is lowered.

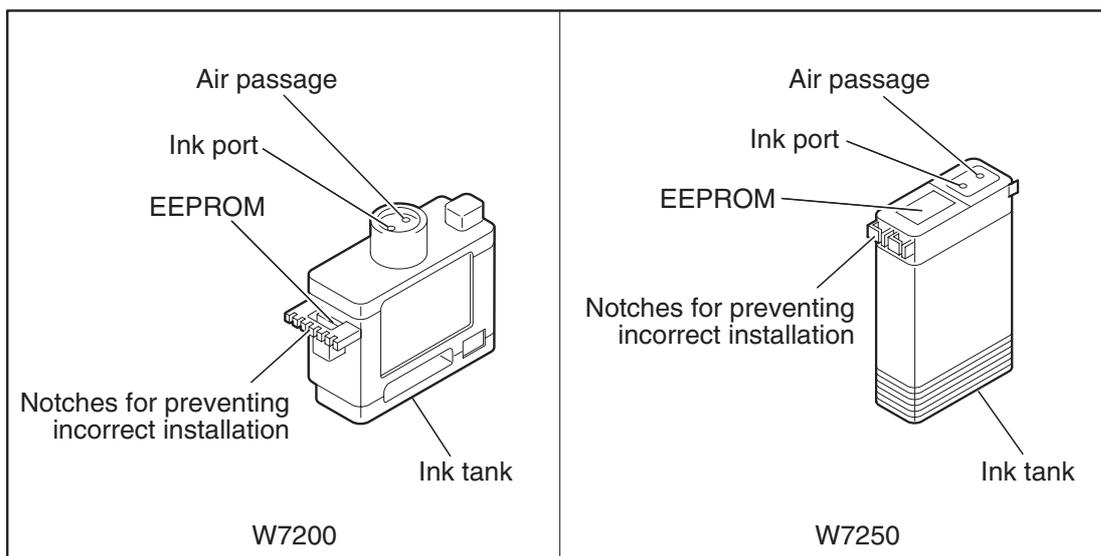


Figure 4-9 Ink Tank

e) Ink supply valve

The ink supply valve is located between the ink tank and ink tube. This valve prevents ink leakage from occurring when the ink tube on the ink tank side is opened during replacement of the ink tank.

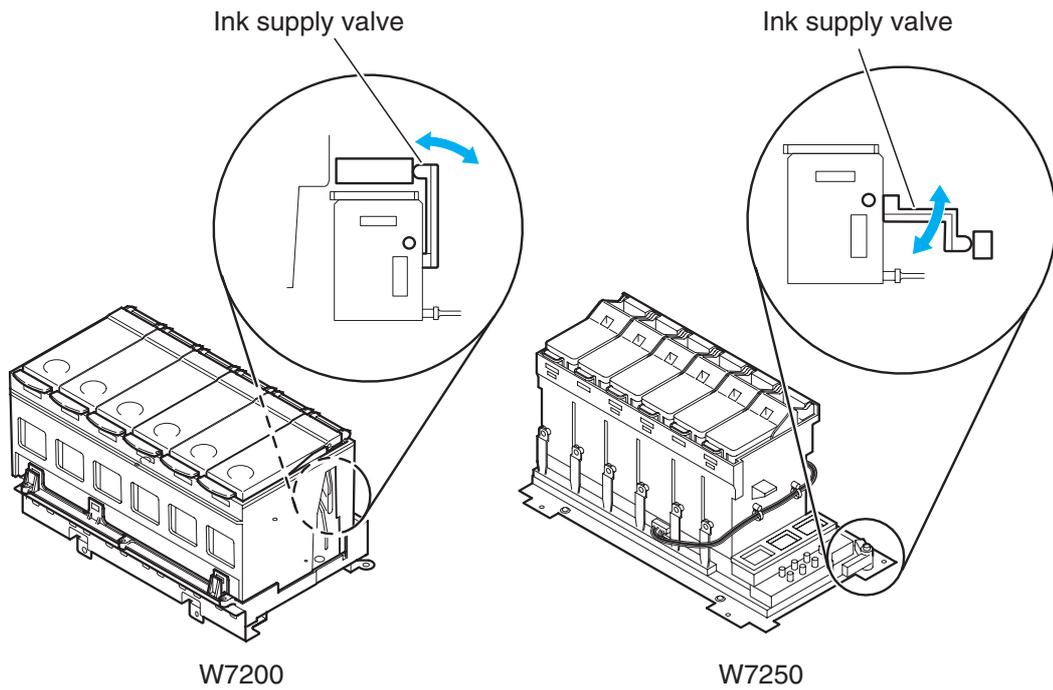


Figure 4-10 Ink Supply Valve

3.3 Carriage Unit

3.3.1 Carriage functions

a) Printhead mounting

The carriage mechanically locks the printheads and connects them to the terminals on the head relay PCB.

b) Control

A carriage relay PCB and encoder are installed on the carriage. The carriage relay PCB communicates the drive signal of the printhead, and the encoder detects the carriage position and generates print timing signals. The carriage relay PCB is connected to the engine controller by flexible cable.

c) Carriage drive

The carriage belt moves the carriage back and forth on the platen. The carriage belt is driven by the power from the carriage motor.

d) Printhead maintenance

This printer has a cleaning function that performs wiping and suction of the printheads when the carriage is stopped at the carriage homeposition.

e) Media thickness adjustment

The gap between the bottom face of the printheads and the media surface can be adjusted according to the media thickness. Although the print quality is higher when the gap is narrow, ink blots may form on the print surface due to contact of the media with the printhead face, or the printhead nozzles may be damaged.

In this printer, the user can use the printhead height adjustment lever to select the gap width according to the media thickness (3 positions).

f) Paper width/skew detection

A media sensor is installed at the bottom left of the carriage for detecting the paper width and skewing of the paper on the platen.

g) Internal temperature detection

Thermistors installed in the printhead relay PCBs are used to detect the internal temperature in the vicinity of the printhead.

3.3.2 Structure of carriage

a) Printhead mounting unit

The printheads are mounted to the carriage by the printhead lock cover and printhead lock lever. When the printheads are fixed to the carriage, the signal contact point of the head relay PCB contacts the signal contact point of the printheads, and this results in the transmission of print signals. Also, the ink passage from the ink tank passes through the ink tube and connects to the printheads.

b) Ink port

Ink passes through the ink tube and is supplied to the printheads. The ink tubes run through the joints and inside the frame-shape caterpillar and move in coordination with the carriage.

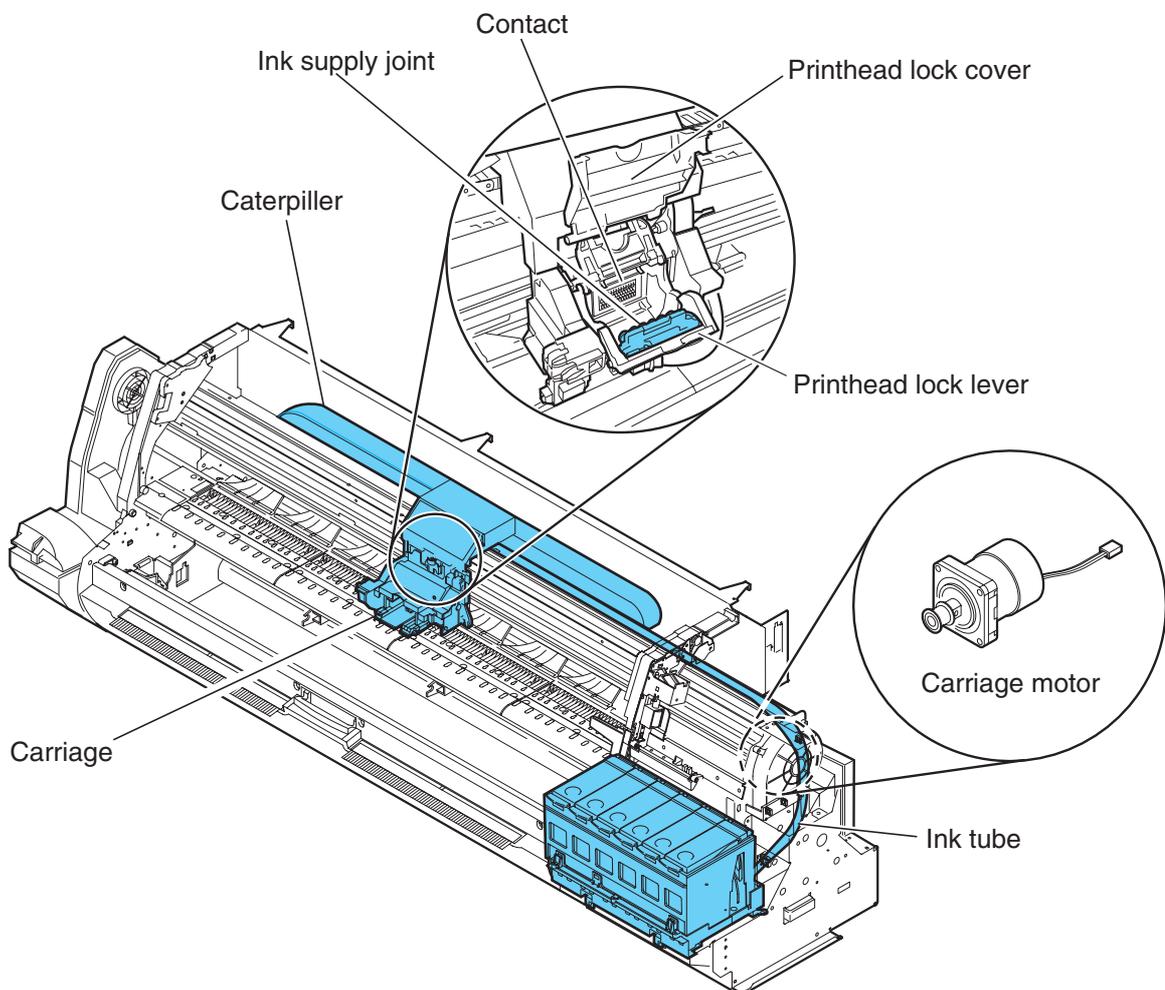


Figure 4-11 Carriage Unit (1)

c) Control unit

The carriage relay PCBs are connected to the head relay PCBs by short flexible cables. The flexible cable between the engine controller and carriage relay PCB is mounted on a frame-shaped caterpillar and moves in coordination with the carriage. A photocoupler-type encoder is mounted at the bottom of the rear of the carriage for reading the linear scale during carriage movement.

d) Carriage drive unit

Mechanical misalignment of the installed printheads in the vertical/horizontal direction and in bidirectional printing can be corrected by using the Adjustment command in the Main Menu to shift the print timing.

The carriage belt, which is driven by the power from the DC motor-type carriage motor, moves the carriage in the sheet horizontal direction.

The carriage homeposition, which is also the capping position, is detected by the carriage homeposition edge on the right side of the carriage and the photo interrupter-type carriage homeposition sensor on the carriage right-side plate. The position on the linear scale that corresponds to the detected carriage homeposition is recorded as the homeposition, and this position is set as the reference point for position control. The carriage motor is then driven and controlled using the control signals generated by the engine controller.

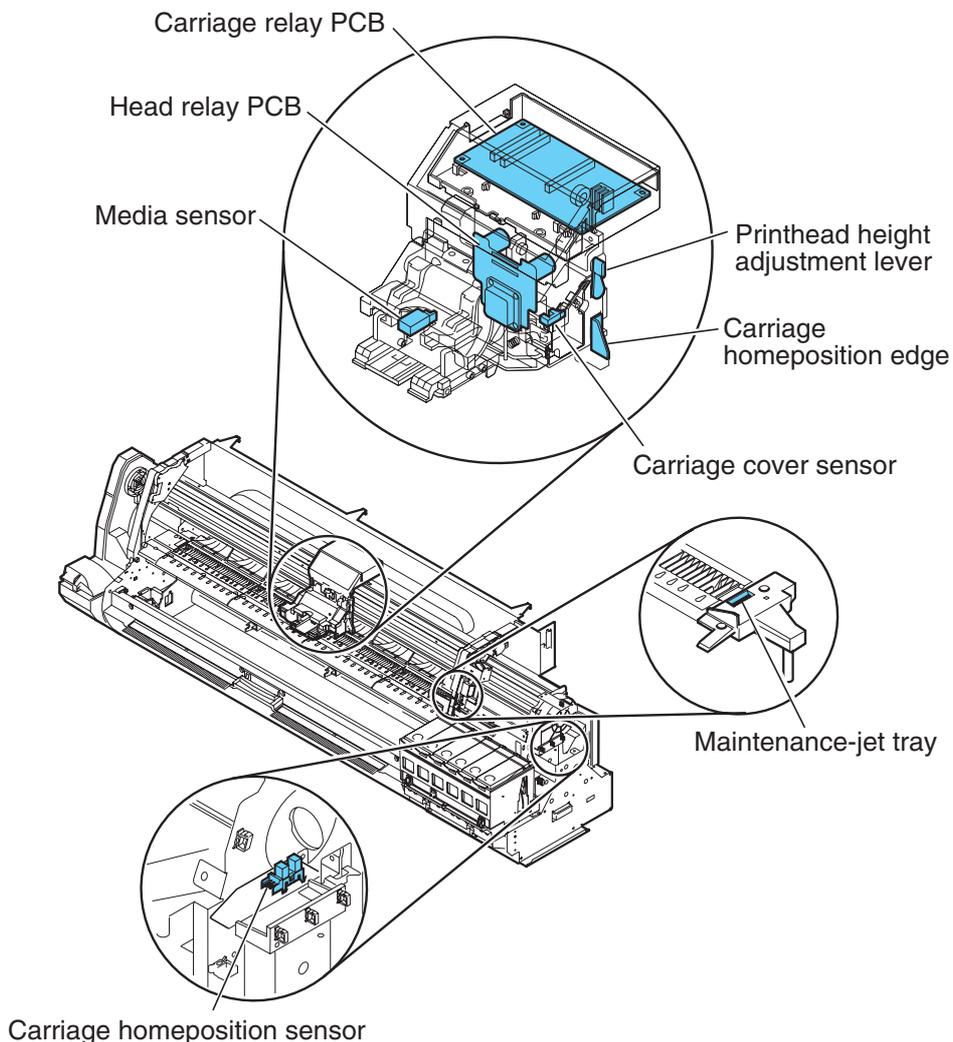


Figure 4-12 Carriage Unit (2)

e) Printhead maintenance unit

The printer performs cleaning operations of the printheads at the carriage homeposition.

In the wiping operation, the printheads installed in the carriage are wiped as the purge motor rotates when the carriage is stopped at the carriage homeposition. The maintenance jets are discharged when the carriage passes through the maintenance jet tray, located at the right side of the platen, while the carriage is moving forward. The suction operation is performed using the suction cap of the purge unit.

f) Gap adjustment unit

The paper thickness lever located on the right side of the carriage works in coordination with the height adjustment cam. The height adjustment rollers located at the bottom-right edge of the carriage front are moved up and down by this mechanism, and this moves the head holder position up or down to change the gap between the face of the printheads and the media.

g) Media sensor unit

The media sensor located at the bottom left of the carriage consists of an LED and photosensor.

The sensor is protected by a transparent cover to prevent the adhesion of dust and other foreign substances due to ink mist.

h) Internal temperature detection

A thermistor for measuring the internal temperature is installed on the head relay PCB on the rear of the head holder.

i) Carriage homeposition edge

The carriage homeposition is determined to be the position on the linear scale measured when the carriage homeposition edge has been detected.

3.4 Printhead

3.4.1 Structure of printhead

A printhead has six nozzle arrays. Each nozzle can be controlled individually so that a six-color discharge action is performed by a single printhead.

a) Nozzle arrays

Each nozzle array provides 1280 nozzles arranged in a two-column staggered pattern. Each column is comprised of 640 nozzles separated by an interval of 1/600 inch and is arranged in a staggered pattern to form 1280 nozzles separated by an interval of 1/1200 inch.

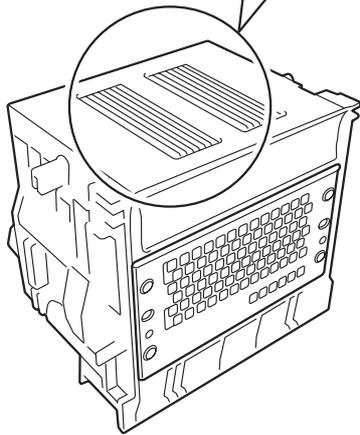
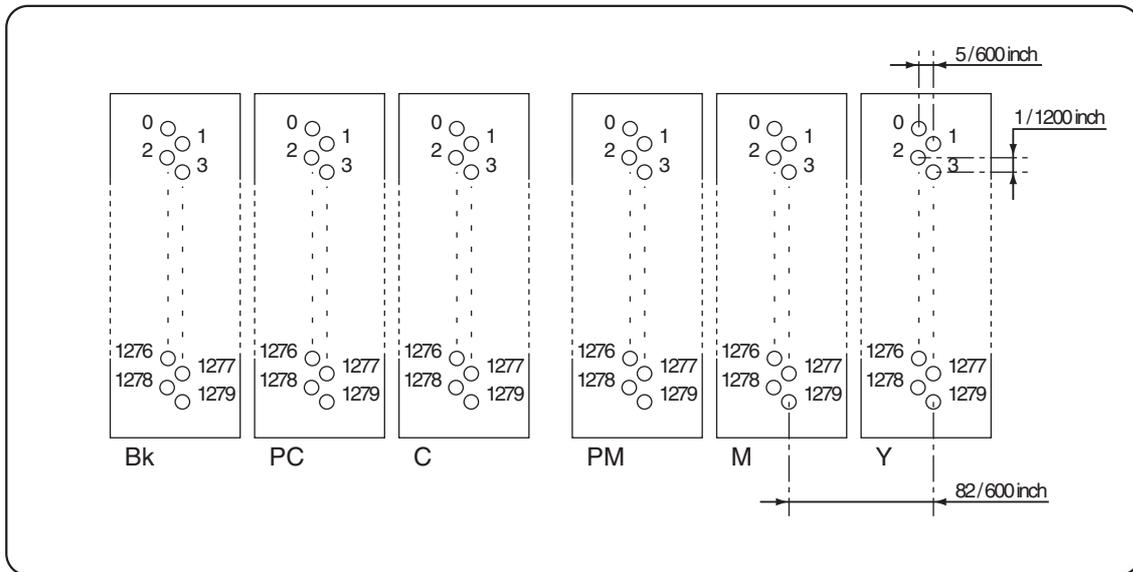


Figure 4-13 Nozzle Configuration

b) Nozzle structure

Ink is supplied from the ink tank, passes through by a mesh ink filter, and is sent to the nozzles.

Ink is supplied from the shared ink chamber to the nozzles. When the head driving current is applied to the nozzle heater, this causes the ink to boil and form bubbles so that ink droplets are discharged from the nozzles.

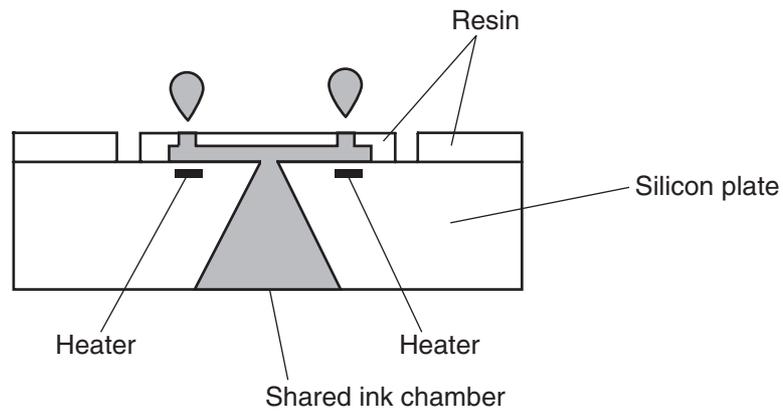


Figure 4-14 Nozzle Structure

c) Signal contact points

The signal contact points on the printhead are connected to the signal contact points on the head relay PCB so that print signals and other information are sent from the carriage relay PCB to the nozzles.

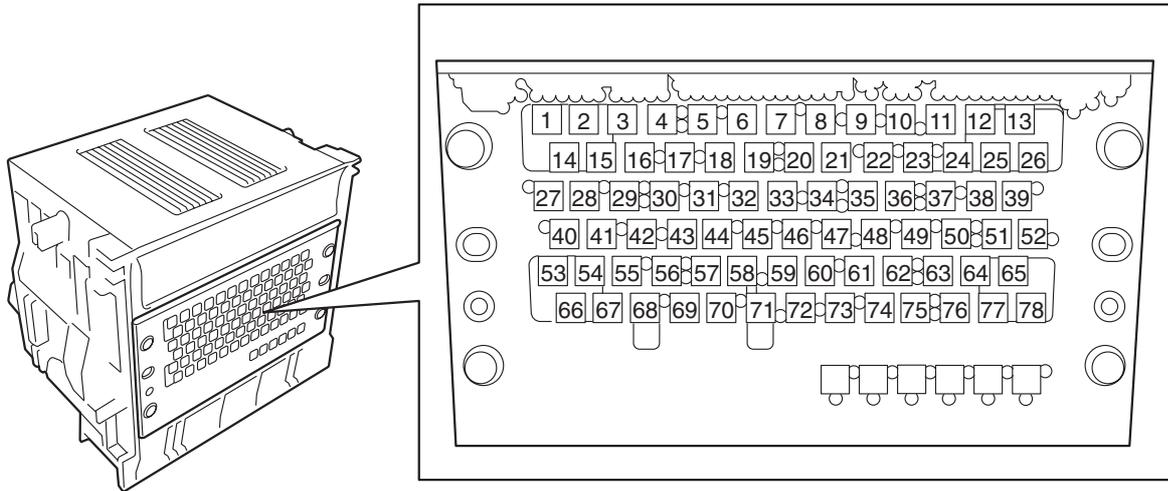


Figure 4-15 Signal Contact Points

Table 4-2 SIGNALS AND PIN NUMBERS OF SIGNAL CONTACT POINTS (1/2)

Pin number	Signal	IN/OUT	Function
1,2,3	HGND	-	GND
4	E_DTLM1	IN	Nozzle data signal (M nozzle array/even nozzle)
5	E_DTLC1	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/even nozzle)
6	O_DTLM2	IN	Nozzle data signal (M nozzle array/odd nozzle)
7,8	GND	-	GND
9	E_DTC1	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/even nozzle)
10	E_DTC2	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/even nozzle)
11	O_DTC2	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/odd nozzle)
12,13,14,15	HGND	-	GND
16	SHE_LC	IN	Sub heat enable signal (PC nozzle array)
17	O_DTLC1	IN	Nozzle data signal (PC nozzle array/odd nozzle)
18	SHE_BK	IN	Sub heat enable signal (Bk nozzle array)
19	SHE_LM	IN	Sub heat enable signal (PM nozzle array)
20	HE_LM	IN	Heat enable signal (PM nozzle array)
21	GND	-	GND
22	E_DTM2	IN	Nozzle data signal (M nozzle array/even nozzle)
23	LTH	IN	Data latch signal
24,25	HGND	-	GND
26	VHFBG	-	NC
27	DIALC()	OUT	DI sensor signal (PC nozzle array)
28	DIAK()	OUT	DI sensor signal (Bk nozzle array)
29	DIAK()	OUT	DI sensor signal (Bk nozzle array)
30	O_DTBKI	IN	Nozzle data signal (Bk nozzle array/odd nozzle)

Table 4-2 SIGNALS AND PIN NUMBERS OF SIGNAL CONTACT POINTS (2/2)

Pin number	Signal	IN/OUT	Function
31	HE_LC	IN	Heat enable signal (PC nozzle array)
32	DIALM1	OUT	DI sensor signal (PM nozzle array)
33	SHE_M	IN	Sub heat enable signal (M nozzle array)
34	HE_Y	IN	Heat enable signal (Y nozzle array)
35	DIAM1	OUT	DI sensor signal (M nozzle array)
36	E_DTY2	IN	Nozzle data signal (Y nozzle array/odd nozzle)
37	P_DTM2	OM	Nozzle data signal (M nozzle array/even nozzle)
38	DIAY0	OUT	DI sensor signal (Y nozzle array)
39	E_DTY1	IN	Nozzle data signal (Y nozzle array/even nozzle)
40	O_DTBK1	IN	Nozzle data signal (Bk nozzle array/odd nozzle)
41	E_DTBK1	IN	Nozzle data signal (Bk nozzle array/even nozzle)
42	E_DTLC2	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/even nozzle)
43	HE_BK	IN	Heat enable signal (Bk nozzle array)
44	DIALM0	OUT	DI sensor signal (PM nozzle array)
45	DIAC0	OUT	DI sensor signal (C nozzle array)
46	HSCLK	IN	Synchronous clock signal
47	HE_M	IN	Heat enable signal (M nozzle array)
48	DIAY1	OUT	DI sensor signal (Y nozzle array)
49	O_DTY2	IN	Nozzle data signal (Y nozzle array/odd nozzle)
50	O_DTY1	IN	Nozzle data signal (Y nozzle array/odd nozzle)
51	P_DTM1	IN	Nozzle data signal (M nozzle array/odd nozzle)
52	DIAM0	OUT	DI sensor signal (M nozzle array)
53	VHFBH	-	NC
54	VH	IN	Head drive power supply (18 V)
55	E_DTBK2	IN	Nozzle data signal (Bk nozzle array/even nozzle)
56	O_DTLC2	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/odd nozzle)
57	O_DTLM2	IN	Nozzle data signal (PM nozzle array/odd nozzle)
58	H5V	IN	Head logic power supply (5.1 V)
59	PECE	IN	Head EEPROM chip select signal
60	SHE_C	IN	Sub heat enable signal (C nozzle array)
61	EPDO	OUT	Head EEPROM read data signal
62	E_DTM1	OUT	Nozzle data signal (M nozzle array/even nozzle)
63	O_DTC1	IN	Nozzle data signal (C nozzle array/odd nozzle)
64,65,66,67	VH	IN	Head drive power supply (18 V)
68	VHT	IN	Power transistor drive power supply (18 V)
69	DIALC1	OUT	DI sensor signal (PC nozzle array)
70	O_DTLM1	IN	Nozzle data signal (PM nozzle array/odd nozzle)
71	H5V	IN	Head logic power supply (5.1 V)
72	EPCLK	IN	Head EEPROM clock signal
73	EPD1	IN	Head EEPROM write data signal
74	DIAC1	OUT	DI sensor signal (C nozzle array)
75	HE_C	IN	Heat enable signal (C nozzle array)
76	SHE_Y	IN	Sub heat enable signal (Y nozzle array)
77,78	VH	IN	Head drive power supply (18 V)

3.5 Purge Unit

3.5.1 Functions of purge unit

To maintain high print quality, the purge unit performs maintenance of the nozzles in the printheads.

The functions of the purge unit include capping, cleaning, and ink supply.

a) Capping

Capping prevents nozzle drying and dust adhesion by pressing the cap of the purge unit to the face plate on the nozzle section of the printhead.

Capping is performed when printing is completed, at the start of the suction operation, and when switching to the standby state due to an error.

The capping operation also connects the ink passage between the printhead and purge unit.

b) Cleaning

Cleaning includes a wiping operation for removing paper fibers and dried ink deposits adhering to the nozzle face plates of the printheads, a suction operation for removing ink from the nozzles and drawing new ink to refresh the nozzles, and a maintenance jet operation where ink is sprayed from the nozzles to the cap or maintenance jet tray to remove bubbles in the nozzles and dust and other foreign particles near the nozzles. The combination of these three maintenance operations improves nozzle discharge performance.

Details of the cleaning function are shown in the table below.

Printer status	Cleaning description	Ink consumption ¹
At installation	Initial refilling suction	Approx. 35 g
Power has been turned on after a predefined amount of ink has been discharged since the last ink level adjustment suction 2	Cleaning C	Approx. 13 g
Power has been turned on after at least 720 hours has elapsed since the last ink level adjustment suction 2	Cleaning C	Approx. 13 g
Before printing when less than 48 hours has elapsed since the last printing was completed	Wiping + Maintenance jet	Approx. 0.008 g
Before printing when between 48 hours and 168 hours has elapsed since the last printing was completed	Wiping + Maintenance jet	Approx. 0.016 g
Before printing when more than 168 hours has elapsed since the last printing was completed	Cleaning A	Approx. 1 g
Scan period during printing	Maintenance jet	5 discharges per nozzle
After printing is completed when a predefined amount of ink has been discharged since the last wiping ²	Wiping + Maintenance jet	Approx. 0.008 g
After printhead replacement	Cleaning C	Approx. 13 g

Printer status	Cleaning description	Ink consumption ^{*1}
Manual cleaning (Head Cleaning A)	Cleaning A	Approx. 1 g
Manual cleaning (Head Cleaning B)	Cleaning B suction	Approx. 6 g
When printer is exited normally ^{*3}	Cleaning C	Approx. 13 g

*¹ Ink consumption amount for each nozzle array.

*² In the banner (48" oversize) print mode, the cleaning operation starts upon reaching a predefined point.

*³ When the power button was not pressed and capping could not be performed, such as during a power outage or when the power cable is unplugged.

c) Ink supply

The suction pump of the purge unit operates in coordination with the ink supply valve to deliver the ink in the ink tank to the printheads during the initial refilling and ink level adjustment.

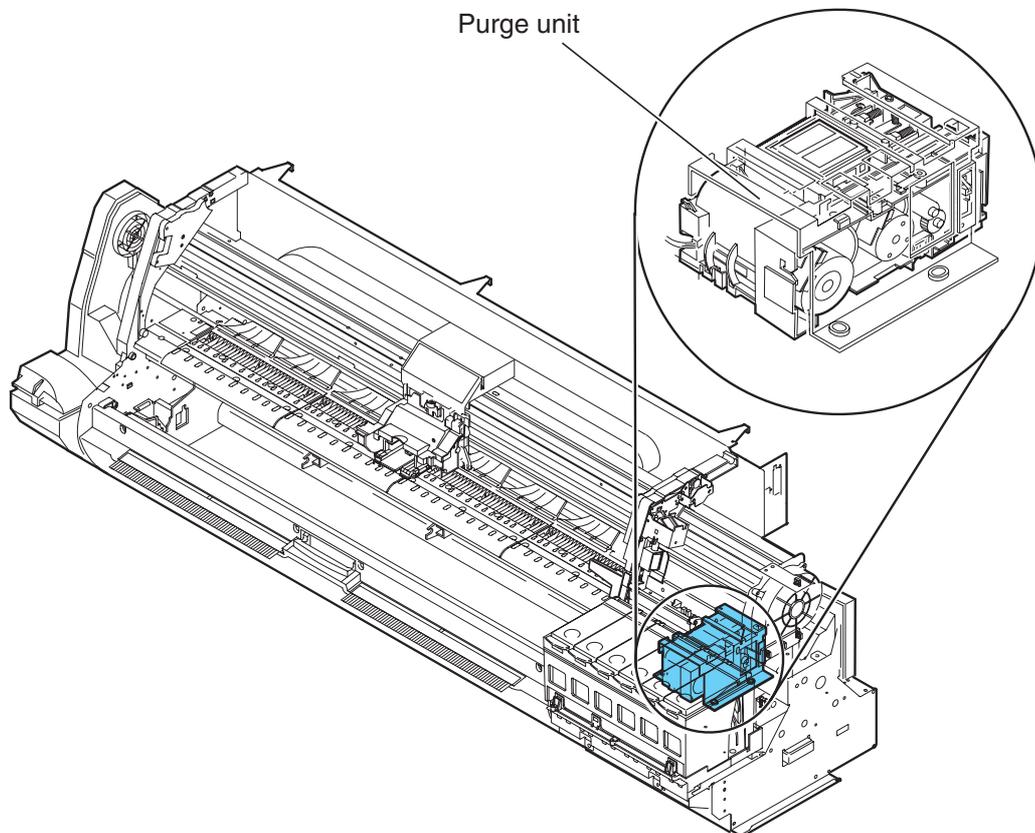


Figure 4-16 Purge Unit

3.5.2 Structure of purge unit

a) Caps

The caps are used to cap the nozzle arrays on the printheads during the capping and cleaning operations. The rubber section of the cap touches the face plate of the nozzle array. Each printhead (six nozzle arrays) installed in the carriage has two caps.

The caps are activated during the capping operation and are used to protect the nozzle arrays. The caps are raised by the cap cams operated by the purge motor to cover the arrays when the carriage has moved to the homeposition.

Capping is also performed during the cleaning operation, and the suction pump is then used to remove ink from the printheads.

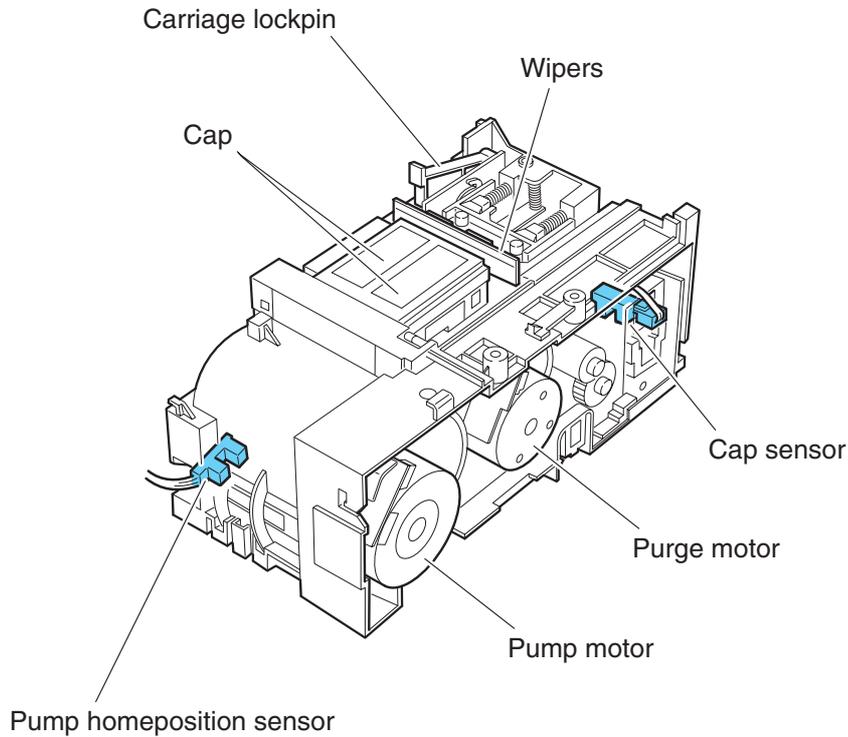
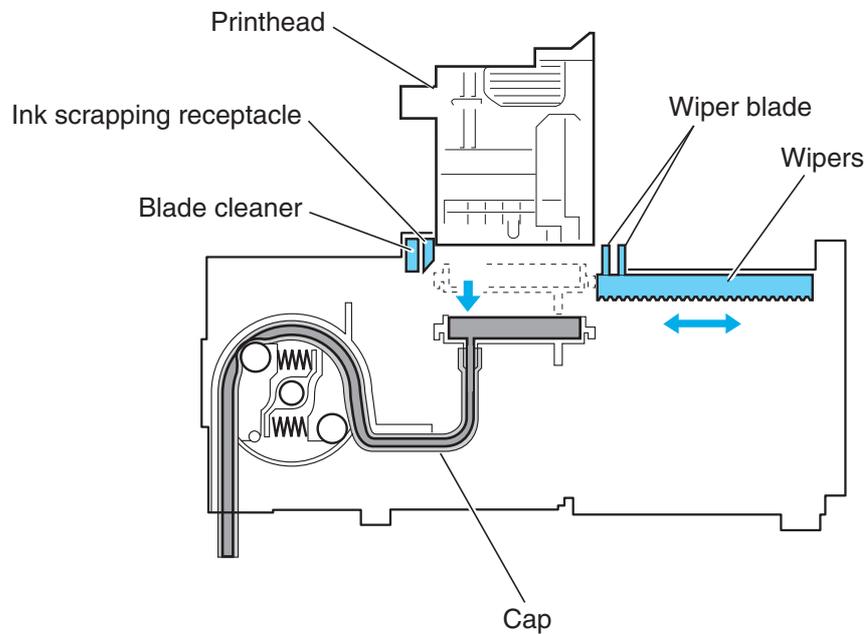


Figure 4-17 Caps

b) Wipers

The wipers are operated by the purge motor and perform the wiping of six nozzle arrays simultaneously of the printheads. One pairs of wiper blades are used to provide improved wiping performance. The wiping operation is performed in a "slide wipe" style where the wiper blades slide based on the forward rotation of the purge motor. This action is performed after the printing or suction operations using a constant-speed movement in the front direction as viewed from the printer front. The wiper cam raises the wiper unit to the wiping position. The wiper blade, which is positioned perpendicular to the printhead, wipes the entire face plate of the printhead, and then the narrow blade is used to wipe the nozzle array. After wiping, the wiper blades are cleaned before they are set at the wiping position so that maximum wiping performance can be maintained. In the wiper blade cleaning, ink that was wiped from the head section is rubbed off by an ink scrapping receptacle connected to the waste ink absorber, and then the blades are wiped off with a blade cleaner.

**Figure 4-18 Wiping Operation (Image)**

c) Pumps

In this printer, tube pumps press on the ink tubes using push rollers to produce negative pressure and enable suction of the ink. Two rollers are used to press a single tube one after the other to allow flexible control over the ink suction volume. The rotation timing of the push rollers in the suction pump is detected by the pump home position sensor, and the rotation speed is controlled by the driving of the pump motor (stepping motor).

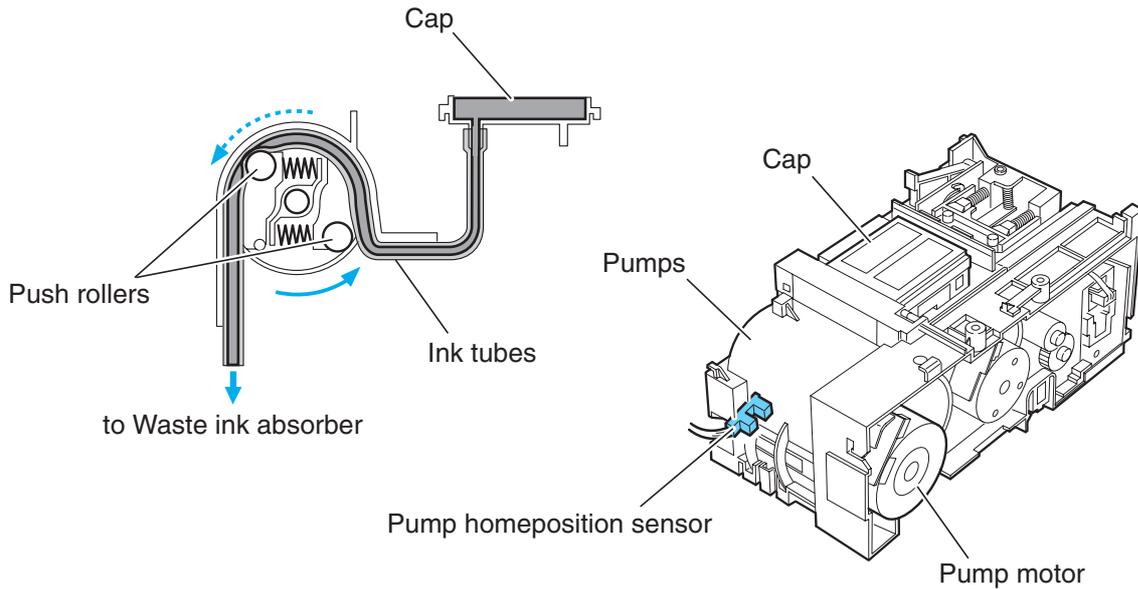


Figure 4-19 Pumps

d) Sensors

Sensors are located in the purge unit for detecting the status of the printer components.

For more information, see [Part 4: 5 Detection Functions \(page 4-54\)](#).

3.6 Waste Ink Absorber

3.6.1 Structure of waste ink absorber

a) Waste ink absorber

The waste ink absorber can hold approx. 14400 ml ml of waste ink in the W7200 and approx. 12000 ml in the W7250.

b) Waste ink absorber full detection

The waste ink absorber full detection is calculated based on the dot count. When about 14,100ml or more of waste ink accumulates in the W7200 and about 11,750ml or more of waste ink accumulates in the W7250, a warning message appears on the display indicating that the waste ink is nearly full. Once about 14,400 ml of waste ink accumulates in the W7200 and about 12,000 ml of waste ink accumulates in the W7250, an error occurs when printing is completed and operation is stopped.



After replacing the waste ink absorber in the printer, be sure to always clear the counter value of the waste ink absorber using the Service mode. The counter value of the waste ink absorber is stored in the EEPROM (IC428) on the engine controller. Therefore, when replacing the engine controller, be sure to refer to [Part 5: 5.2.12 Boards \(page 5-32\)](#).



The ink discharge rate from the ink tubes and subbuffer resulting from execution of the Move Printer command in the Main menu is counted during the initial filling suction.

Ink discharge rate occurring from "Move Printer" command: Approx. 35 g per color

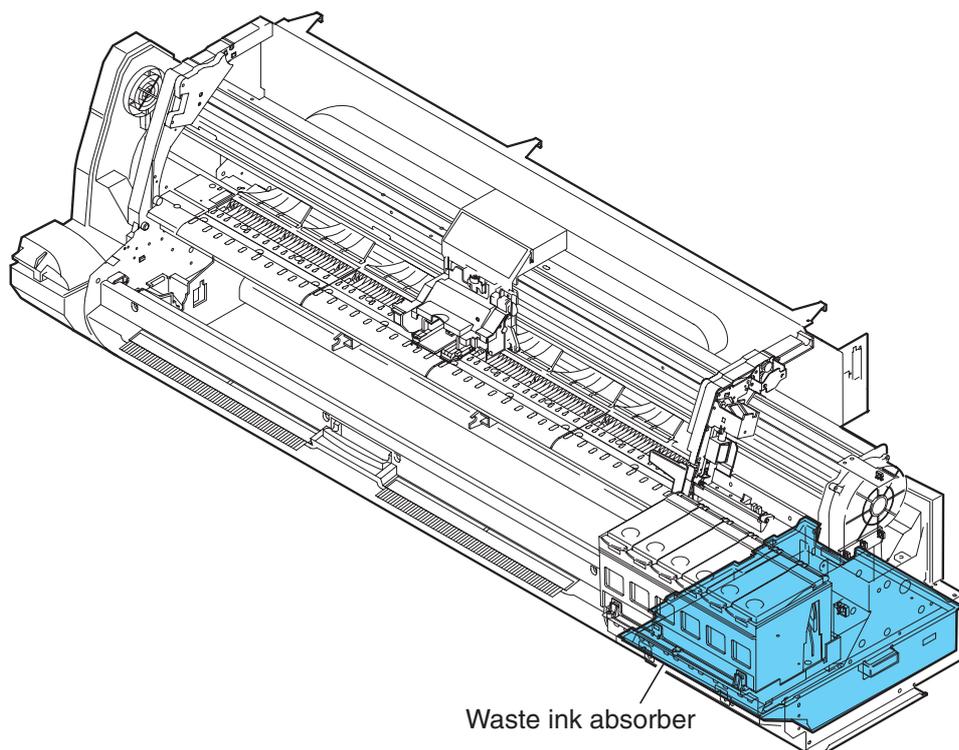


Figure 4-20 Waste Ink absorber

3.7 Air Flow

3.7.1 Air flow

Ink mist that floats inside the printer or splashes from the paper during printing is collected by the waste ink absorber at the right side and the mist tank at the left side of the printer through the air flow inside the printer.

The suction fans at the right and left sides of the printer create an air current that carries the ink mist to the waste ink absorber and mist tank.

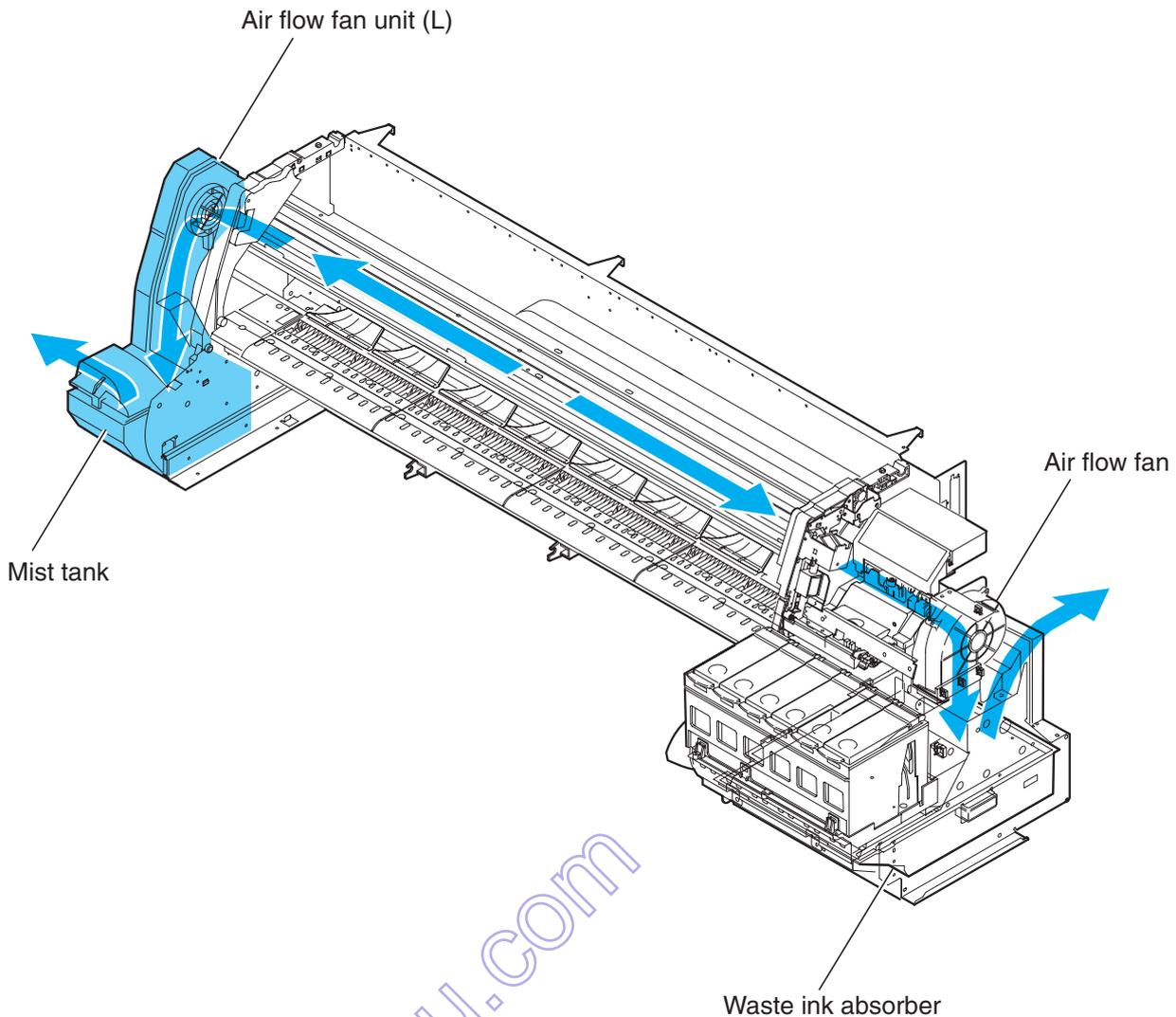


Figure 4-21 Air Flow

3.8 Paper Path

3.8.1 Overview of paper path

The paper path includes the following components: roll media tray, roll drive unit, roll feed unit, feed rollers, pinch roller drive unit for pressing and releasing the pinch rollers, and sensors for detecting the media feeding status. The paper path performs automatic feeding for the roll media and manual feeding, transport, and delivery for the cut sheets.

The diagram below presents an overview of the paper path and its operations.

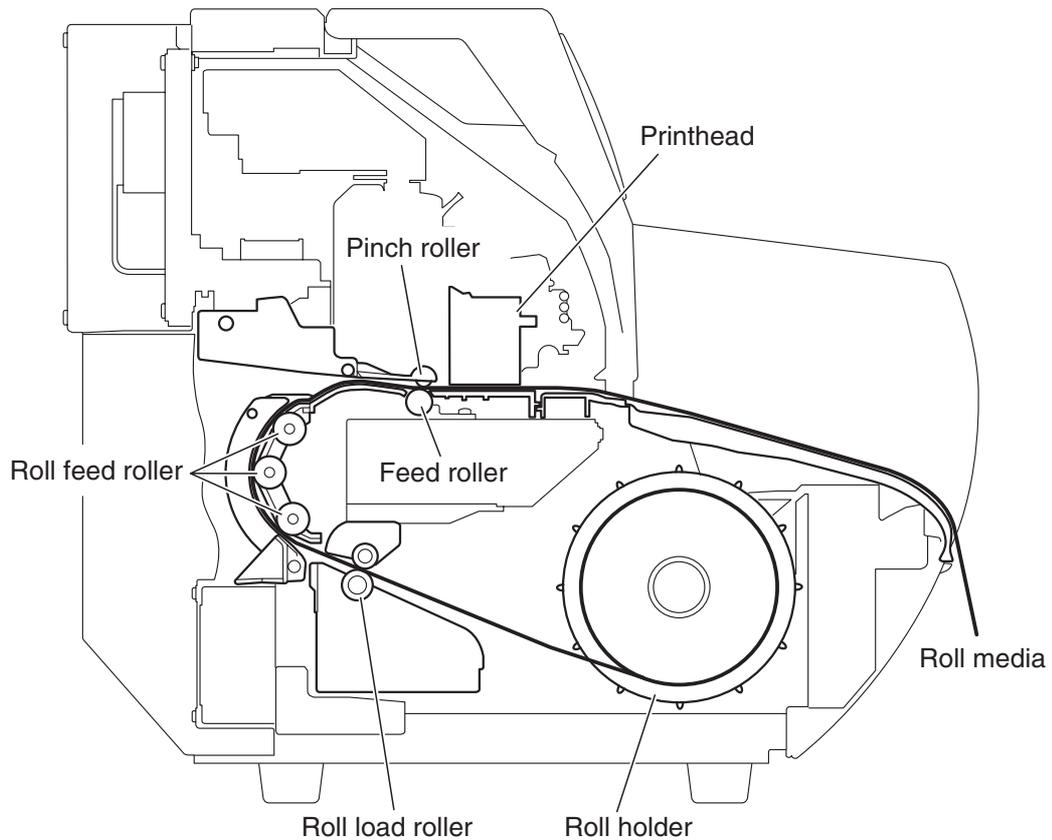


Figure 4-22 Paper Path

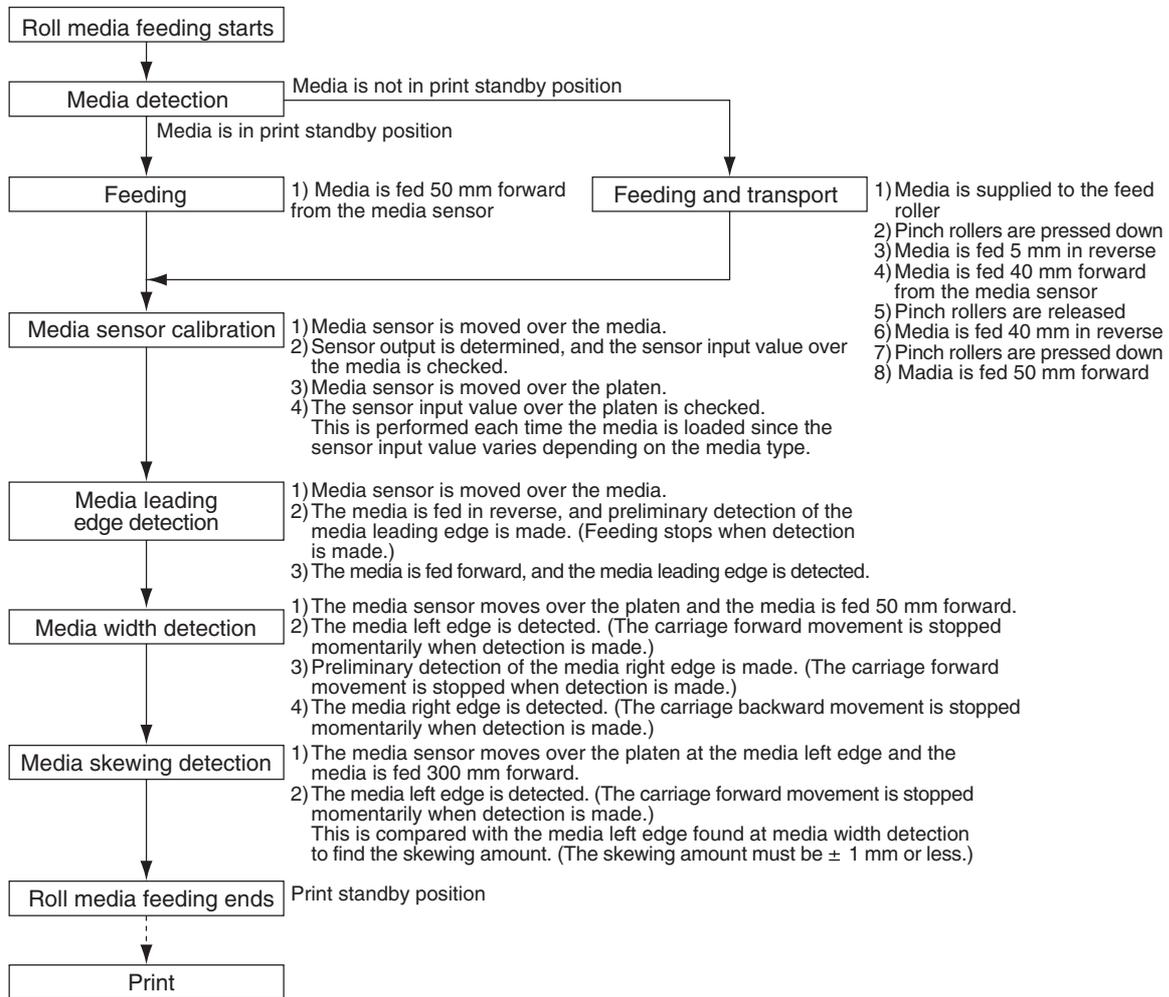


Figure 4-23 Roll Media feed Sequence

a) Roll media tray feeding

Roll media fed in the roll media tray are transported by the roll media supply rollers, and feed rollers.

If roll media is fed when the roll media tray feeding option is selected, the roll drive motor and feed motor start operating once the roll media tray and tray are closed. When the roll media leading edge is detected by the feed sensor and moves a predetermined length from the feed sensor, the feeding operation is stopped momentarily.

Next, to remove the slack from the roll media, temporarily release the pinch roller unit, increase the suction rate of the suction fan, run the feed motor in reverse to rewind the prescribed amount, and apply pressure with the pinch roller to pause the feeding operation.

After performing calibration of the media sensor in this state, perform media leading edge detection, media width detection, and skewing detection, and then stop the roll media at the print standby position.

The roll media is then fed by a length equivalent to the margin of the leading edge, and the printing operation is started. Feeding of the roll media during printing is performed by controlling the rotation of the feed rollers according to the printing mode.

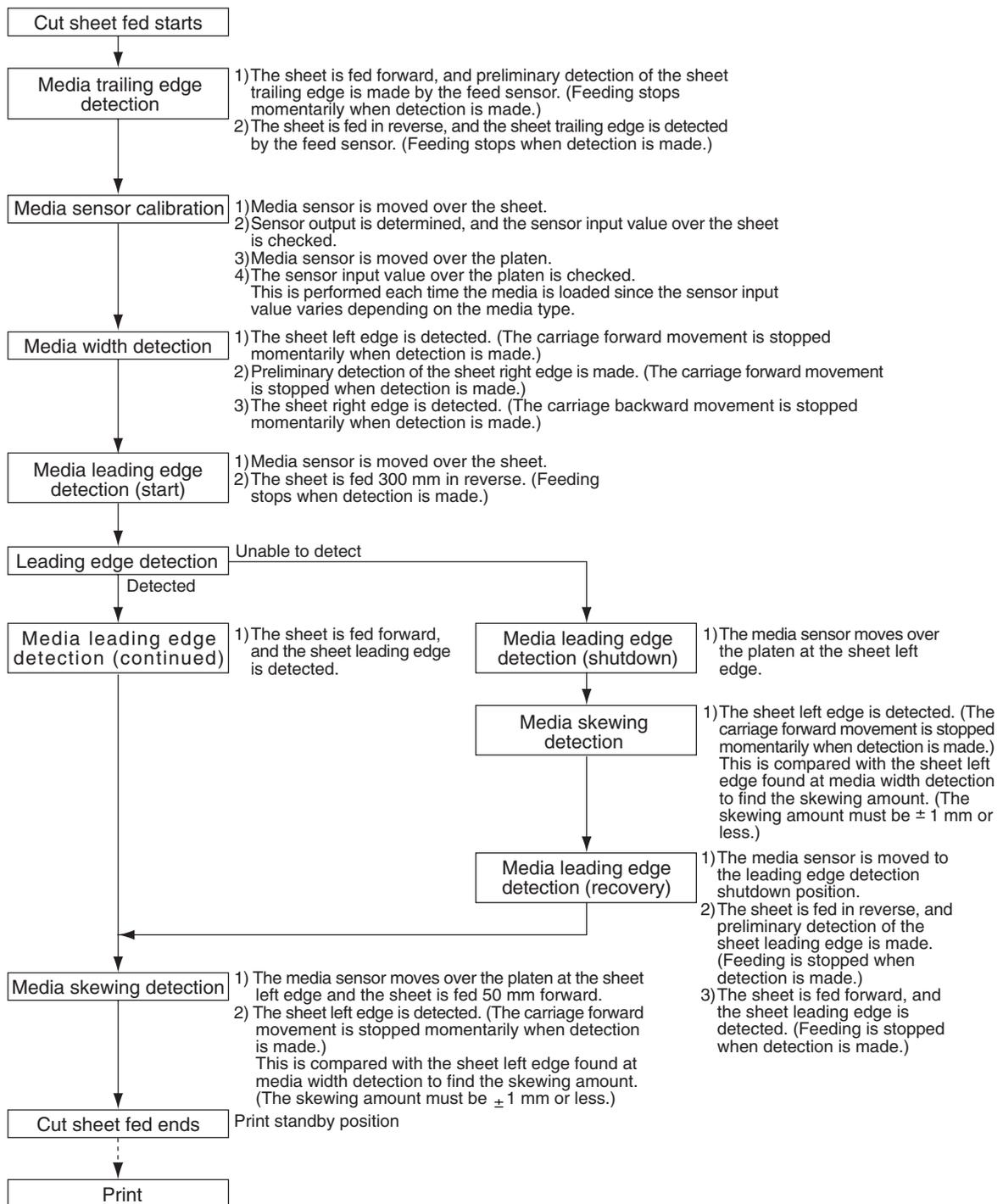


Figure 4-24 Cut Sheet feed Sequence

b) Tray feeding

Cut sheets that are loaded on the platen are transported by the feed rollers. If the cut sheets are loaded when the tray feeding option is selected, the feed motor starts operating once the upper cover is closed. The trailing edge of the cut sheets loaded on the platen is detected by the feed sensor. After performing calibration of the media sensor in this state, perform media leading edge detection, media width detection, and skewing detection, and then stop the cut sheet at the print standby position. The cut sheets are then fed by a length equivalent to the margin of the leading edge, and the printing operation is started. Feeding of the cut sheets during printing is performed by controlling the rotation of the feed rollers according to the printing mode.

c) Paper delivery

If the cutter is enabled when using roll media, the media is fed to the cut position after printing and cut using the cutter. Then, the roll media on the platen is fed by approximately 100 mm, and the cut roll media is pushed out. The discharged sheet is stacked on the stacker (optional in the W7250) with the printed side face down. The roll media on the platen is wound back to the print standby position.

In continuous banner printing with roll media, the paper is not cut and waits in pause mode for maintenance operations such as cleaning.

The printed cut sheets stop on the platen, and a message is displayed when printing is finished.

d) Other paper feed operations**i) Roll media replacement sequence**

This printer assumes that the roll media has been replaced when the sensor detects that the tray is opened and closed.

When the roll media is replaced, the roll media is fed over the platen where the media leading edge detection, media width detection, and skewing detection is performed. If no skewing is detected, approximately 100 mm of the media leading edge is trimmed, and the roll media is wound back to the print standby position on the platen.

Media leading edge detection, media width detection, and skewing detection are performed by the media sensor.

In media width detection, the media edges at the carriage home position side and at the opposite side are detected at the position where the media leading edge is fed approximately 50 mm from the media sensor to find the media width.

In skewing detection, the skewing amount is found using the media edge at the carriage home position side found by media width detection and the shift of the media edge at the same position when the media leading edge is fed approximately 300 mm from the media sensor.

ii) Roll media trailing edge detection sequence

The roll media is handled in the following manner according to the paper type.

Recommended roll media:

When the roll media end sensor detects the roll media trailing edge during the roll media feeding operation, the feeding operation is stopped, and a warning message is shown on the display.

Non-recommended roll media:

If the roll media trailing edge is secured by strong adhesive tape, the roll media trailing edge cannot be detected by the roll media end sensor. In this case, the roll feed sensor detects a media feeding error, the feeding operation is stopped, and a warning message is shown on the display.

iii) Roller trace prevention sequence**Pinch roller trace prevention sequence**

Pinch roller traces can form on the roll media when the roll media is left at the print standby position for an extended period of time. As a result, the following sequence is performed to prevent roller traces from forming.

While the power is on, the media is fed by about 2 mm at 100-minute intervals four times, and then the media is rewound back to the roll media tray for standby.

If printing is started during the roller trace prevention sequence, the media is rewound back to the print standby position before printing starts.

If printing is started after the roller trace prevention sequence, the roll media is reloaded before printing starts.

3.9 Structure of Paper Path

3.9.1 Structure of roll media tray

a) Roll media load unit

One roll media can be loaded in the roll media tray with the roll holder as the shaft. The roll drive motor transmits its power to the roll media load unit through the gear train, and feeding of the roll media is performed.

b) Roll media detection unit

The roll media is detected by the roll media end sensor of the roll media load unit and the roll media feed sensor of the roll feed unit.

The remaining amount of roll media can be checked visually from the small window at the right side of the tray.

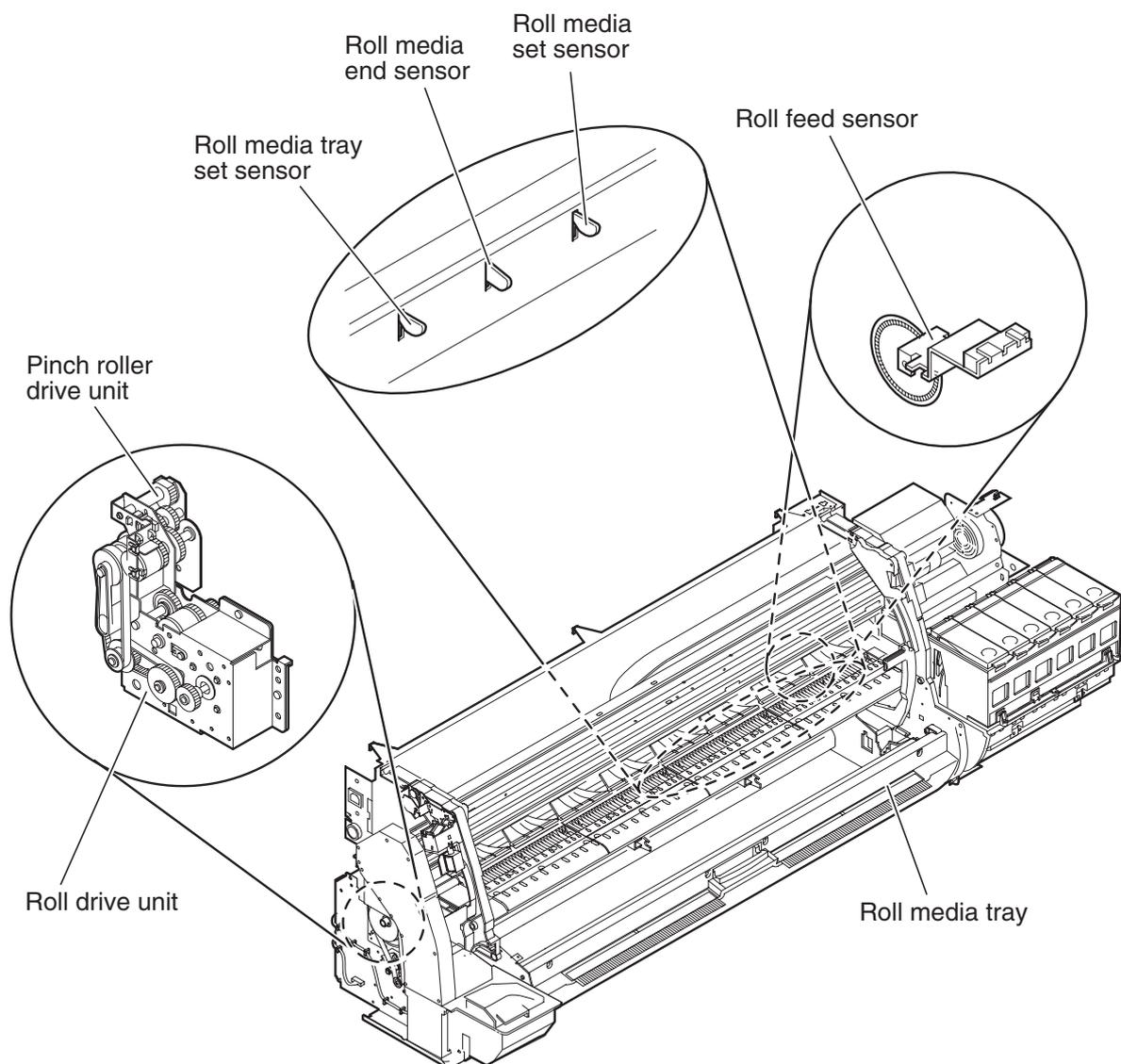


Figure 4-25 Roll Media Tray

3.9.2 Structure of feed rollers

a) Paper feed unit

The paper feed unit consists of paper path parts, including the paper guides and platen; and media feeding mechanisms, including feed rollers driven by the feed motor and the pinch roller unit operating in conjunction with the feed rollers. To ensure that no waves form on the media, the paper remains flat as it passes over the platen so that it is carried horizontally as it passes under the printheads of the carriage.

b) Detection unit

The paper feed unit includes sensors for monitoring the media feeding status and sensors for monitoring the status of the component parts of the paper path. For more information, see [Part 4: 5 Detection Functions \(page 4-54\)](#).

c) Sheet cutter

When "Autocut: Yes" is selected in the Main Menu, the cutter mounted on the left side of the carriage automatically cuts the roll media.

The cutter homeposition is on the left side. Once the sheet is fed to the cut position, the sheet is cut when the carriage moves from the left to the right in the backward movement.

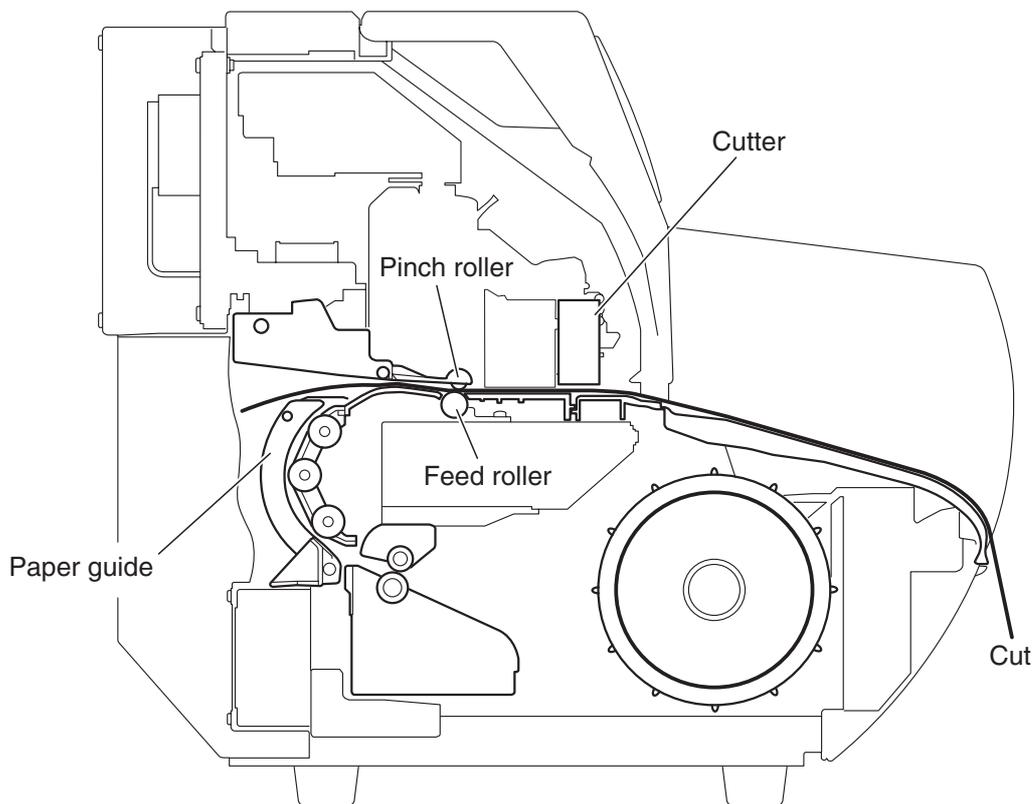


Figure 4-26 Manual Feed Tray/Paper Feed Unit

This page intentionally left blank

4. PRINTER ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

4.1 Overview

The printer electrical system consists of the system controller, engine controller, motor driver PCB, power supply, all of which are mounted at the rear of the printer; the carriage relay PCBs, head relay PCBs, and printheads, which are located in the carriage unit; the operation panel on the upper right cover; and other electrical components such as the sensors and motors.

The system controller manages image data, and the engine controller manages all electrical components. The other relay PCBs and drivers control the various functions under the management of the engine controller.

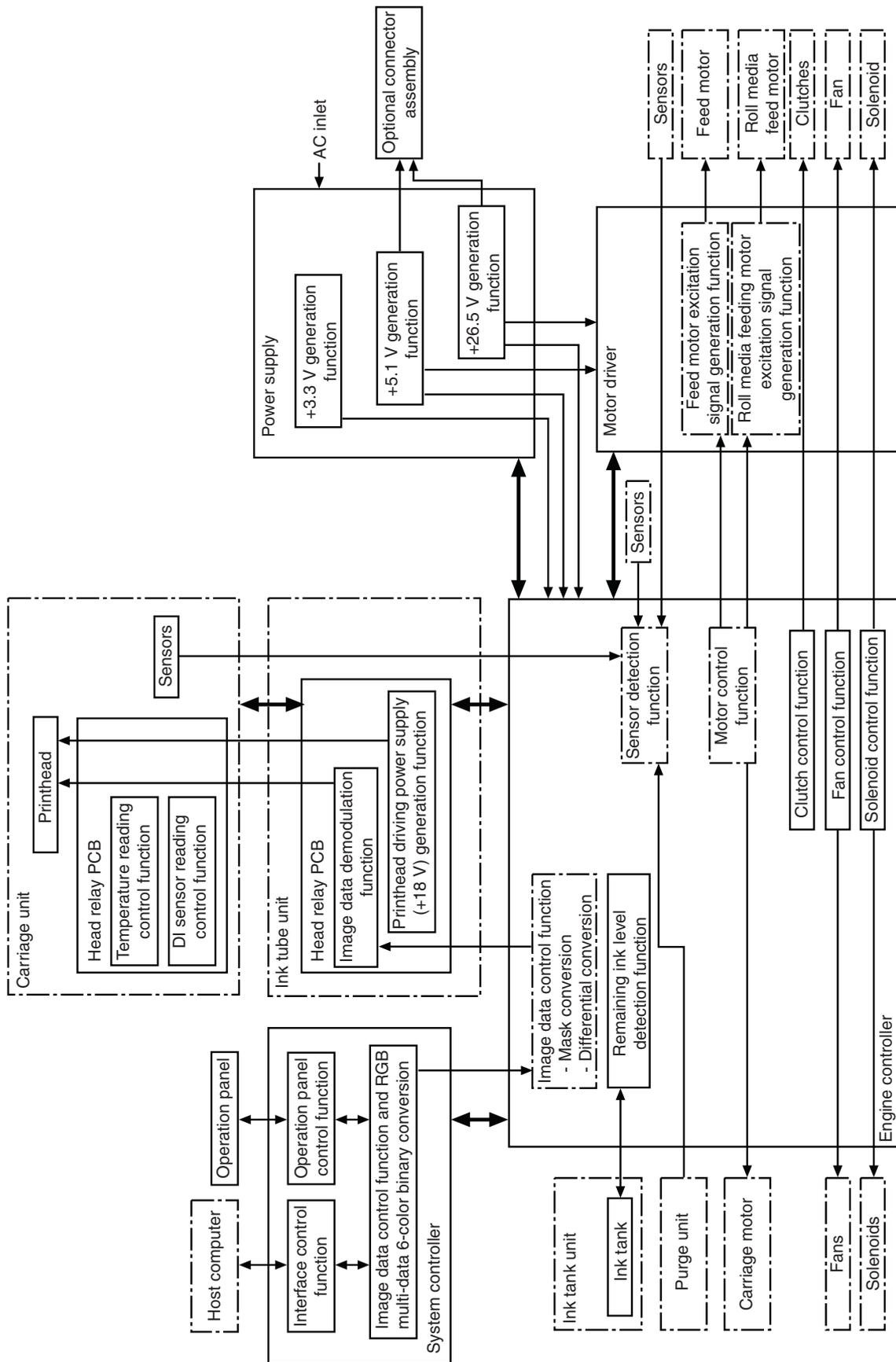


Figure 4-27 Printer Electrical Section

4.2 System Controller

4.2.1 System controller components

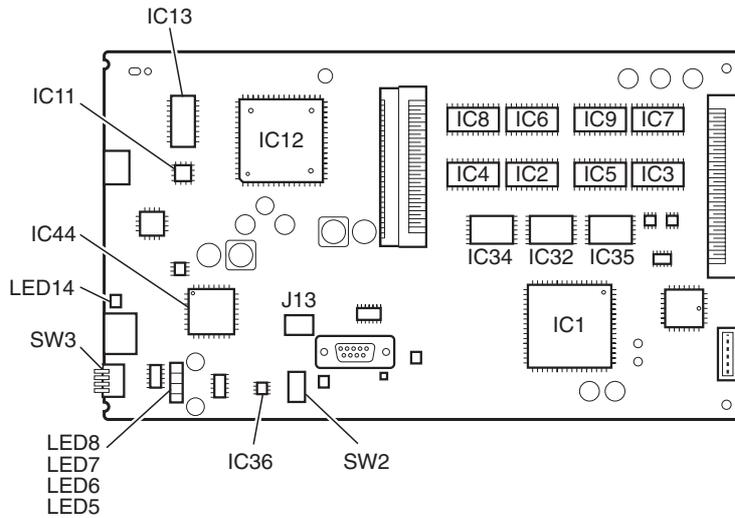


Figure 4-28 System Controller

a) CPU (IC1)

The CPU, with a 32-bit internal bus, operates in synchronization with the 250-MHz internal clock that is generated from a 33.333-MHz external clock.

The CPU also includes eight 8-MB RAM chips, three 2-MB ROM chips, 2-Kbit EEPROM chip. The CPU is connected to eight 8-MB RAM chips, three 2-MB ROM chips, and a 2-Kbit EEPROM chip. The CPU has the following functions.

DMA controller

The DMA controller manages the network, expansion card slots, and other input interfaces and DMA transfer of the data stored in the SDRAM.

Interrupt controller

The interrupt controller receives and processes the external interrupts from the network, image process ASIC (IC12), and the expansion card slots, in addition to the internal interrupts.

Serial input/output (I/O)

The serial I/O controls input and output of the DIP switch settings and LED on/off settings as serial signals.

b) Image process ASIC (IC12)

The image process ASIC converts the RGB multi-value image data and YMCK multi-value image data from the host computer received after passing through the interface connectors to six-color binary image data. In addition, the image process ASIC has the following functions.

Engine controller communication control

This function controls serial communication with the engine controller.

USB device controller control

This function performs DMA control of the USB device controller.

Operation panel control

This function controls serial communication with the operation panel.

c) USB device controller (IC11)

The USB device controller receives print data transmitted from the host computer after passing through the interface connectors. The controller also incorporates DMA for performing DMA transfer of image data to the image process ASIC (IC12).

d) Network device controller (IC44)

The network device controller receives print data sent from the host computer after passing through the interface connectors.

e) SDRAM (IC2, IC3, IC4, IC5, IC6, IC7, IC8, IC9)

The 64-MB SDRAM is connected to the 64-bit data bus and is used as the work area.

The SDRAM is used as the image buffer when print data is received.

f) FLASH ROM (IC32, IC34, IC35)

The 6-MB FLASH ROM is connected to the 8-bit data bus and 64-bit data bus and stores a printer control program.

g) EEPROM (IC36)

The 2-Kbit EEPROM stores the setting values and adjustment values from the Main Menu.

h) FCRAM (IC13)

The 8-MB FCRAM is connected to the image process ASIC and is used as the image buffer when print data is received.

i) LED (LED5)

This LED turns green when a program error occurs.

j) LED (LED6)

This LED turns green when a hardware (PCI, RAM, NIC) error occurs.

k) LED (LED7)

This LED turns green when the printer is in Service mode.

l) LED (LED8)

This LED is for R&D and factory use.

m) LED (LED14)

This LED turns green when network communication is being performed.

n) DIP switches (SW2)

These DIP switches are for R&D and factory use.

o) DIP switches (SW3)

This is for setting the network communication speed and transfer mode.

Once the settings are modified, the power must be turned off and then on again.

No.	ON	OFF
1	Manual	Automatic
2	100 Mbps	10 Mbps
3	Full duplex mode	Half duplex mode
4	In development	In development

The current communication settings can be checked using the LED of the LAN port.

Green : 100 Mbps

Yellow : 10 Mbps



Do not try to operate the DIP switches and buttons for R&D and factory use. This could result in a malfunction or breakdown.



See [Part 5: 6.2.1 System controller DIP switch settings \(page 5-40\)](#) for information on the factory default settings.

4.3 Engine Controller

4.3.1 Engine controller components

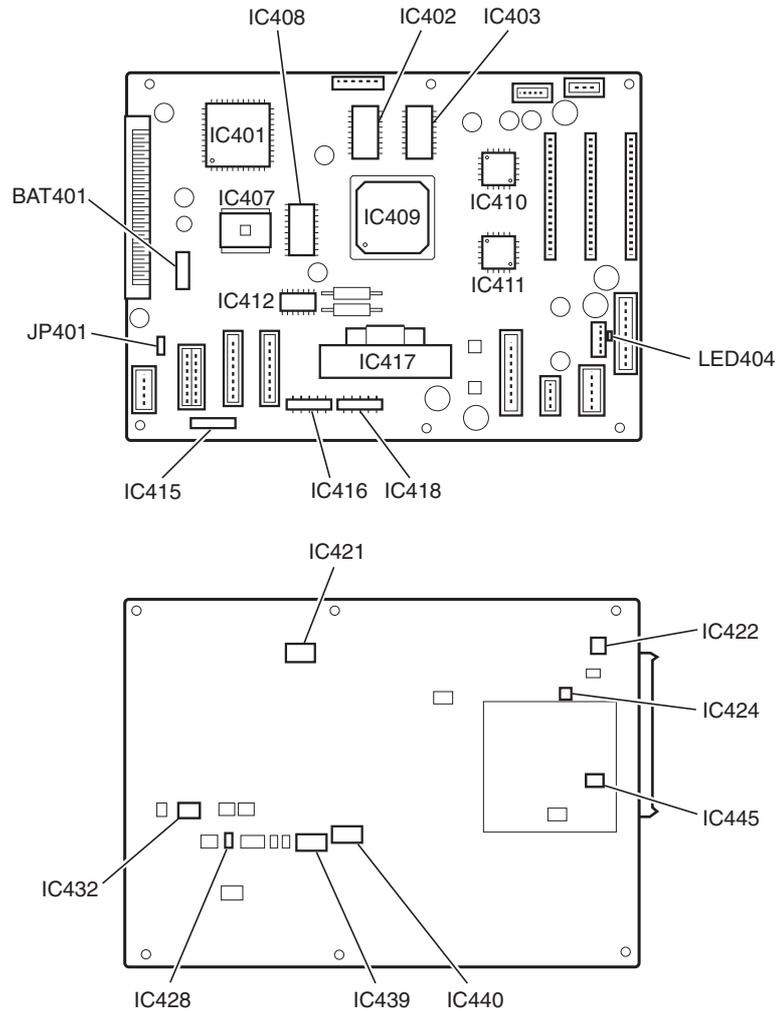


Figure 4-29 Engine Controller

a) CPU (IC401)

The CPU, with a 32-bit internal bus, operates in synchronization with the 130.8-MHz internal clock that is generated from a 32.7-MHz external clock. The CPU also includes 8-MB SDRAM (IC408) and 16-Kbit EEPROM (IC428). The CPU performs parameter control and has the following functions.

Power supply on/off control

This function performs on/off control of the drive power (26.5 V, 5.1 V, and 3.3 V) supplied from the power supply based on the power button push-down signal that is input after passing through the system controller.

Timer function

This function is used for the roller trace prevention sequence and cleaning functions.

The internal RTC (realtime clock) and lithium battery allow the timer to operate even when the AC power supply is off for performing the cleaning function.

Ink tank EEPROM control

This function controls the reading and writing of data to the EEPROM mounted on the ink tank for each color.

Ink tank level detection

This function detects the remaining ink level for each color based on the signals from the electrodes mounted on the hollow needle.

b) ASIC (IC409)

The ASIC, with a 32-bit internal bus, operates in synchronization with the 65.4-MHz internal clock that is generated from a 32.7-MHz external clock.

The CPU also includes two 16-MB SDRAM chips and two driver ASIC chips. The ASIC has the following functions.

System controller communication control

This function controls serial communication with the system controller.

Image data reception

This function receives the image data from the system controller and stores it in the SDRAM (IC402, IC403).

Image data generation/output

This function generates the image data for printing each color from the image data received from the system controller and mask pattern corresponding to the print mode in the SDRAM (IC408).

This function also controls the output of the generated image data to the carriage relay PCB.

Heat enable signal control

This functions uses the pulse width to perform variable control of the time that the heat enable signal is applied to the nozzle heater board for each nozzle array in the printheads.

Linear scale count

This function reads the linear scale during carriage driving and generates the 300-dpi timing signal.

1200-dpi timing generation

This function divides the linear scale 300-dpi timing into four equal parts to generate the 1200-dpi timing signal.

Dot count

This function counts the discharge dots used as information for the heat enable signal function, maintenance jet control, cleaning function, and remaining ink level for each nozzle array.

PWM control

This function performs driving control of the carriage motor, suction fan, and air flow fans and temperature control of the printheads based on the control signals from the CPU.

Feed motor control

This function performs rotation detection of the encoder slit after passing through the motor driver and control of the feed motor speed and position based on the control signals from the CPU.

I/O port

This function performs I/O control from the sensors and controls the driving units of the motors, clutch, solenoids, and other parts.

c) Driver ASIC (IC410, IC411)

The image data generated by the ASIC (IC409) undergoes differential processing to reduce noise and then is sent to the carriage relay PCB.

d) SDRAM (IC402, IC403)

The 16-MB SDRAM is connected to the 32-bit data bus and is used as an image buffer when receiving the print data.

e) Flash ROM (IC407)

The 2-MB FLASH ROM is connected to the 16-bit data bus and stores a printer control program and mask patterns.

f) SDRAM (IC408)

The 8-MB SDRAM is connected to the 16-bit data bus and is used as a CPU work memory. It also is used to store the service mode history (P-SETTING, WARNING, ERROR).

g) EEPROM (IC428)

The 16-Kbit EEPROM stores the printer adjustment values.

h) Motor driver (IC412, IC417)

This motor driver is used to drive the carriage motor, which is a DC motor with built-in software servo.

i) Motor driver (IC415)

This motor driver is used to perform constant-voltage driving of the pump motor, which is a two-phase stepping motor.

j) Motor driver (IC416, IC418)

This motor driver is used to perform constant-current driving of the purge motor, which is a two-phase stepping motor.

k) Regulator IC (IC421)

The regulator IC generates the ASIC internal driving power supply (2.5 V).

l) Regulator IC (IC422)

The regulator IC generates the CPU internal driving power supply (1.9 V)

m) Regulator IC (IC445)

The regulator IC generates the RTC driving power supply (1.8 V) in the CPU.

n) D/A converter (IC432)

This converter is used to drive the media sensor LEDs.

o) D/A converter (IC439)

This converter is used to set the driving current of the roll feed motor.

p) D/A converter (IC440)

This converter is used to set the driving current of the feed motor.

q) Reset IC (IC424)

The reset IC initializes the engine controller based on the control signals from the system controller.

r) LED (LED404)

This LED turns red when driving power (26.5 V, 5.1 V, 3.3 V) is supplied to the engine controller.

s) Short connector (JP401)

This connector is used for switching W7200/W7250.



For information on short connector switching, see [Part 5: 6.2.2 Engine controller short connector settings \(page 5-41\)](#).

t) Lithium battery (BAT401)

The lithium battery is connected to the RTC in the CPU. The battery can perform backups for approximately two weeks with the AC power unconnected.

4.4 Carriage Relay PCB

4.4.1 Carriage relay PCB components

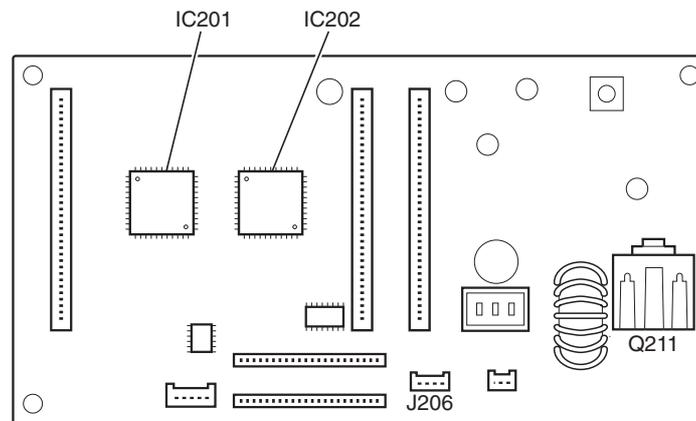


Figure 4-30 Carriage Relay PCB

a) Receiver ASIC (IC201, IC202)

The receiver ASIC receives and recovers the image data that has undergone differential processing by the driver ASIC (IC410, IC411) in the engine controller, and then sends this data to the printheads.

b) Regulator IC (Q211)

The regulator IC is used to generate the discharge drive power supply (18 V) of the printheads from +26.5 V.

4.5 Head Relay PCB

4.5.1 Head relay PCB components

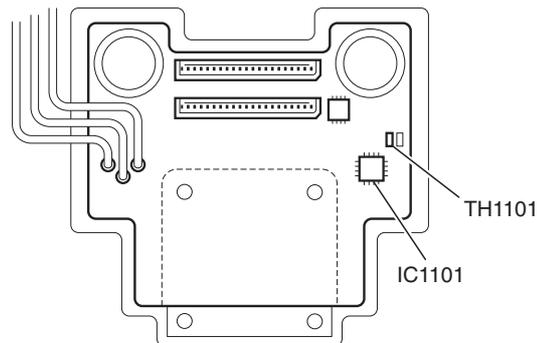


Figure 4-31 Head Relay PCB

a) Latch IC (IC1101)

DI sensor reading control

The DI sensor value in the printheads and head rank are obtained for each color and sent to the engine controller based on the control signals that are sent from the engine controller.

Environment temperature reading control

The environment temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1101) on the head relay PCB is sent to the engine controller based on the control signals that are sent from the engine controller.

Relay for head logic driving power supply

The logic driving power (5 V) is supplied to the printheads based on the control signals that are sent from the engine controller.

b) Thermistor (TH1101)

The thermistor sends the environment temperature in the vicinity of the head relay PCB to the engine controller after passing through the carriage relay PCB.

4.6 Motor Driver

4.6.1 Motor driver components

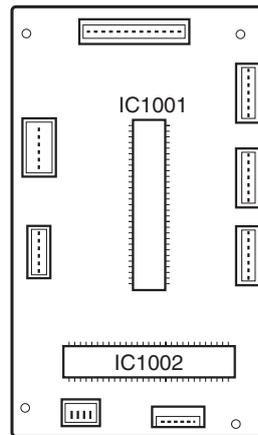


Figure 4-32 Motor Driver

a) Feed motor driver (IC1001)

This driver generates and sends the excitation signals for the feed motor based on the control signals from the engine controller.

b) Roll feed motor driver (IC1002)

This driver generates and sends the excitation signals for the roll feed motor based on the control signals from the engine controller.

4.7 Power Supply

4.7.1 Power supply block diagram

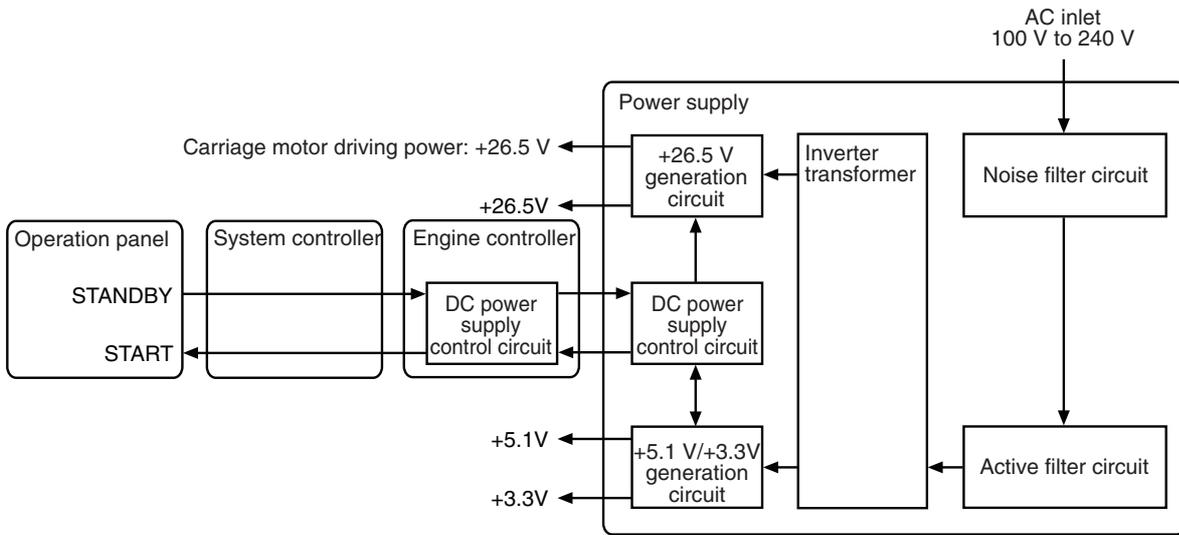


Figure 4-33 Power Supply Block Diagram

The universal power supply converts AC voltages ranging from 100 V to 240 V supplied from the AC inlet to DC voltages for supplying the driving voltages of ICs, motors, and other parts.

The voltage generating circuits are divided into the power supply system for driving the motors (+26.5 V) and sensors (+5.1 V) and the power supply system for driving the logic circuits (+3.3 V).

The +26.5 V/+5.1 V system uses a combination of START signals sent regularly from the power supply and power button signals to control the STANDBY signals and turn the power on and off.

During power save mode, the STANDBY signals are controlled to turn off the +26.5 V/+5.1 V output. Also, only the carriage motor driving +26.5 V power is turned off when the upper cover is opened.

This page intentionally left blank

5. DETECTION FUNCTIONS

5.1 Detection Functions Based on Sensors

5.1.1 Sensors for covers/roll media trays

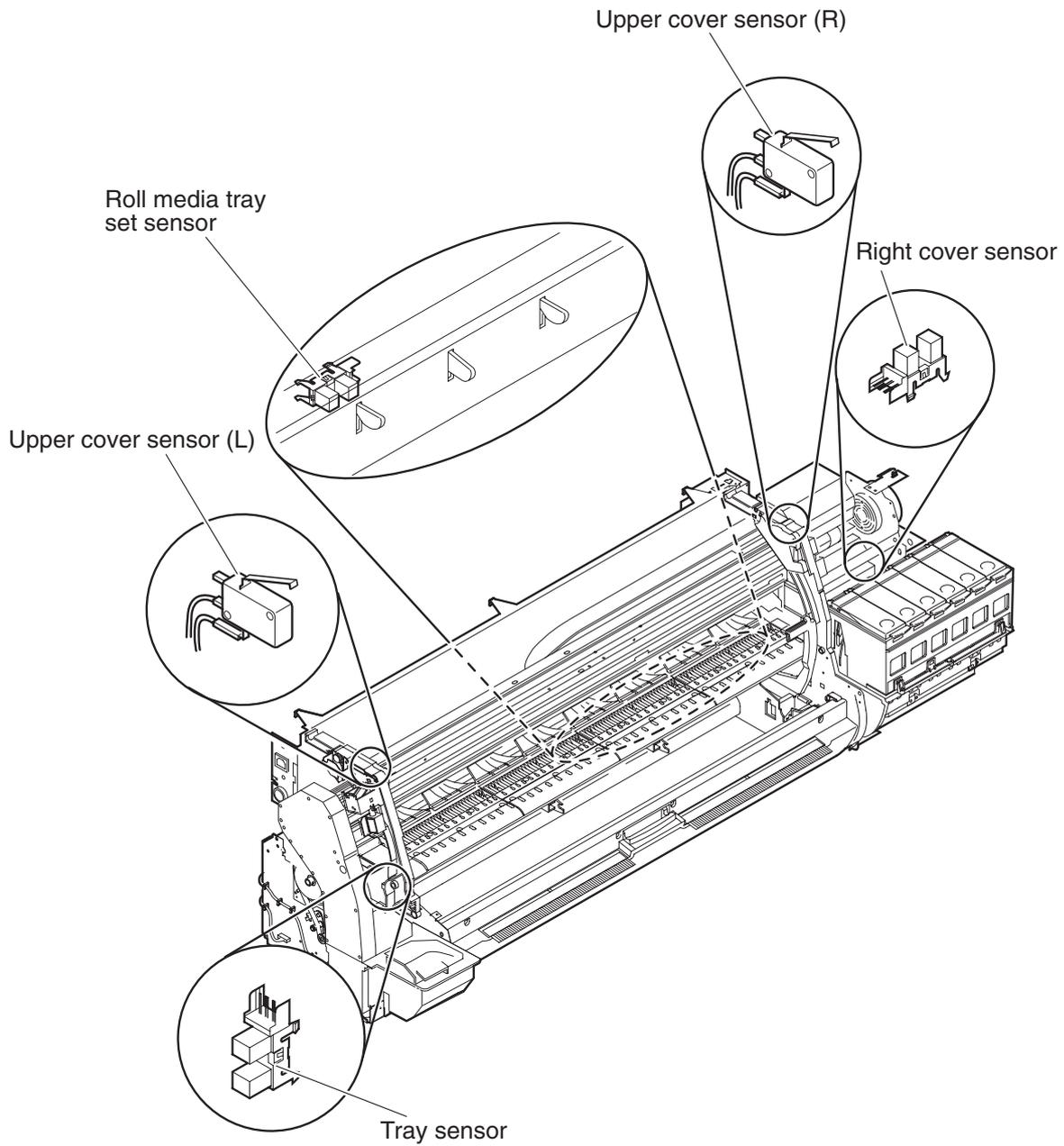


Figure 4-34 Layout of Sensors for Covers/Roll Media Trays

Upper cover sensors

The microswitch-based upper cover sensors detect opening and closing of the upper cover.

When the upper cover is closed, a switch is depressed to notify the sensor that the cover is closed.

To prevent the uneven fitting of the upper cover, sensors are located on both the right and left sides.

Right cover sensor

The photo interrupter-based right cover sensor detects the opening and closing of the right cover.

When the right cover is closed, the sensor light is cut off by the sensor arm, and this notifies the sensor that the right cover is closed.

Tray sensor

This photo interrupter-based tray sensor detects when the tray is opened and closed. When the tray is closed, the sensor light is cut off by the sensor arm, and this notifies the sensor that the tray is closed.

Roll media tray set sensor

The photo interrupter-based roll media tray set sensor detects the opening and closing of the roll media tray.

When the roll media tray is closed, the sensor light is transmitted through the sensor arm, and this notifies the sensor that the roll media tray is closed.



When the upper cover is closed, the +26.5 V power is supplied by the power supply to drive the carriage motor and feed motor.

5.1.2 Ink passage system

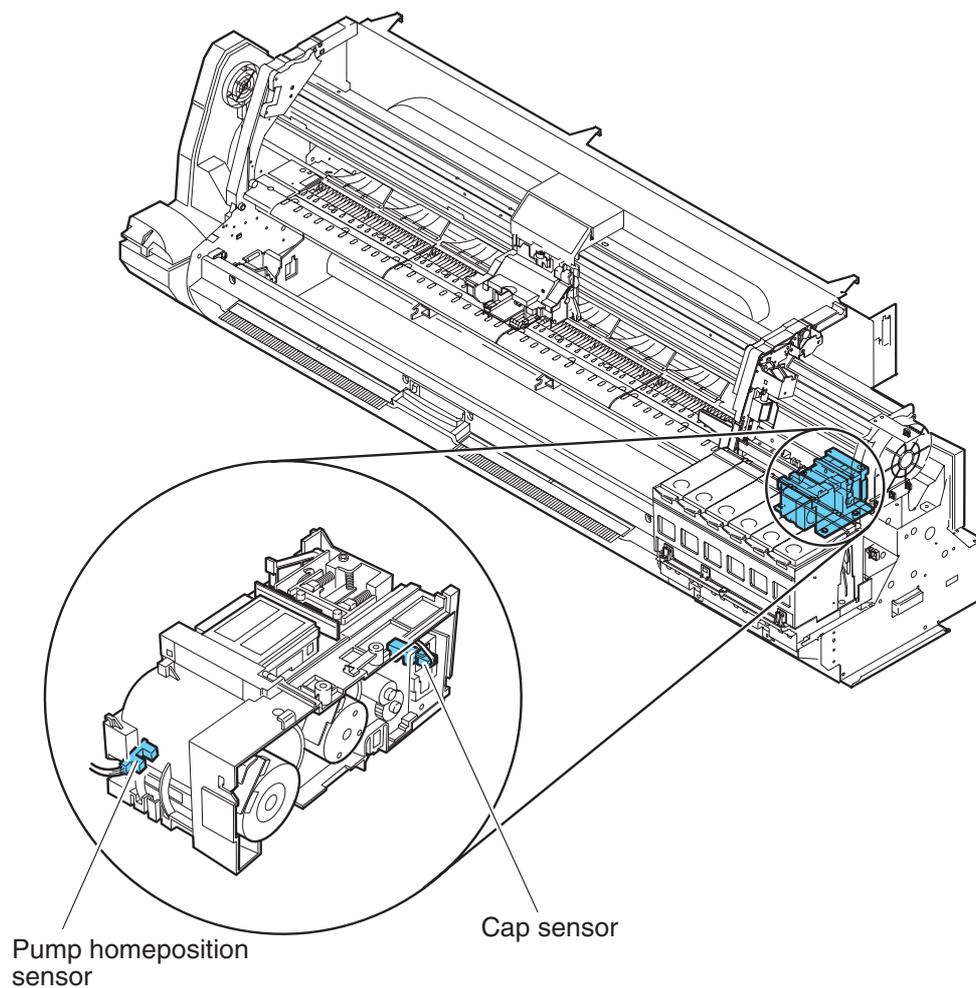


Figure 4-35 Layout of Sensors for Ink Passage System

Cap sensor

The photo interrupter-based cap sensor detects the status of the caps on the purge unit.

The sensor determines that the cap is closed when the rotary flag, which operates in conjunction with the cap cam shaft, cuts off the sensor light. The other states are determined by the number of pulses from the pulse motor based on the timing when the sensor light is cut off.

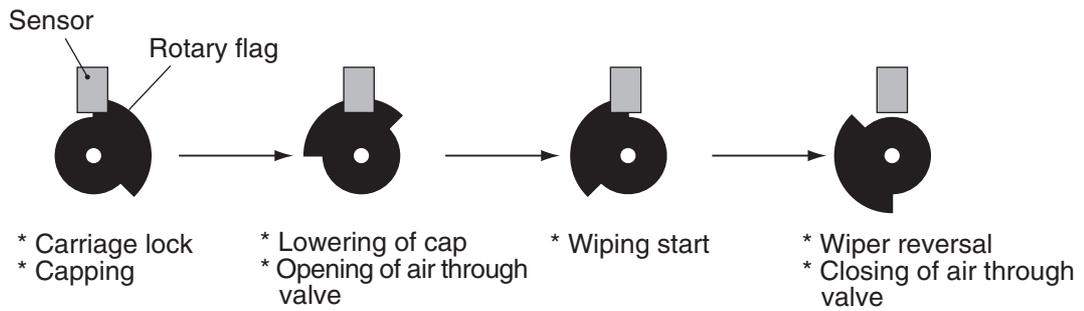


Figure 4-36 Cap Sensor Flag

Pump homeposition sensor

The photo interrupter-based pump sensor detects the homeposition of the suction pump rollers.

The homeposition of the pump is defined as the position where the rotary flag, which operates in conjunction with the drive gear shaft of the rollers, cuts off the sensor light.

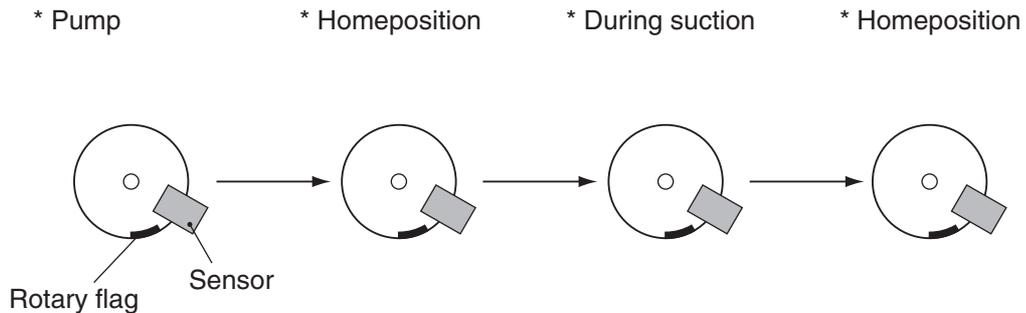


Figure 4-37 Pump Sensor Flag

5.1.3 Carriage system

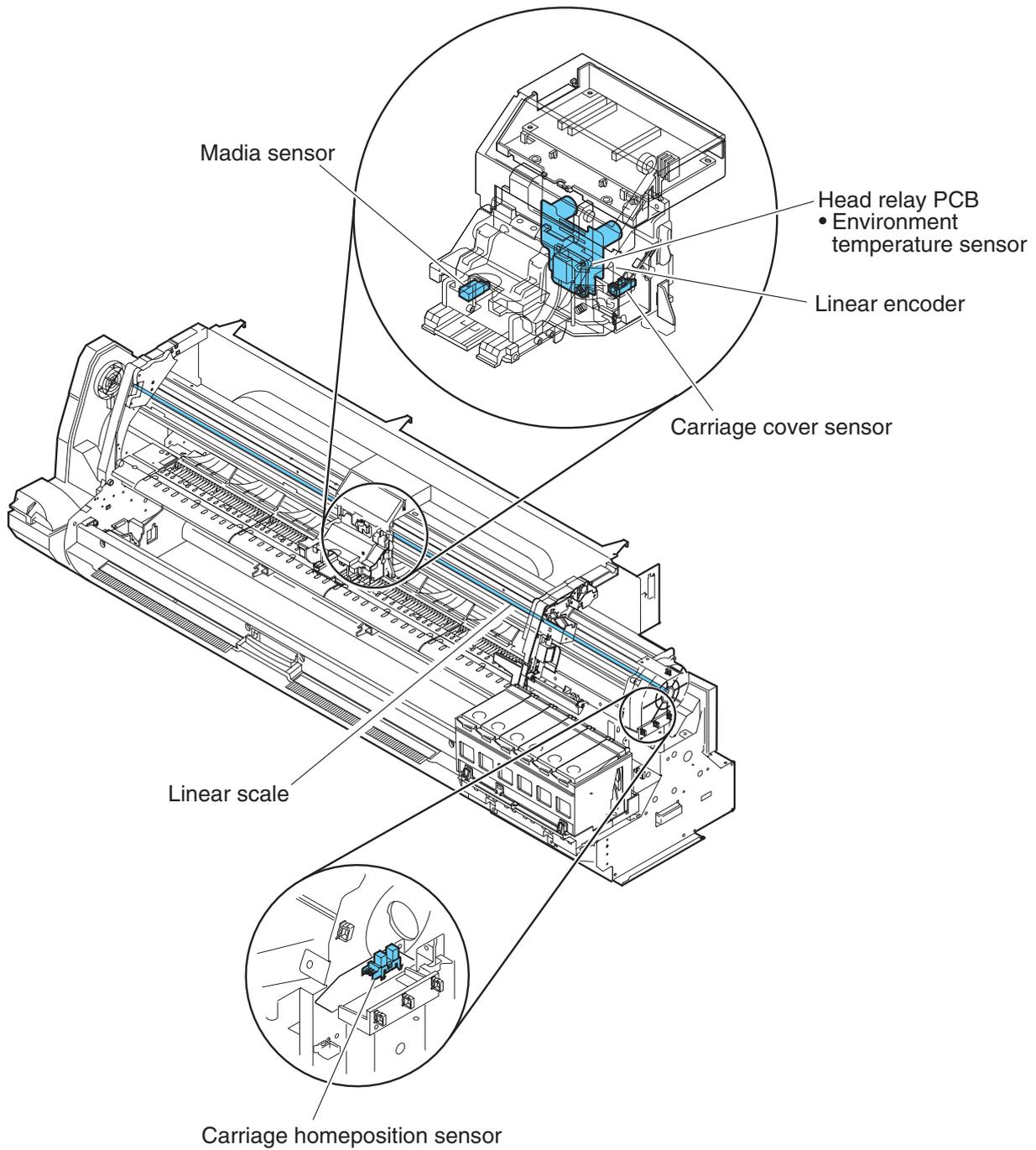


Figure 4-38 Layout of Sensors for Carriage System

Media sensor

The photo reflection-based media sensor detects the edges of the media. The sensor detects the edges by monitoring the change in voltage with respect to changes in the reflection density from the media.

Since the sensor light uses infrared light, light emission cannot be confirmed visually.

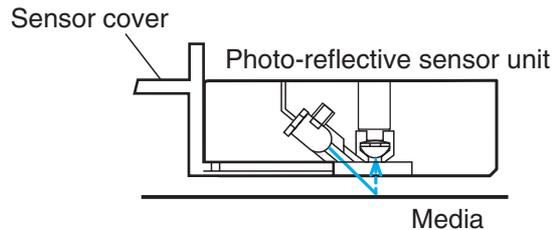


Figure 4-39 Media Sensor (Image)

Carriage cover sensor

The photo interrupter-based carriage cover sensor detects opening and closing of the carriage cover.

When the carriage cover is closed, the sensor light is cut off by the sensor arm, and this notifies the sensor that the carriage cover is closed.

Carriage homeposition sensor

The photo interrupter-based carriage homeposition sensor detects the home position of the carriage.

The sensor, located on the right-side plate, detects the carriage homeposition edge on the carriage unit during carriage traveling.

The carriage homeposition is defined based on the location where the edge is detected.

Linear encoder

The linear encoder, installed on the rear of the carriage, detects the position of the carriage using the slits on the linear scale while the carriage is moving.

Environment temperature sensor

The environment temperature sensor (thermistor) installed on the head relay PCB detects the environment temperature in the vicinity of the carriage.

The resistance measured by the thermistor, which varies as the temperature inside the printer changes, is sent to the engine controller after passing through the carriage relay PCB.

The environment temperature is used to calibrate the head temperature sensor and to detect abnormal internal printer temperatures.

Head temperature sensor

A set of two diode head temperature sensors are installed at the top and bottom of the nozzle arrays of printhead to detect the temperature of the printhead.

The voltage produced by each diode, which varies as the temperature near the nozzle array changes, is sent to the engine controller after passing through the carriage relay PCB.

The head temperature information is used to control the operation of the head and to detect abnormal head temperatures.

Printhead contact detection

The status of direct contact between the contact faces of the printhead and the carriage is checked by testing the electrical conductivity.

The contact status between the two faces is detected from the voltage changes of the flexible cable connecting two separate terminals on the contact surface of the printhead, the +18 V power supply terminal, and the GND terminal.

5.1.4 Paper path system

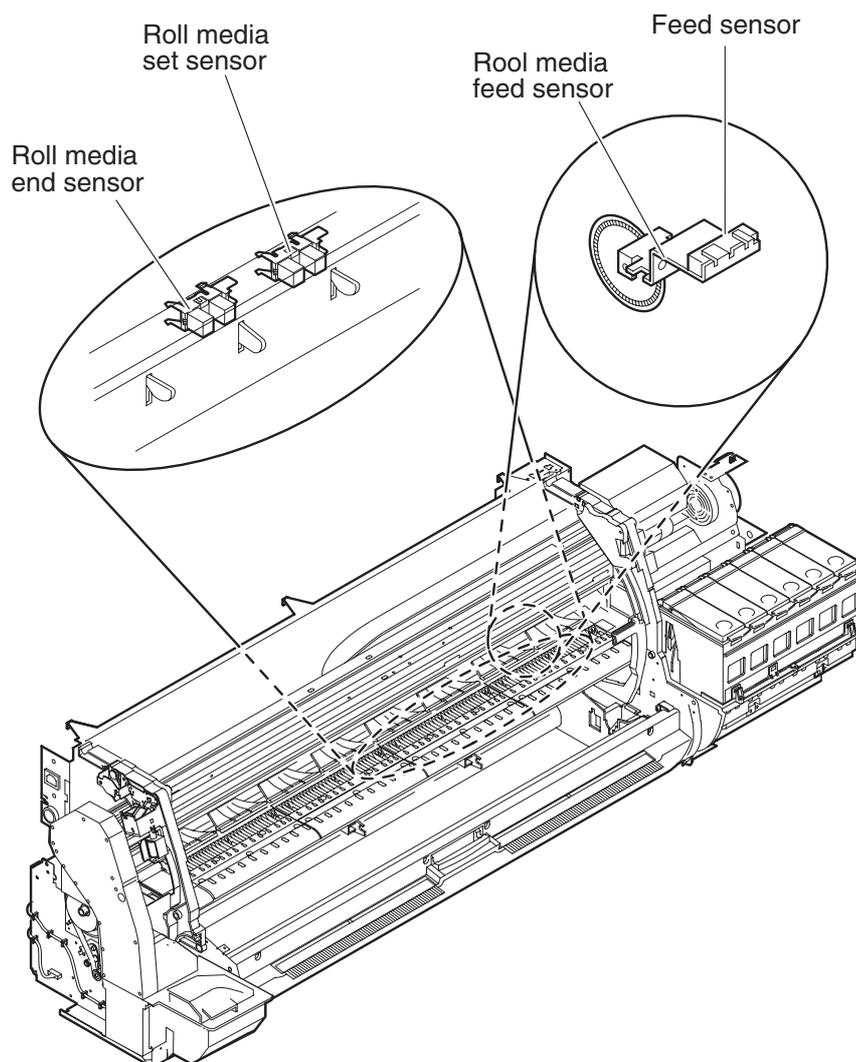


Figure 4-40 Layout paperpath sensor

Roll media set sensor

The photo interrupter-based roll media set sensor detects the opening and closing of the paper holder by the paper release lever.

When the paper holder is closed and the roll media tray is closed, the sensor light is transmitted through the sensor arm, and this notifies the sensor that the paper holder is closed.

Roll media end sensor

The photo interrupter-based roll media end sensor detects the feed of paper from the roll media tray. The sensor light is blocked by the sensor arm when the paper is fed, and this notifies the sensor that paper is available in the tray.

Roll feed sensor

The photo interrupter-based roll feed sensor detects the slit of the rotary flag that turns as the roll media is fed. If the feed of roll media cannot be detected when the feeding operation is being performed, the printer determines that a media feeding error has occurred.

Feed sensor

The photo reflection-based feed sensor detects if paper is on the platen.

The sensor detects the presence of paper by receiving the sensor light reflected from the paper.

Part 5

MAINTENANCE

Page		5 -64	
5 - 1	1. Maintenance		7.3 Troubleshooting during Warning/Error/Firmware Error
5 - 1	1.1 List of Periodic Replacement Parts	5 -83	7.4 Troubleshooting for Conditions not Displayed in the Message Display.
5 - 1	1.2 List of Consumables		
5 - 1	1.3 A List of Periodic Maintenance	5 -88	8. Connector Positions and Pin Arrangement
5 - 2	2. Servicing Tools	5 -88	8.1 System Controller
5 - 2	2.1 List of Tools	5 -100	8.2 Image Process Controller
5 - 4	2.2 Using the Cover Switch Tool	5 -104	8.3 Head Controller
5 - 5	3. Applying the Grease	5 -114	8.4 Carriage Controller
5 - 6	4. Service Parts	5 -125	8.5 Mech. Controller
5 - 6	4.1 Service Parts	5 -134	8.6 Motor Controller
5 - 8	5. Disassembly/Reassembly	5 -138	9 Circuit Diagram
5 - 8	5.1 Disassembly/Reassembly	5 -140	9.1 General Circuit Diagram
5 - 8	5.2 Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly	5 -148	9.2 System Controller
		5 -155	9.3 Image Process Controller
		5 -163	9.4 Head Controller
5 -32	5.3 Cap/Valve Open/Wiper Unit Up/Down	5 -167	9.5 Carriage Controller
		5 -178	9.6 Mechanical Controller
5 -34	5.4 Ink Drain	5 -189	9.7 Motor Controller
5 -40	6. Adjustment/ Set-Up	5 -195	9.8 Cut Sheet Set Ass'y
5 -40	6.1 Adjustments and Settings	5 -196	9.9 Nozzle Check Sensor Ass'y
5 -41	6.2 Adjustment and How to Set Up	5 -197	9.10 Print Position Sensor Ass'y
		5 -198	9.11 Skew Sensor Ass'y
5 -48	7. Troubleshooting	5 -199	9.12 Option Connector Ass'y
5 -48	7.1 Outline of Troubleshooting		
5 -49	7.2 Troubleshooting during "Operator Call"		

1. MAINTENANCE

1.1 List of Regular Replacement Parts

Level	Regular replacement part
User	None
Service personnel	None

1.2 List of Consumables

For details, refer to [Part 2: PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS \(page 2-1\)](#)

Level	Consumable
User	Printhead Air filter (Included with printhead) Ink tank (black) Ink tank (photo cyan) Ink tank (cyan) Ink tank (photo magenta) Ink tank (magenta) Ink tank (yellow) Cutter unit
Service personnel	None

1.3 List of Regular Maintenance

Level	Regular maintenance
User	Cleaning of ink mist and other substances (When necessary and when replacing the printhead)
Service personnel	None

2. SERVICE TOOLS

2.1 List of Tools

General-purpose tools	Application
Long Phillips screwdriver	Inserting and removing screws
Phillips screwdriver	Inserting and removing screws
Flat-head screwdriver (small)	Removing the E-ring
Needle-nose pliers	Inserting and removing the spring parts
Hex key wrench	Inserting and removing hexagonal screws
Penlight	Assisting in the manual capping procedure
Multimeter	Troubleshooting
Flat brush	Applying grease
Silvon sheet	Wiping off ink
Rubber gloves	Preventing ink stains
LAN cable (Crossover cable)	For upgrading the firmware version
RS-232C cable (9-pin, male, crossover cable)	For obtaining service information
Special-purpose tools	Application
Cover switch tool (QY9-0103-000)	Pressing the cover switch (see page 5-3)
Syringe (CK-0541-000)	Draining the ink manually (see page 5-35)
Tube (QA2-6161-000)	Draining the ink manually (see page 5-35)
Grease PERMALUBE G-2 (CK-0551-020)	Applying to specified locations (see page 5-4)
Grease MOLYKOTE PG-641 (CK-0562-020)	Applying to specified locations (see page 5-4)

2.2 Using the Cover Switch Tool

Use the cover switch tool by inserting the hook into the cover switch.

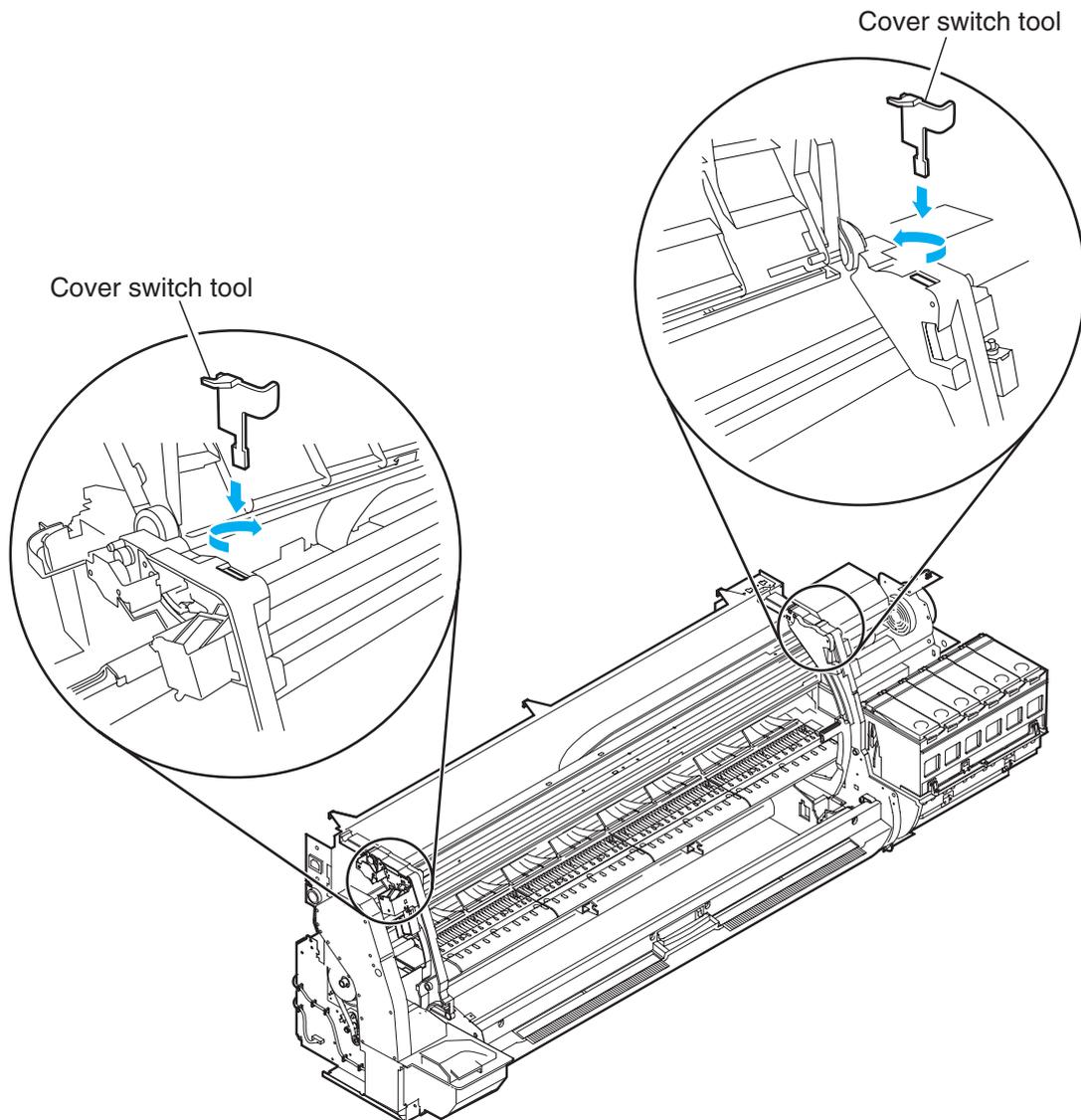


Figure 5-1 Using the Cover Switch Tool

3. APPLYING THE GREASE

Apply the grease at the location shown below.
Smear the grease lightly and evenly with a flat brush.
See [Part 5: 5. DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY \(Page 5-7\)](#) and the Parts Catalog for reassembling and disassembling the printer.



Don't apply the grease to locations other than those designated. Unwanted grease may cause poor print quality, take particular care that grease does not get onto the wiper, cap, or the linear scale.

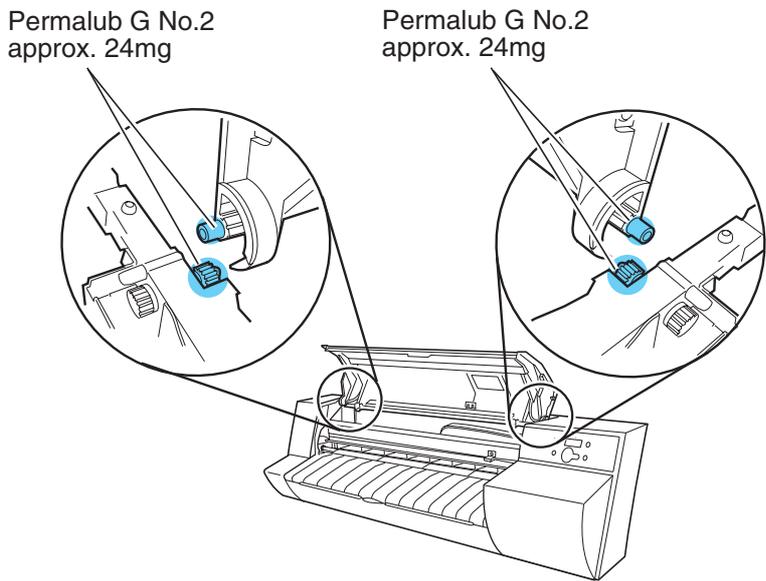


Figure 5-2 Apply the grease of upper cover

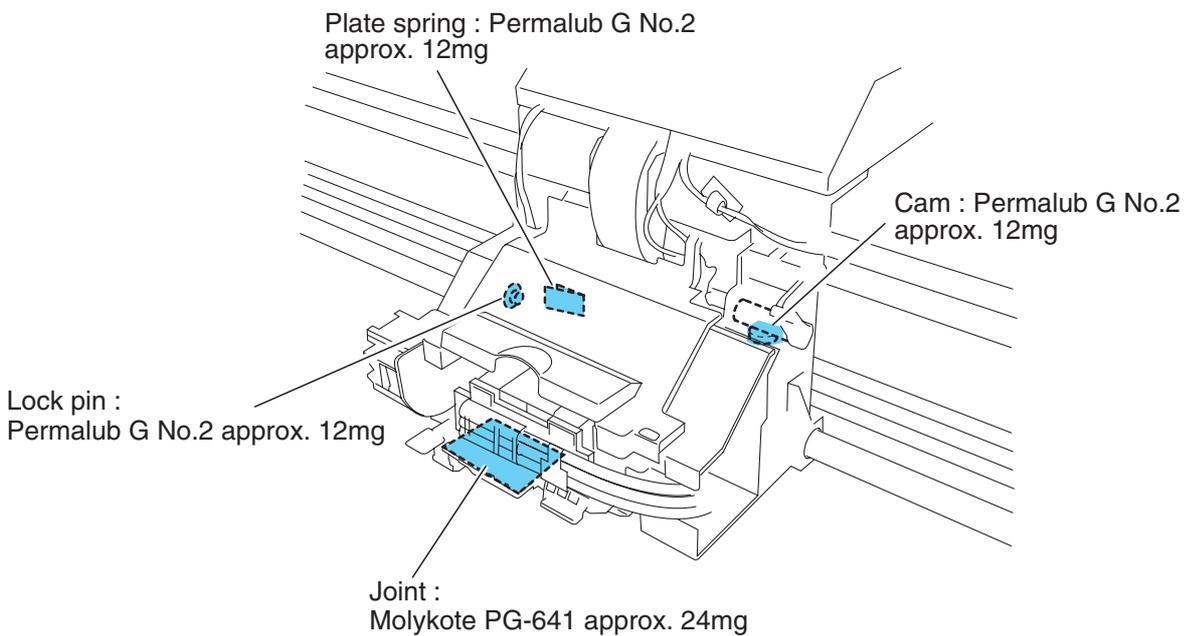


Figure 5-3 Applying the grase of carriage

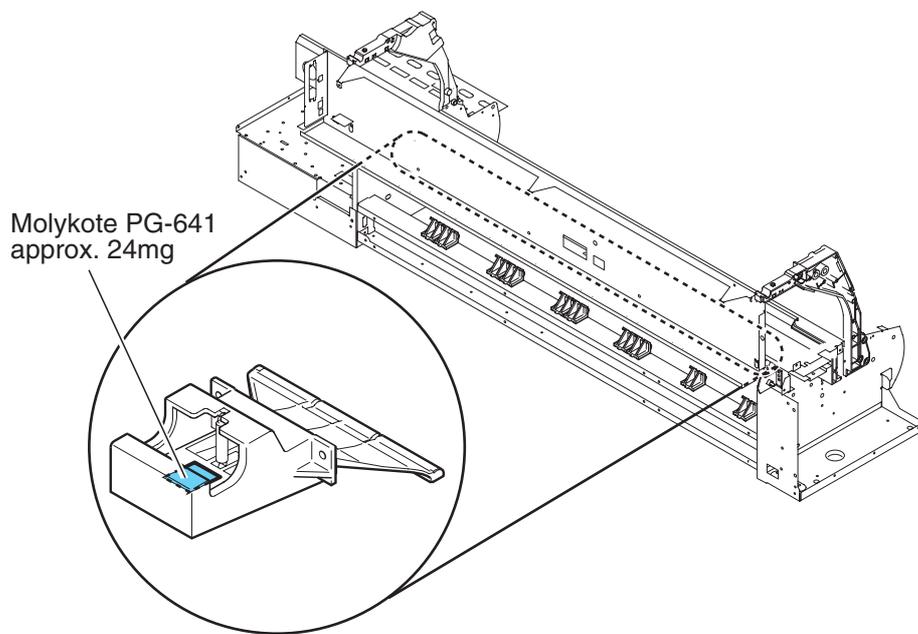


Figure 5-4 Applying the grease of pinch roller unit

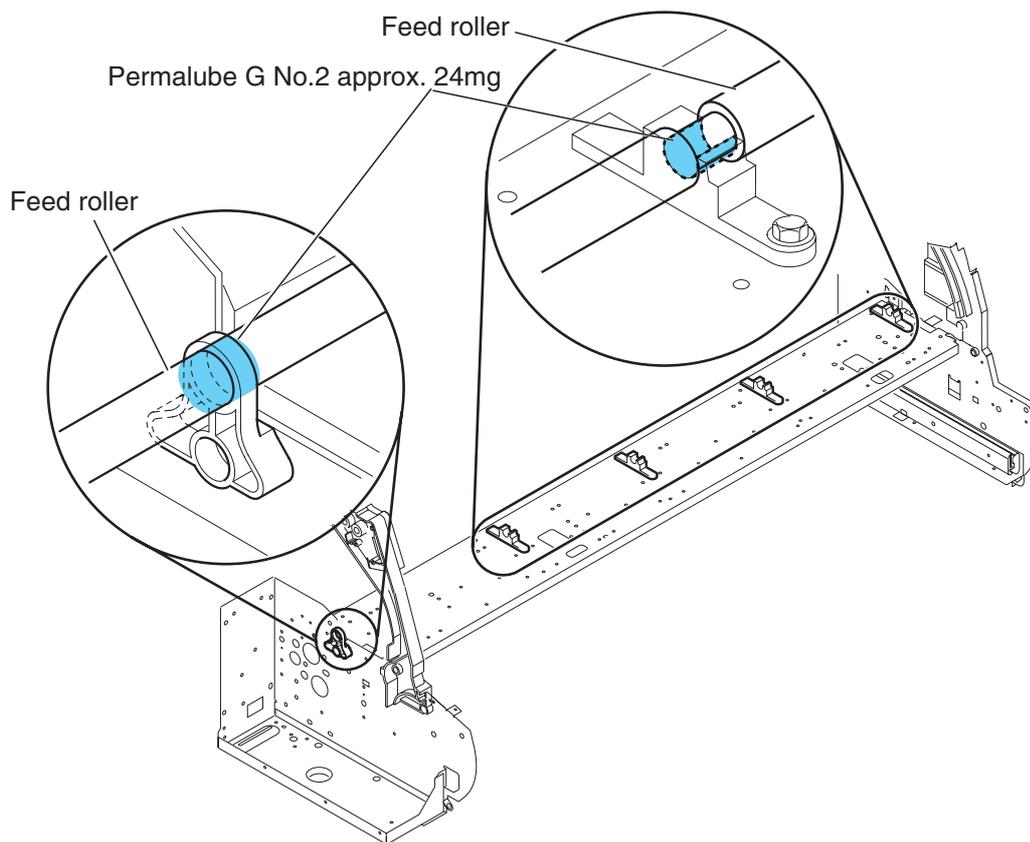


Figure 5-5 Applying the grease of feed roller

4. SERVICE PARTS

4.1 Service Parts

The service parts indicated below require careful handling.

4.1.1 Keep all packages with the warning not to turn over.

Pay careful attention to all individually packaged service part (carriage unit, purge unit, ink tank unit, and other parts) boxes marked "This side up" and handle appropriately.



Figure 5-6 "Right side up" Sign

5. DISASSEMBLY/REASSEMBLY

5.1 Disassembly/Reassembly

See Parts Catalog for the process of disassembly and reassembly.

The parts layout illustrations have figure numbers according to the disassembly procedure of the product.

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

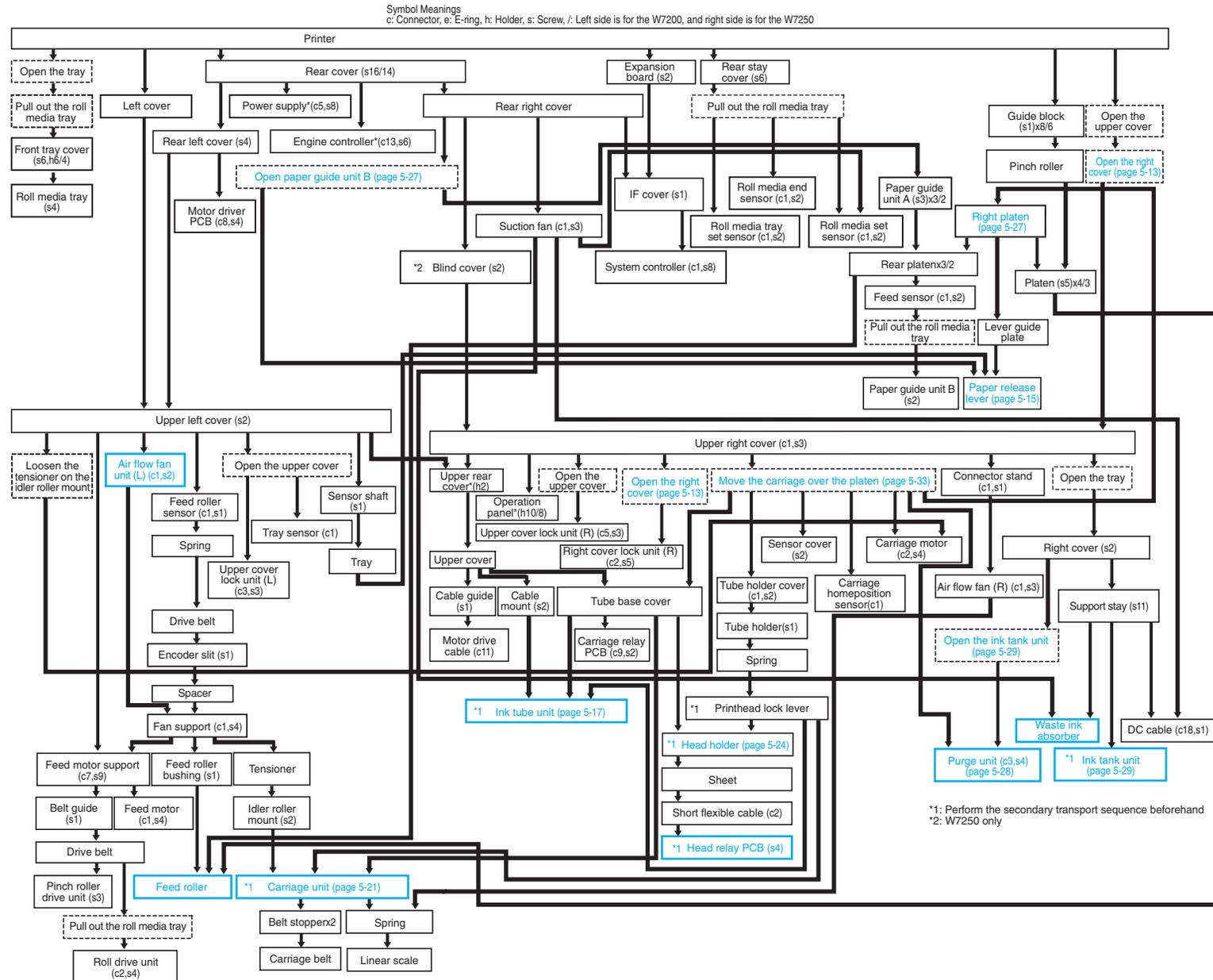


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

5.2 Points to Note on Disassembly and Reassembly

Points to note on disassembly and reassembly are illustrated below.

5.2.1 Note on locations prohibited from disassembly

Locations that are prohibited from disassembly and cannot be adjusted outside of the factory have red screws instead of the regular-colored screws. The W7200 printer has 66 of these red screws, and the W7250 has 60 red screws.

Total number of red screws indicating disassembly is prohibited: 66 screws (W7200)/60 screws (W7250)

The red screws are also shown in the Parts Catalog as red color.

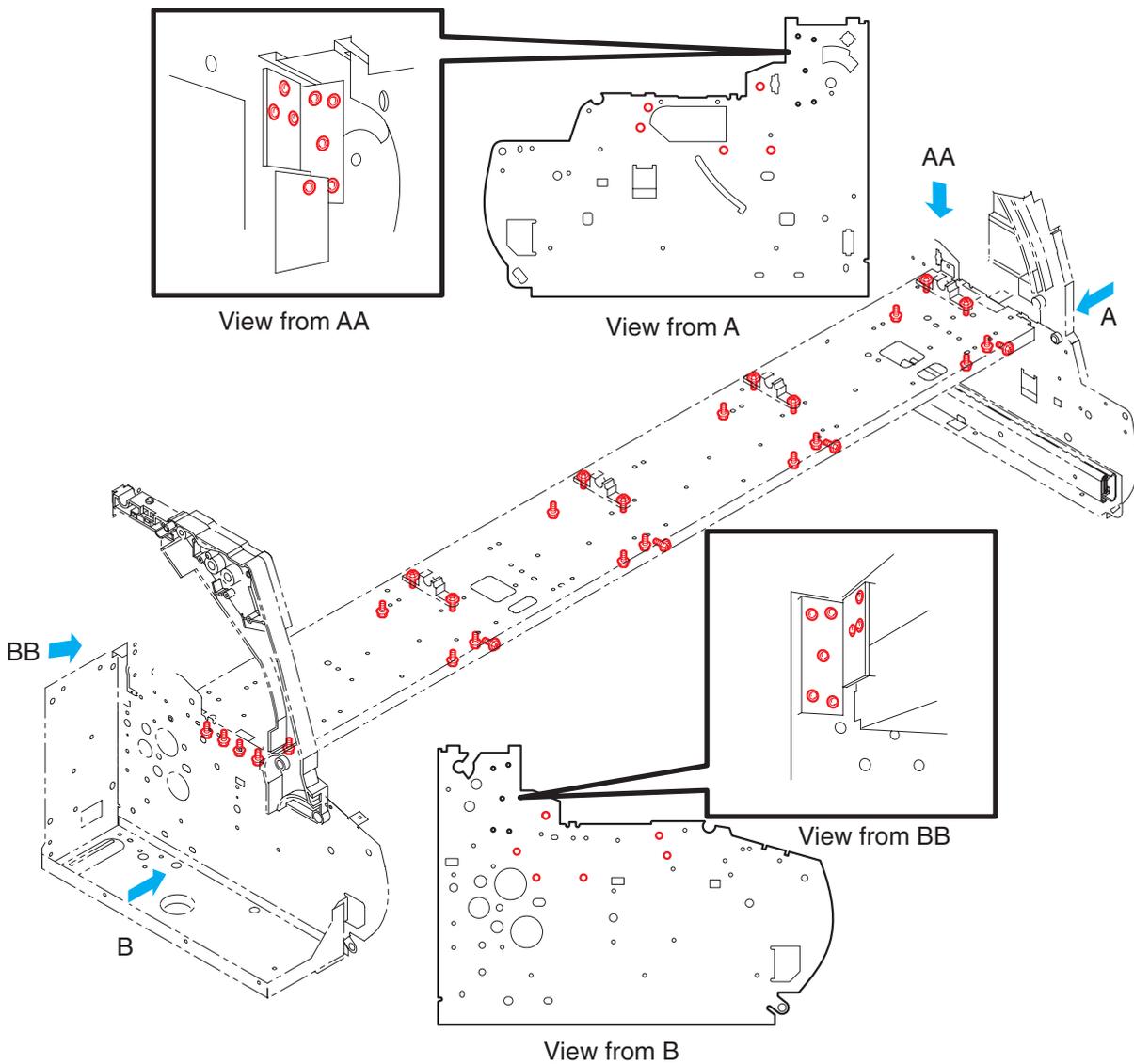


Figure 5-8 Units Needing to be Drained of Ink When the Printer is Disassembled

5.2.2 Manual carriage movement

The carriage is moved by holding down the left arrow button on the operation panel for at least 0.5 seconds when the printer is offline. However, when the power is turned off such as during assembly or disassembly, move the carriage by holding the grips shown in the figure below.



Move the carriage as required during assembly and disassembly to prevent contact of the carriage with the parts that are removed.

The carriage does not move when capping has been performed. Refer to the procedures in [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#) to remove the caps and move the carriage.

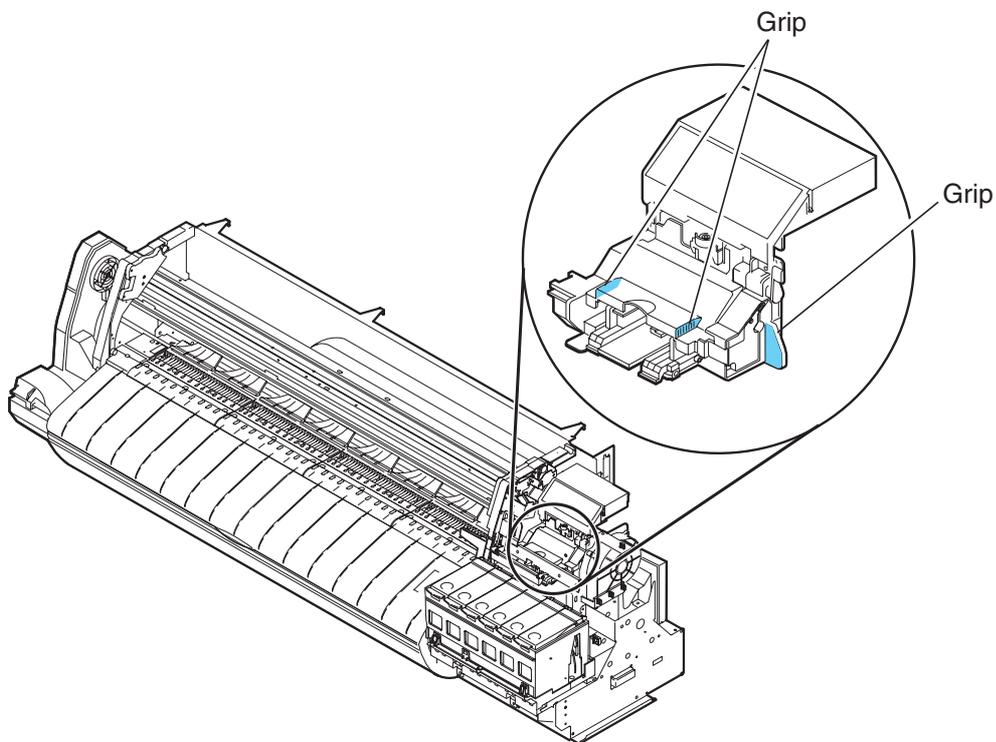


Figure 5-9 Manual Carriage Movement

5.2.3 Units required for draining the ink

When disassembling the following units of the ink passage, drain the filled ink to prevent an ink leak. To drain the ink, refer to [Part 5: 5.4 Draining the Ink \(page 5-35\)](#).

- * Head holder
Refer to [page 5-24](#).
- * Carriage unit
Refer to [page 5-21](#).
- * Ink tube unit
Refer to [page 5-17](#).
- * Ink tank unit
Refer to [page 5-29](#).

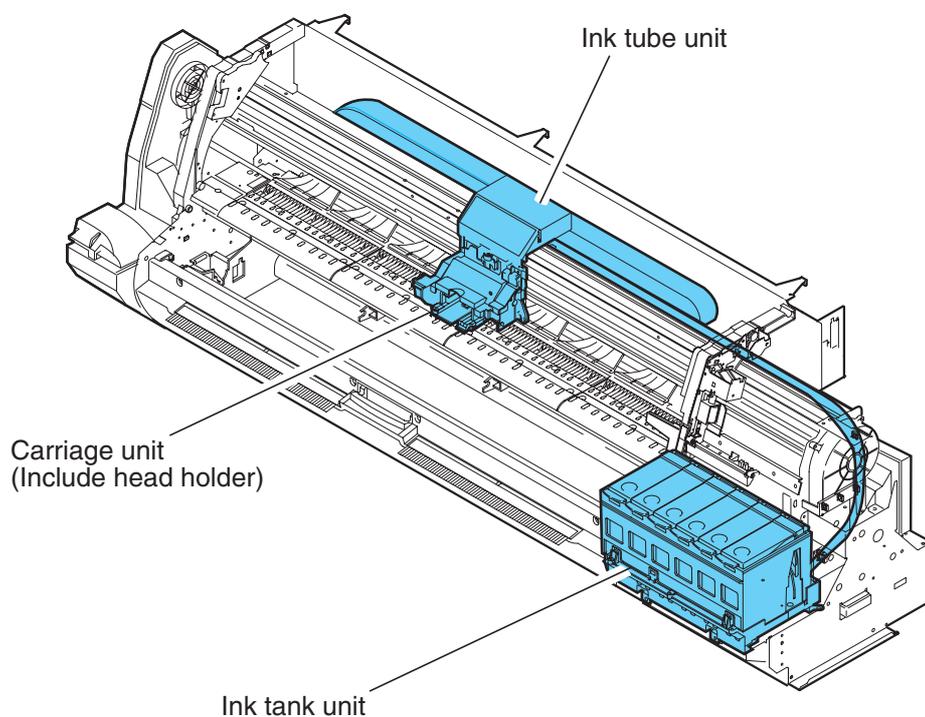


Figure 5-10

5.2.4 Outer covers

a) Opening the right cover

Unlock the right cover by manual opening the upper cover and pressing down the right cover switching solenoid lever inside the cover with your finger, and then open the right cover.

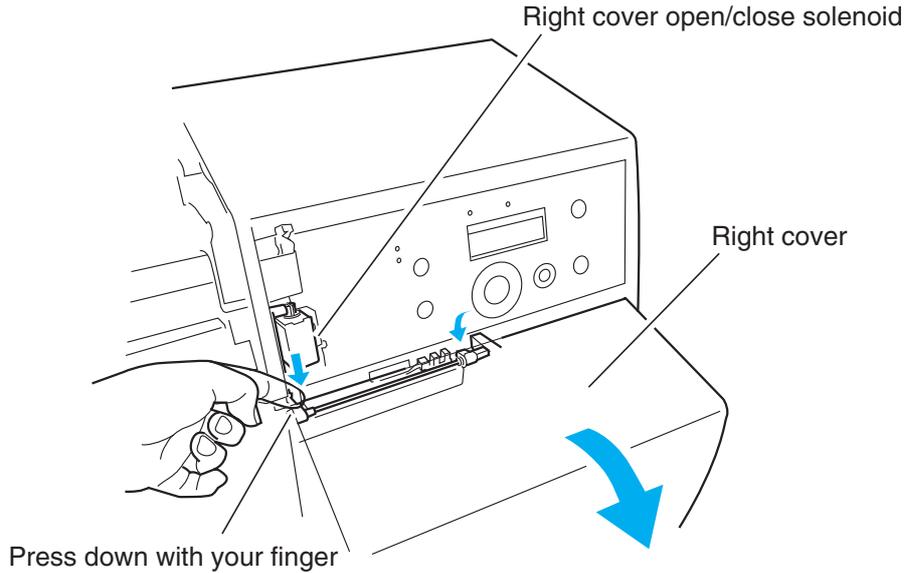


Figure 5-11 Opening the Right Cover

b) Rear right cover and rear left cover

The hooks under the rear right cover and the rear left cover are engaged with the frame. Therefore, remove the covers by sliding them in the rear direction. If printer unit is stacked on the stand, operation can be facilitated by removing the covers of the stand beforehand.

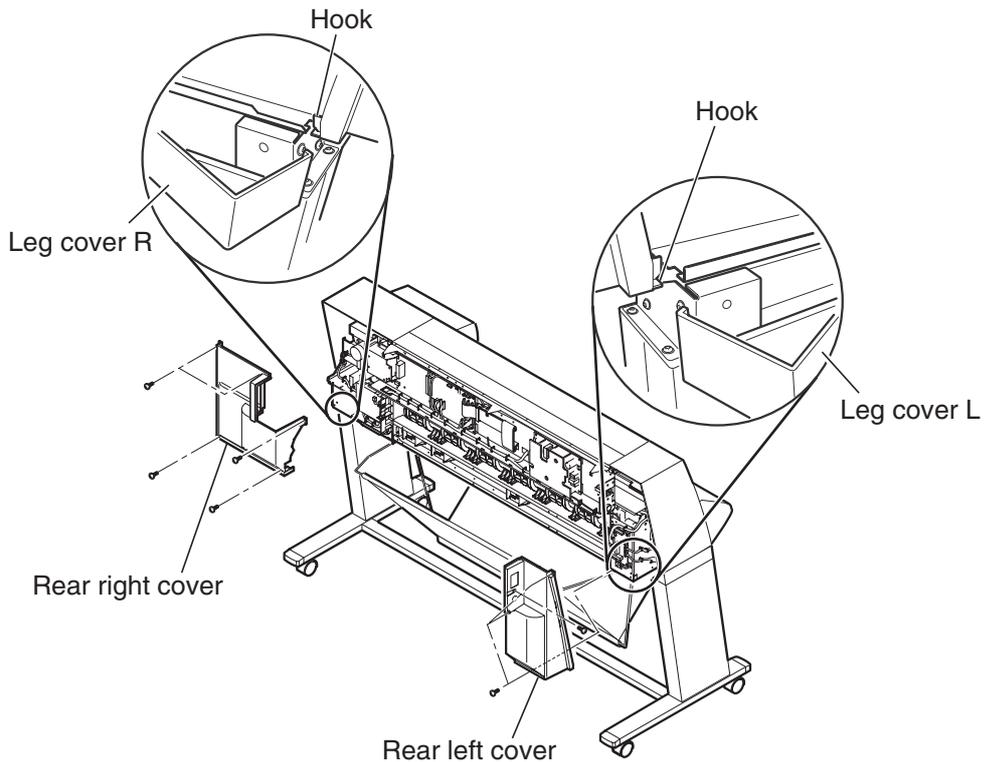
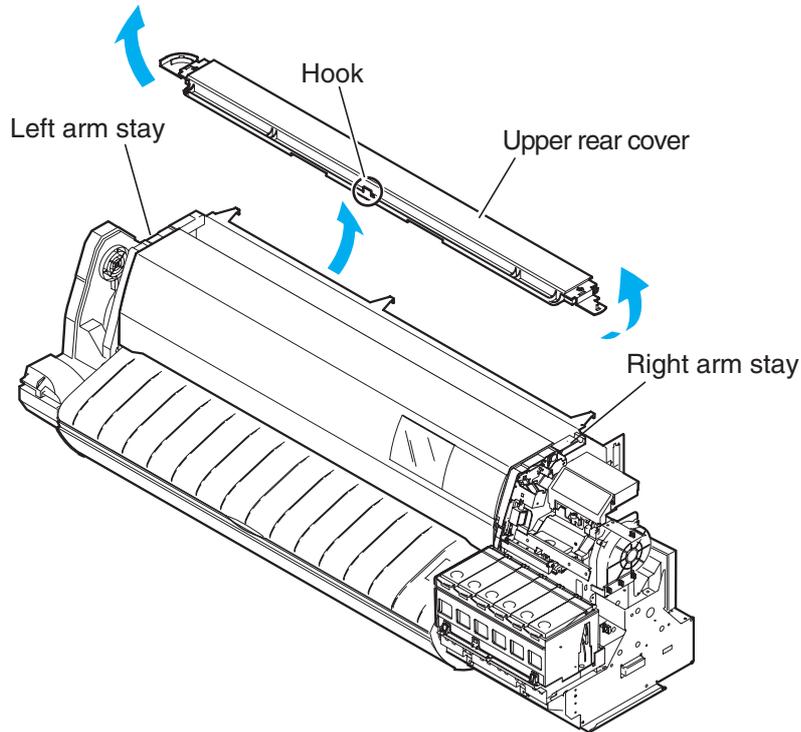


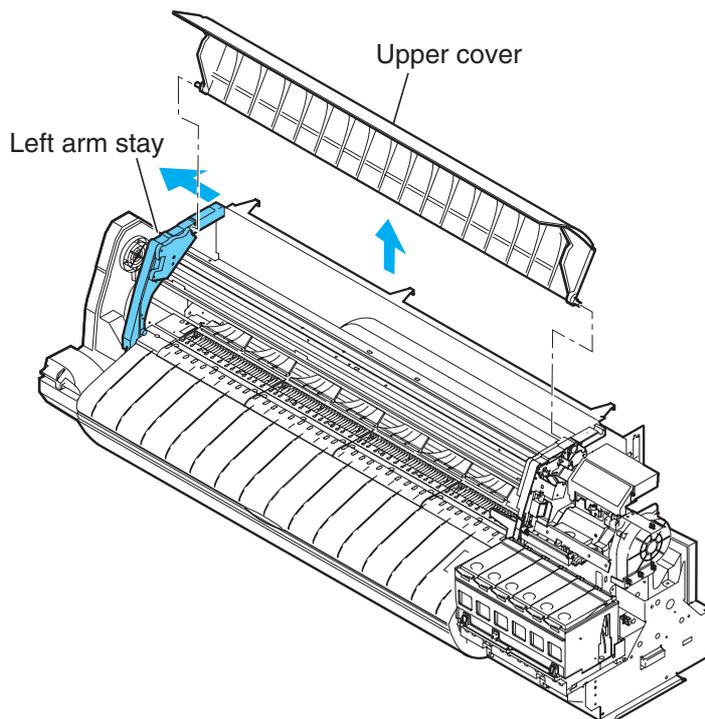
Figure 5-12 Rear Right Cover and Rear Left Cover

c) Upper rear cover

The supporting section of this cover holds the upper cover. Therefore, remove the upper rear cover in the direction of the arrow. Also, when attaching the upper rear cover, be careful not to pinch the cable inside the arm stay.

**Figure 5-13 Upper Rear Cover****d) Upper cover**

Open the upper cover while opening the left arm stay to the outside, and then remove the upper cover.

**Figure 5-14 Upper Cover**

e) Paper release lever

A hook is engaged with the right arm stay. Therefore, apply pressure to the pinch roller when removing the paper release lever.

To attach the paper release lever, align the marks (phases) on the paper release lever gear unit and receiving side gear unit.

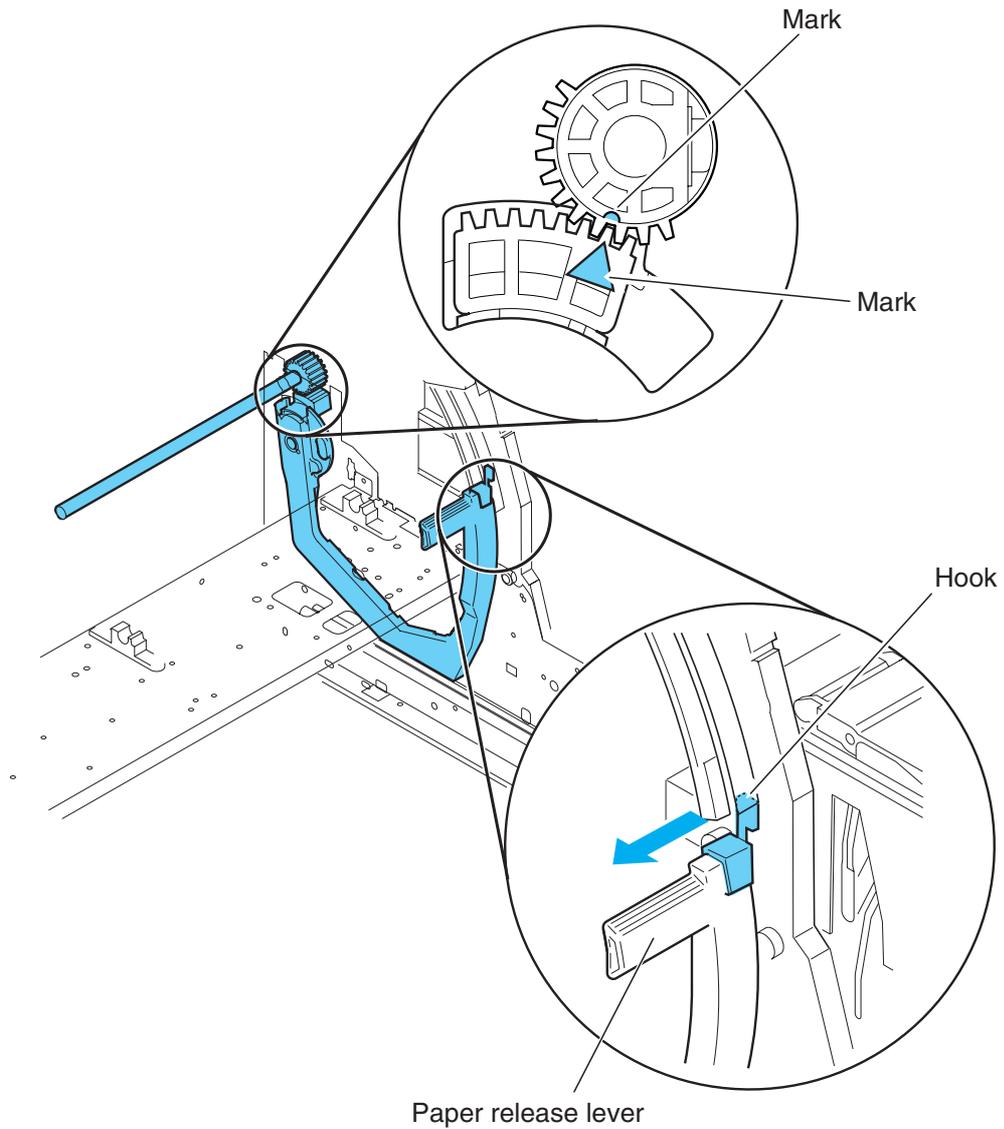


Figure 5-15 Paper Release Lever

5.2.5 Driving unit

a) Drive belt (for driving the feed roller)

To mount the drive belt for driving the feed roller, loosen the setscrews of the tensioner, and then use the spring pressure to determine the tension of the drive belt. Once the belt is mounted, use the setscrews to secure the tensioner in place.

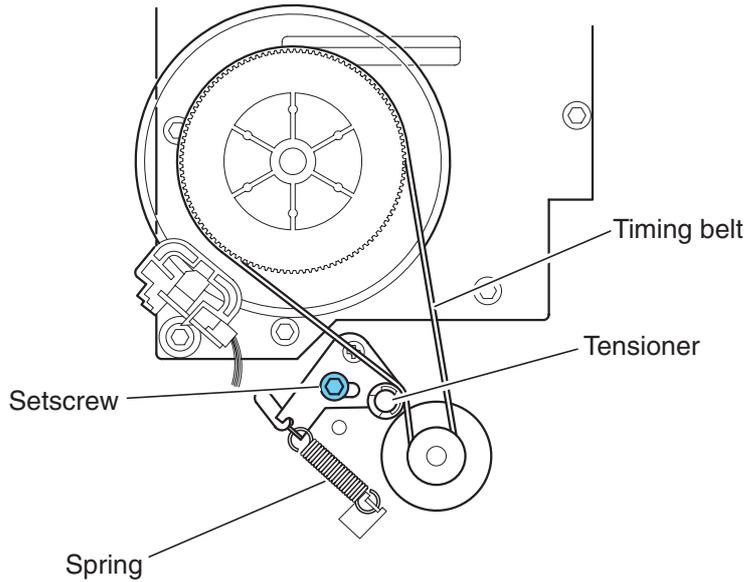


Figure 5-16 Drive Belt (for driving the feed roller)

b) Fan support

When mounting the fan support, align the edge of the fan support with the edge of the top casing, and then secure in place.

If it is mounted in a bent position, the cutter pressing section will not make proper contact with the cutter unit and the cutter blades may not lower down.

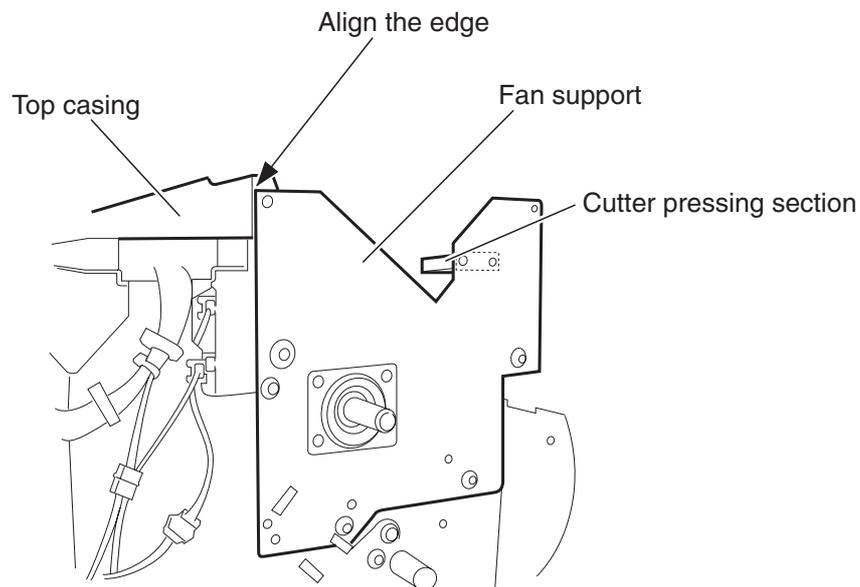
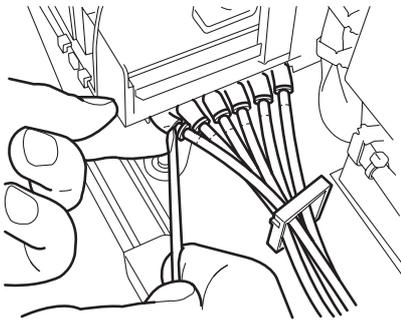


Figure 5-17 Fan Support

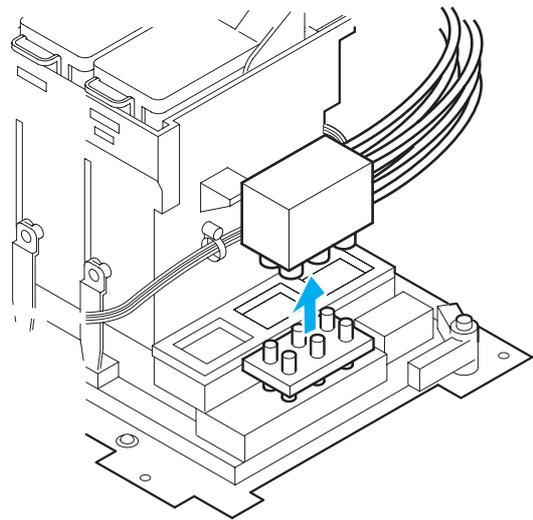
5.2.6 Ink tube unit

a) Removing the ink tube unit

- 1) Drain the ink. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.4 Draining the Ink \(page 5-35\)](#).
- 2) Turn off the power, and then move the carriage over the platen. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#).
- 3) Remove the support stay, tube base cover, and tube holder cover.
- 4) Remove the three flexible cables from the engine controller.
- 5) Remove all the connectors on the carriage relay PCB.
- 6) Remove all of the joints on the ink tube unit and ink tank unit.



W7200



W7250

Figure 5-18 Joints

- 7) Place the joint on the ink tube unit side on the waste ink absorber, and then release the printhead lock lever to allow all of the ink remaining in the tube to flow to the waste ink absorber.
- 8) Remove the printhead.
- 9) Remove the printhead lock lever.
- 10) Wrap the joint on the ink tube unit with a plastic bag or other covering so that no ink splashes or leaks, and then close the plastic bag.

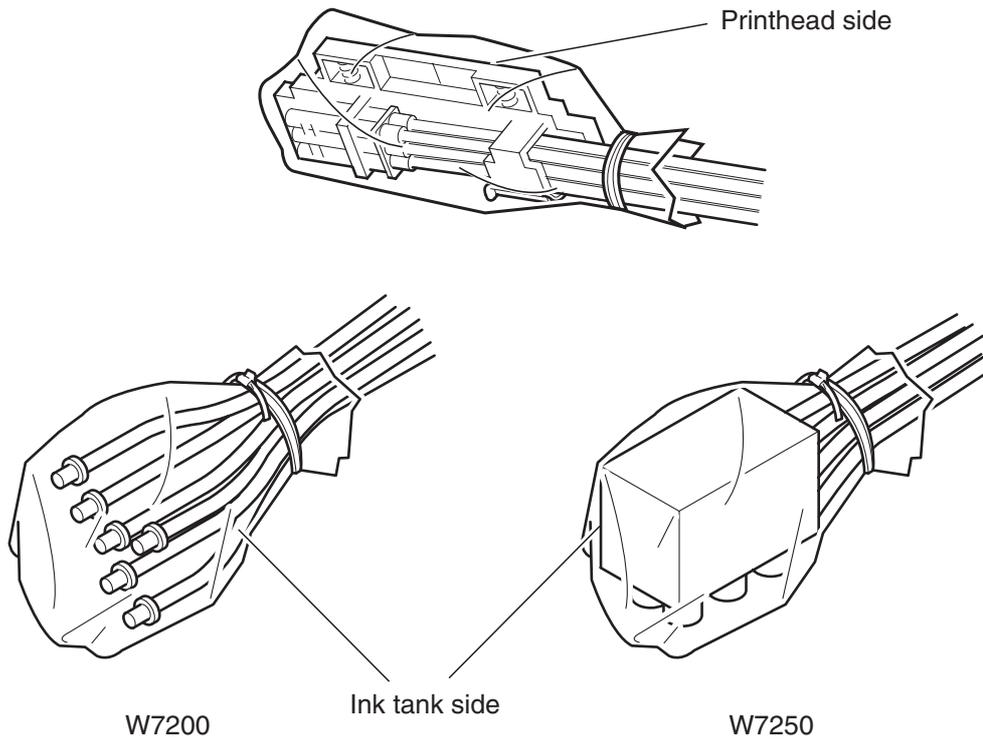


Fig. 5-19 Prevention of ink leaks

11) Remove the two screws, and take off the cable mount from the frame.

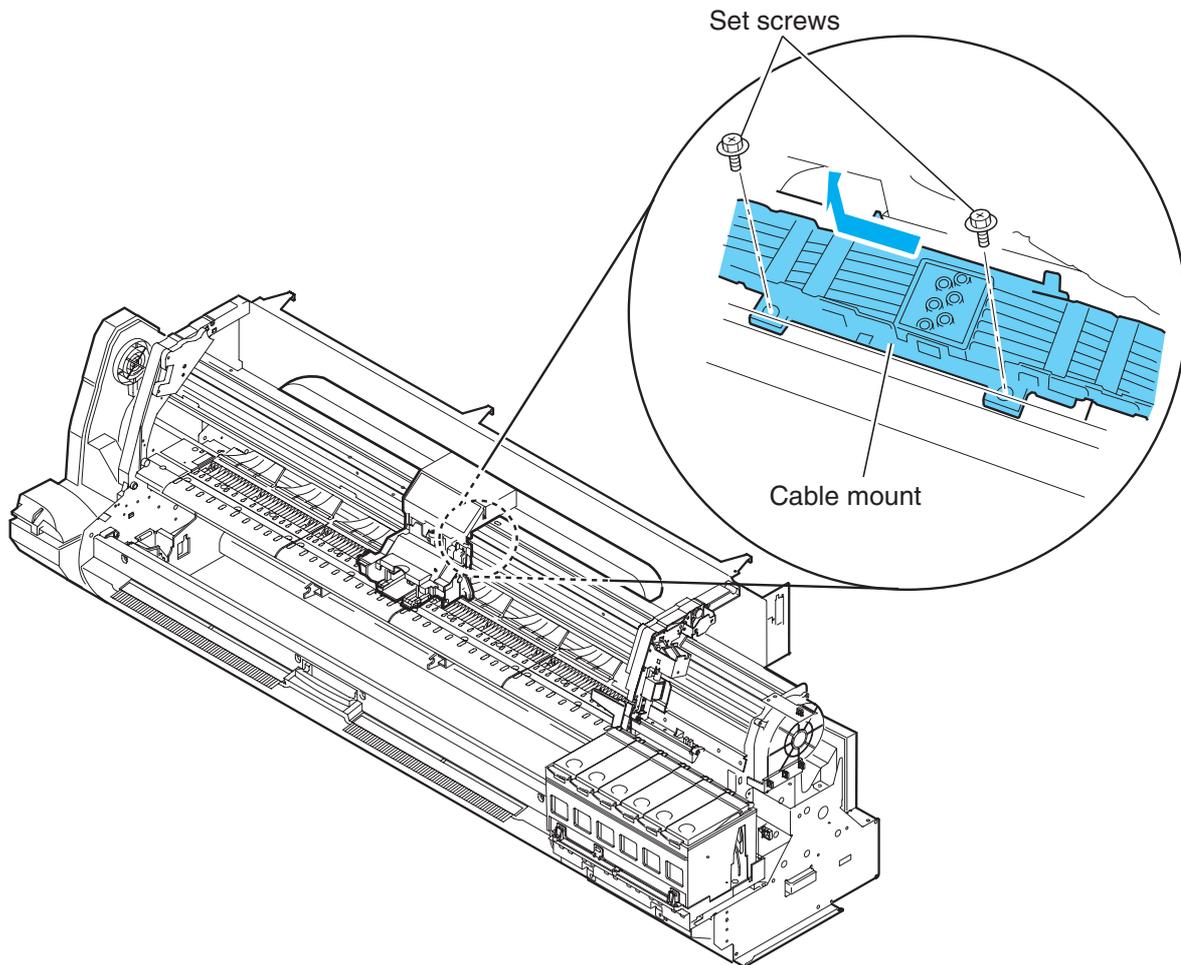


Fig. 5-20 Cable Mount

12) Remove the two screws, and take off the ink tube unit.

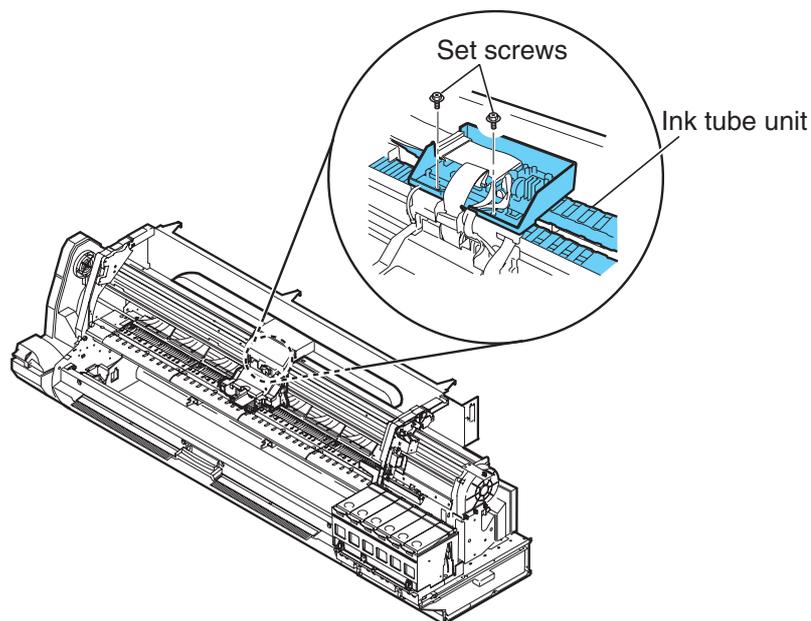


Fig. 5-21 Ink Tube Unit

b) Assembling the ink tube unit

Check the numbers on the tube indicating the ink color, and then connect the joints on the W7200 ink tank side in the numerical order shown in the drawing.

Also, if replacing the ink tube unit, turn on the power when the printhead and ink tank are not installed, and then install the printhead and ink tank by following the messages and refill the ink.

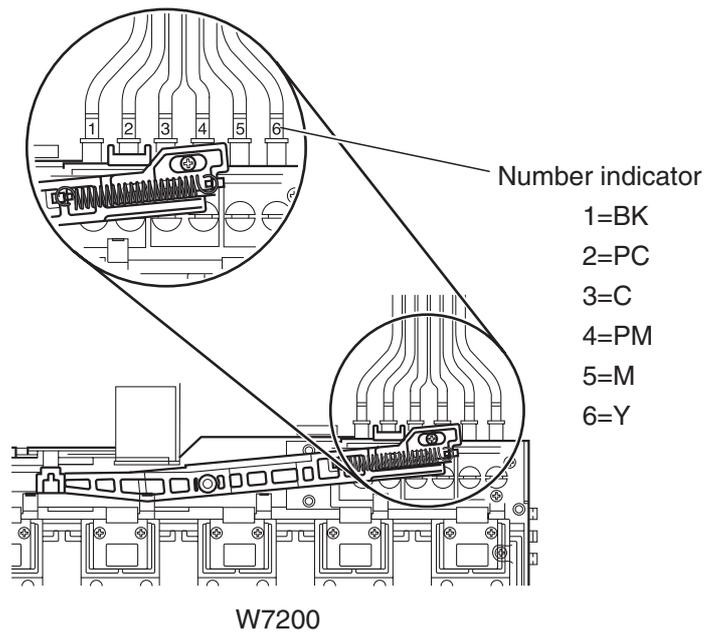


Fig. 5-22 Joints of Ink Tube (W7200)

5.2.7 Carriage unit

a) Removing the carriage unit

- 1) Drain the ink. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.4 Draining the Ink \(page 5-35\)](#).
- 2) Turn off the power, and then move the carriage over the platen. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#).
- 3) Remove the tube base cover and tube holder cover.
- 4) Remove the printhead.
- 5) Remove all the connectors on the carriage relay PCB.
- 6) Remove the printhead lock lever.
- 7) Wrap the joint on the ink tube unit with a plastic bag or other covering so that no ink splashes or leaks, and then close the plastic bag.

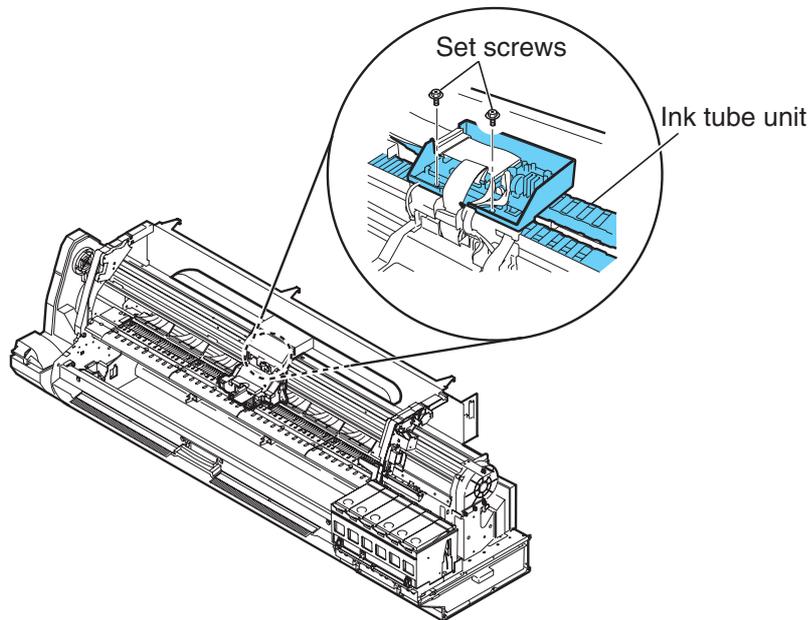


Fig. 5-23 Prevention of ink leaks

- 8) Remove the two screws, and take off the ink tube unit from the carriage.

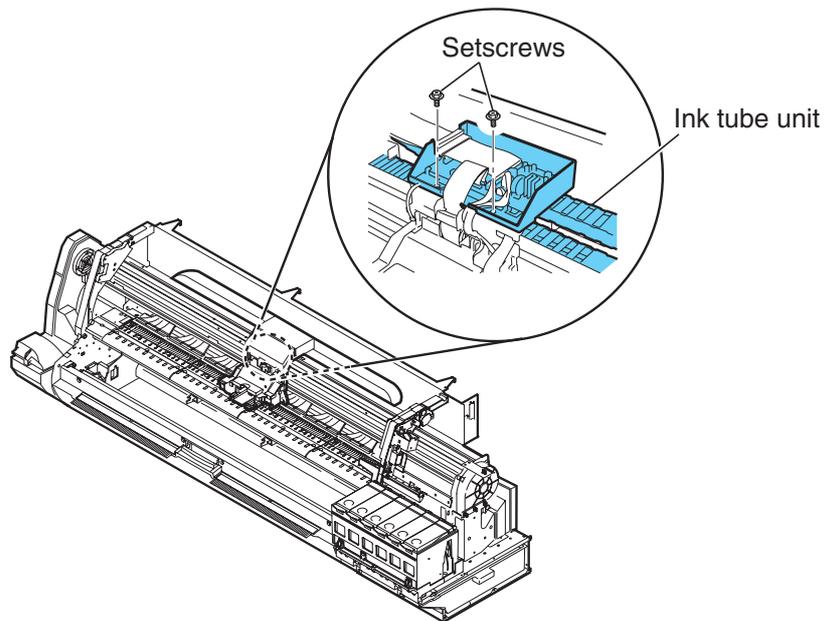


Fig. 5-24 Ink Tube Unit

- 9) Remove the idler roller mount, and take off the carriage unit from the printer left side.

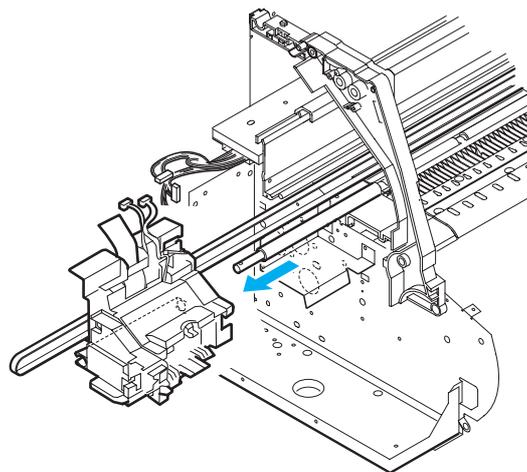


Fig. 5-25 Carriage Unit

b) Mounting the carriage belt

To mount the carriage belt, align the all notches of the carriage belt with the belt stopper.

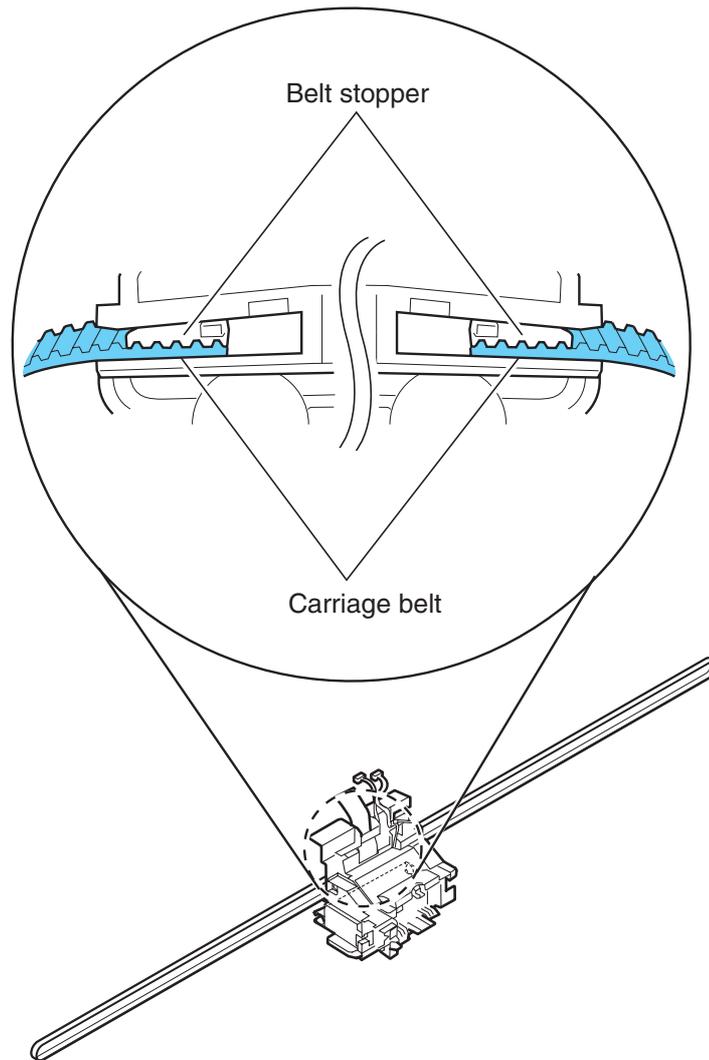
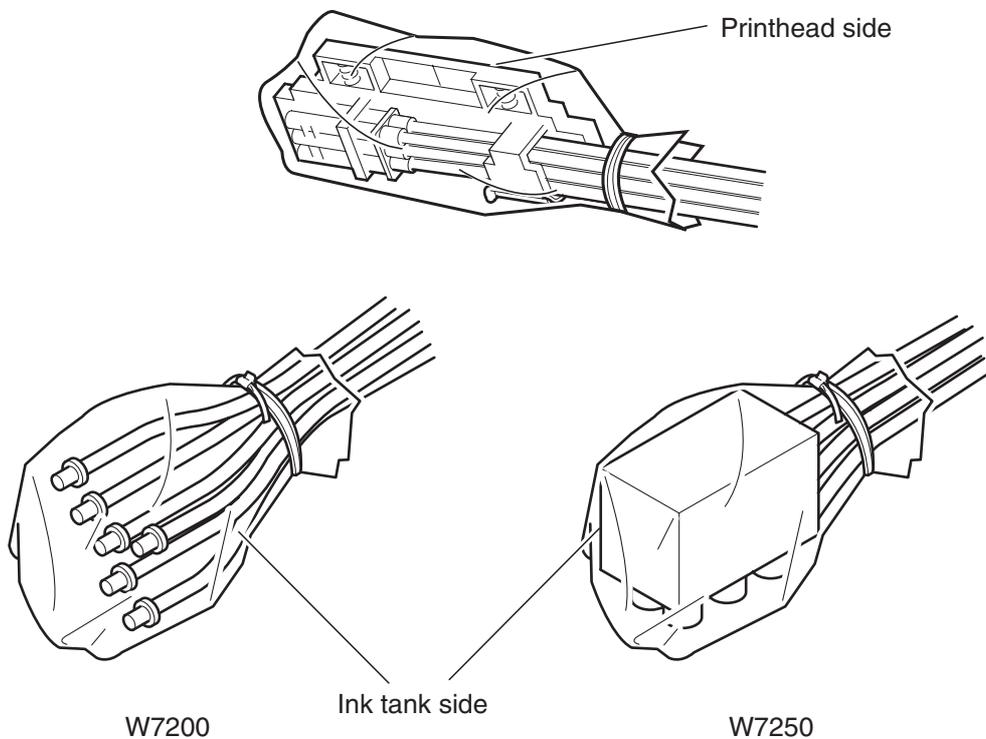


Fig. 5-26 Belt Stopper

c) Removing the head holder

- 1) Drain the ink. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.4 Draining the Ink \(page 5-35\)](#).
- 2) Turn off the power, and then move the carriage over the platen. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#).
- 3) Remove the tube base cover, tube holder cover, and tube holder.
- 4) Remove the printhead.
- 5) Remove all the connectors on the carriage relay PCB.
- 6) Remove the printhead lock lever.
- 7) Wrap the joint on the ink tube unit with a plastic bag or other covering so that no ink splashes or leaks, and then close the plastic bag.

**Fig. 5-27 Prevention of ink leaks**

- 8) Use a flat-head screwdriver or other tool to press the lock pin at the left-rear side of the head holder in the direction of the arrow and open the head holder.

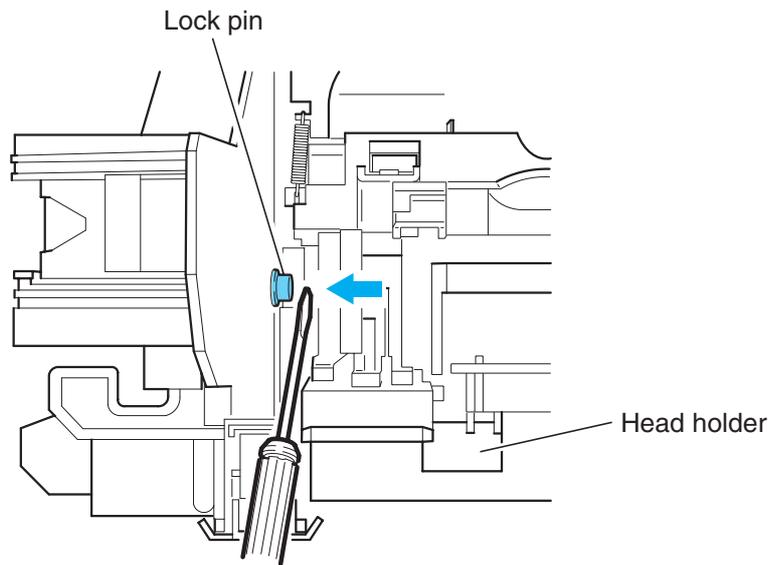


Fig. 5-28 Lock Pin of Head Holder

- 9) Open the grips of the head holder and remove the head holder.

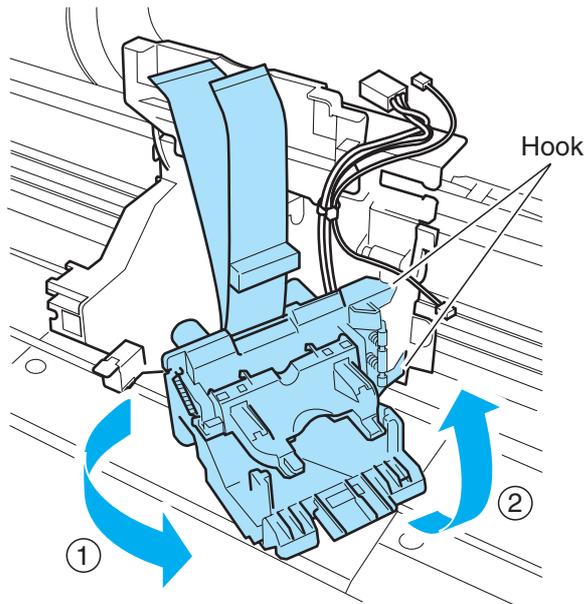


Fig 5-29 Removing the Head Holder

d) Assembling the head holder

After assembling the head holder, check that the head holder rises or falls in conjunction with the operation of the printhead height adjustment lever.

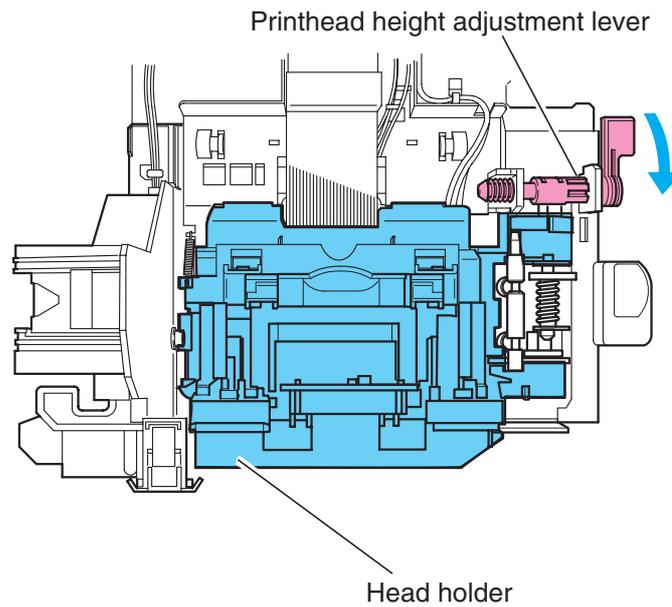


Fig. 5-30 Checking the Printhead Height Adjustment Lever

5.2.8 Feeder unit

a) Opening paper guide B

- 1) Remove the spring.
- 2) Remove the two lock screws of the lever.

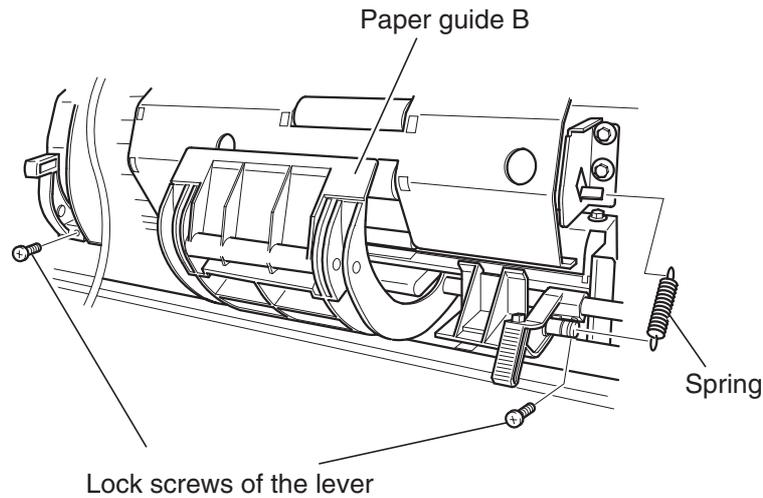


Fig. 5-31 Paper Guide B

b) Removing the right platen

- 1) Turn off the power, and then move the carriage over the platen. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit](#) (page 5-33).
- 2) Remove the cutter unit, and then move the carriage unit until it contacts the left side.
- 3) Remove the two setscrews of the right platen.
- 4) Raise the paper release lever, and then remove the right platen.

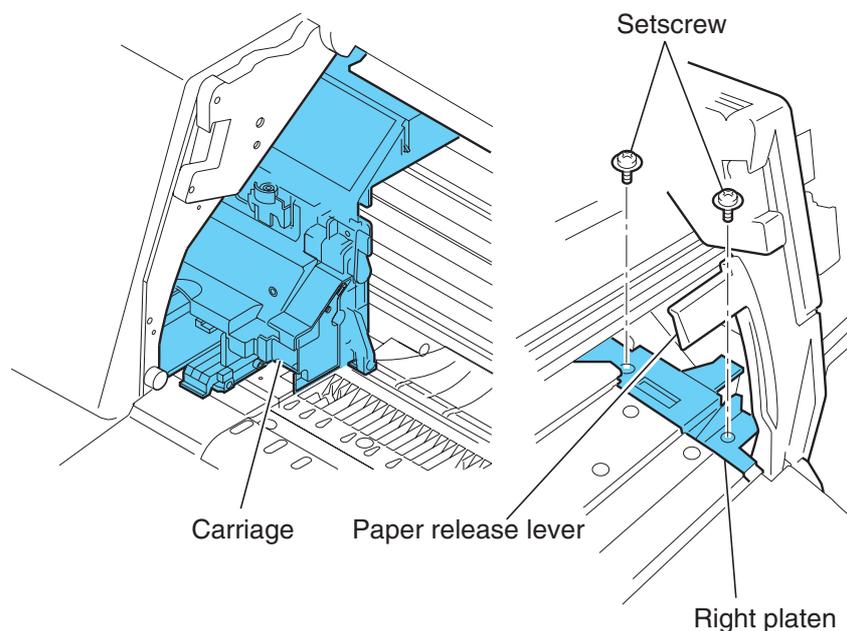


Fig. 5-32 Removing the Right Platen

5.2.9 Purge unit

a) Removing the purge unit

- 1) Turn off the power, and then move the carriage over the platen. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#).
- 2) Open the ink tank unit. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.2.10 Ink tank unit \(page 5-29\)](#).
- 3) Remove the three connectors, and then remove the cable from the cable guide.
- 4) Remove the four screws, and then remove the purge unit.

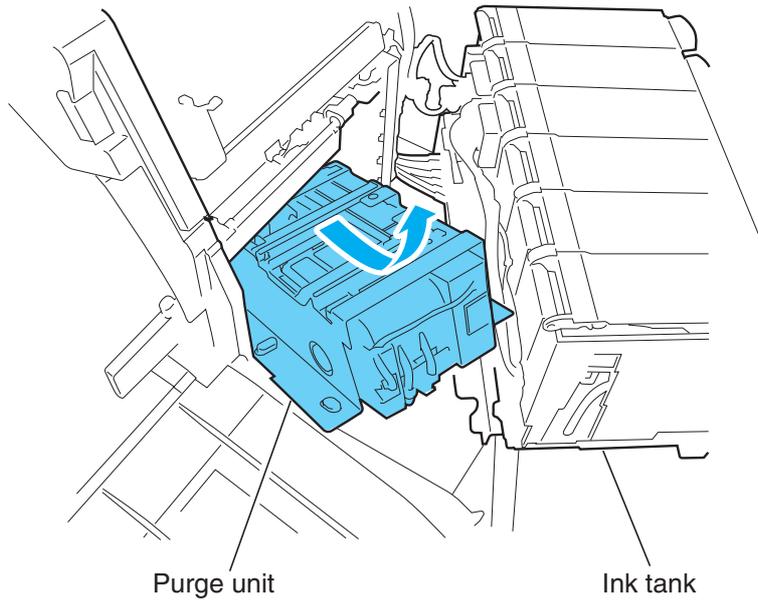


Fig. 5-33 Removing the Purge Unit

b) Check the replacing purge unit

After replacing the purge unit, refer to [Part 5: 5.2.10 Ink tank unit \(page 5-29\)](#) and check the ink supply valve.

5.2.10 Ink tank unit

a) Opening the ink tank unit

- 1) Remove the two set screws of the ink tank unit, and then loosen the fulcrum screw.
- 2) Open the ink tank unit.
- 3) Use the screw removed in step 1 to secure the ink tank unit in a temporary position.

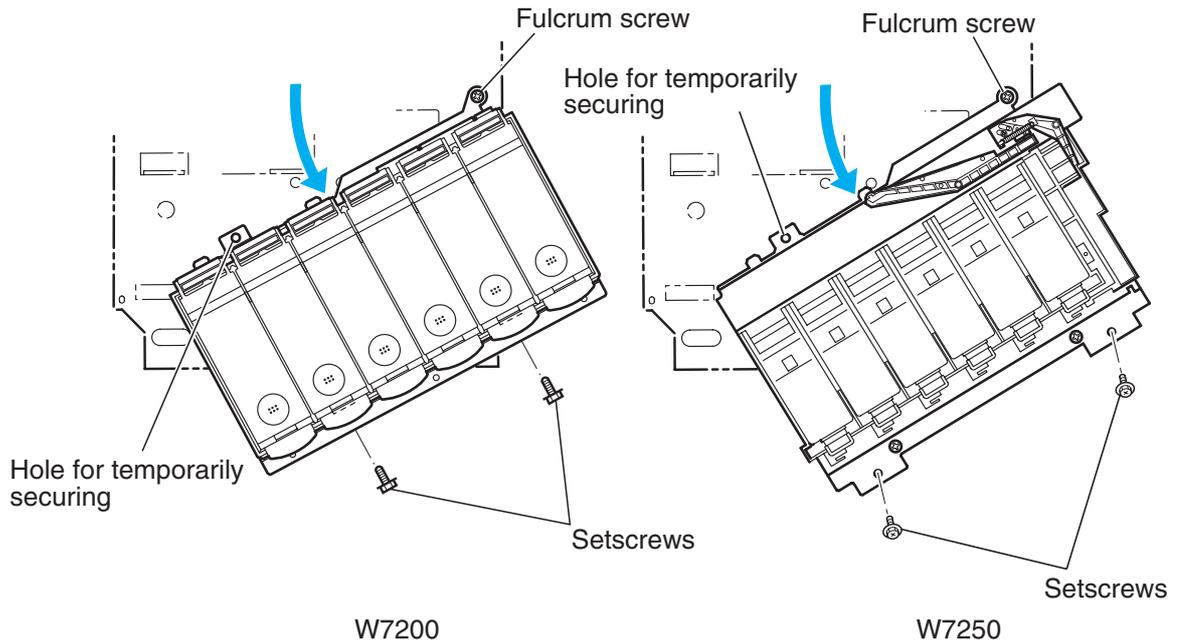


Fig. 5-34 Opening the Ink Tank Unit

b) Removing the ink tank unit

- 1) Drain the ink. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.4 Draining the Ink \(page 5-35\)](#).
- 2) Remove the support stay.
- 3) Remove all joints on the ink tube unit and ink tank unit.

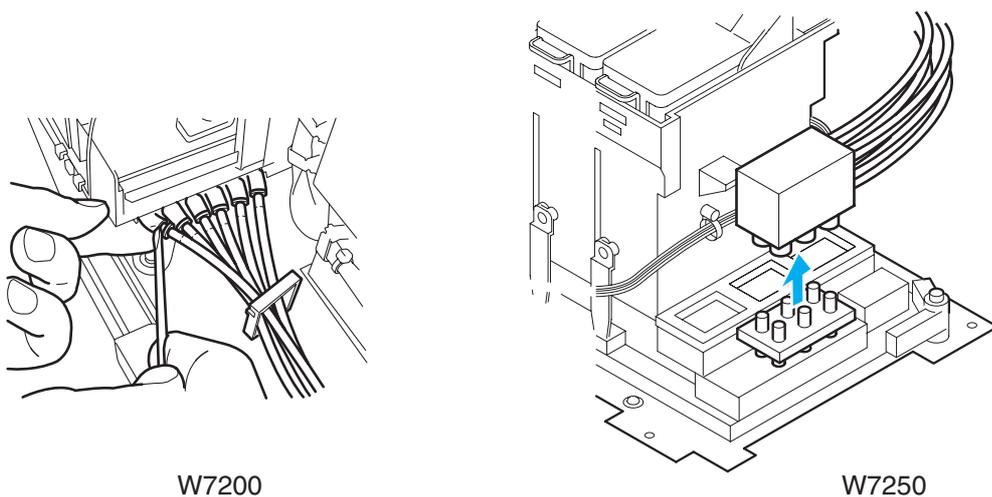


Fig. 5-35 Joints

- 4) Place the joint for the ink tube unit side on the waste ink absorber.
- 5) Remove the three screws and two connectors of the ink tank unit, and then remove the ink tank unit.

c) Check the replacing the ink tank unit

The procedure for the ink tube joint is presented in [Part 5: 5.2.6 Ink tube unit \(page 5-17\)](#). Also, follow the procedure below when replacing the ink tank unit.

- 1) Open the ink tank unit.
- 2) Move the carriage over the platen, and then take out the purge lever. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#).

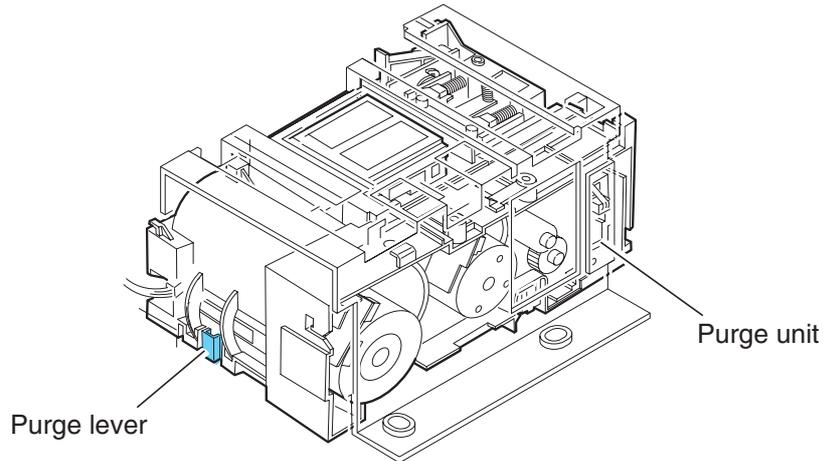


Fig. 5-36 Purge Lever

- 3) Close the ink tank unit, and then secure in place.
- 4) Loosen the lever set screw of the ink tank unit.
- 5) Check that the purge lever is making contact with the valve switching lever, and then loosen the lever set screw.
- 6) Turn the purge gear, and then return the purge lever.
- 7) Check that the ink supply valve of the ink tank unit is closed.

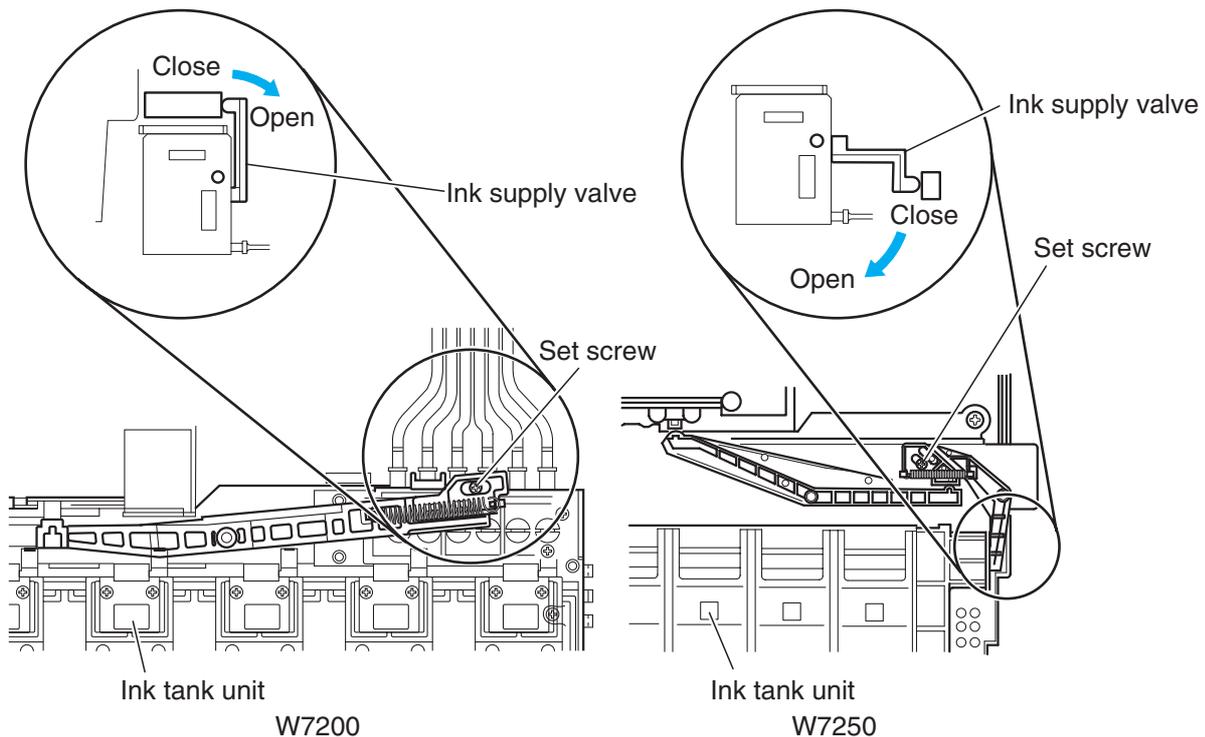


Fig. 5-37 Checking the Ink Supply Valve

5.2.11 Waste ink absorber

The capacities of the waste ink absorber are approximately 10.5 kg for the W7200 and 9.0 kg for the W7250. The air flow fan unit (L) also has a capacity of approximately 3.0 kg.

When removing the waste ink absorber and air flow fan unit (L) from the printer, be careful that the waste ink does not spill.

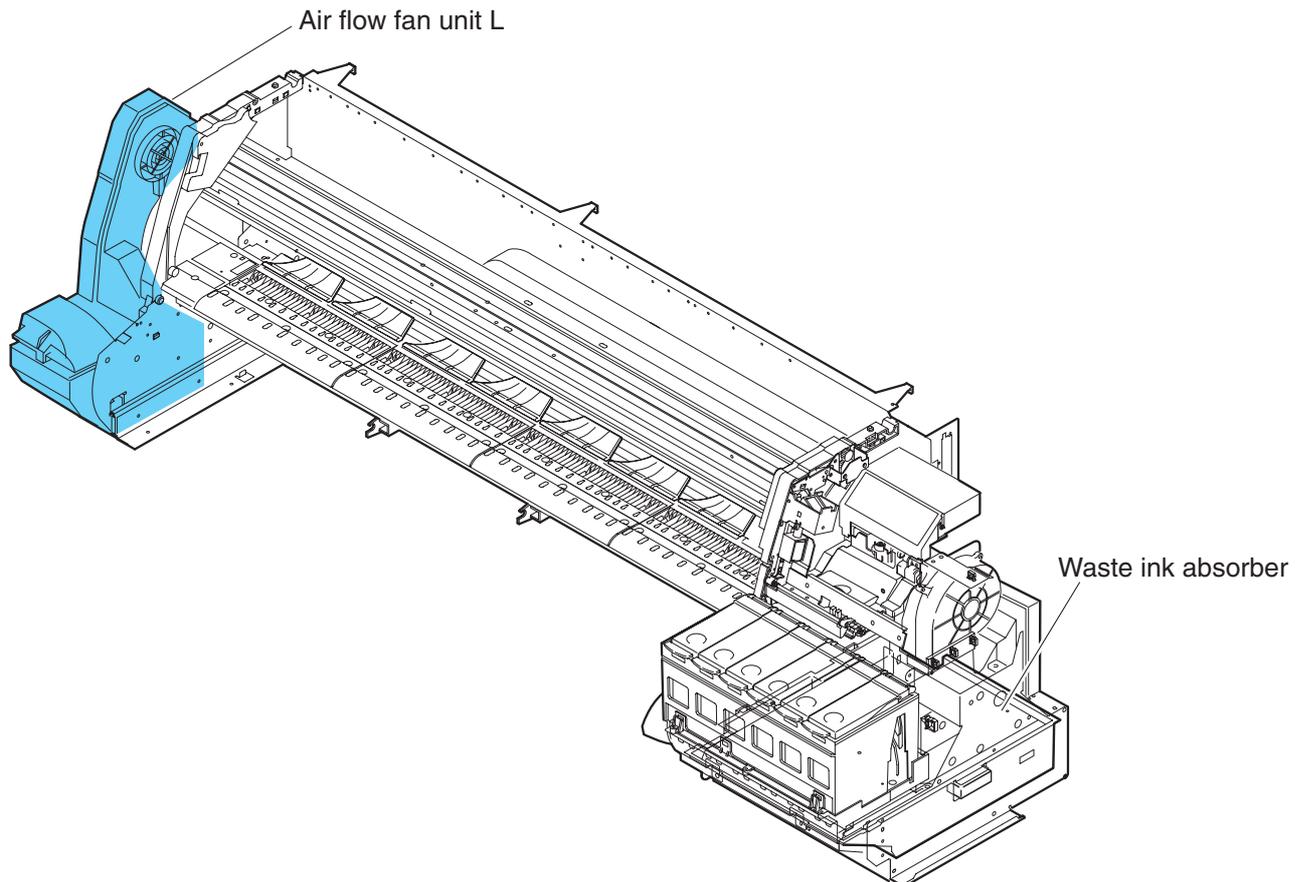


Fig. 5-38 Waste Ink Absorber



In this printer, refilling detection is based on the capacity of the waste ink absorber. Although the air flow fan unit can be replaced separately, be sure to also always replace the air flow fan unit when replacing the waste ink absorber.

After replacing the waste ink absorber, execute the INITIALIZE>W-INK command in Service mode to cancel any refilling detection errors. Do not execute the INITIALIZE>W-INK command in Service mode when the air flow fan unit is replaced separately.

5.2.12 Boards

Do not replace the system controller and engine controller at the same time. Each controller has important stored information such as the setting values, the waste ink counter, and the carriage driving time. To retain this information, before a controller is replaced, the information in the controller is temporarily stored in the other controller using internal communication and automatically updated. Therefore, the two controllers cannot be replaced at the same time. Also, when the system controller and engine controller are replaced as service parts, check that the firmware version is the latest available. If it is not, update the firmware to the latest version.

a) Replacing the system controller



When replacing the system controller original information of the following items in the MAIN MENU and the SERVICE MODE are not backed up and not restored in the new system controller.

Save the original information accordingly, prior to the replacement of the system controller in case of need.

- MAIN MENU>System Setup>IP Setting
 - SERVICE MODE>DISPLAY>WARNING
 - SERVICE MODE>DISPLAY>ERROR
 - SERVICE MODE>DISPLAY>P-SETTING
-

- 1) Turn off the power, and then replace the system controller.
- 2) Use Service mode to start the printer.
- 3) Next, "EEPROM Writing.." is shown on the display. (This will be displayed same the "Canon W72xx".)
- 4) Next, "SERVICE MODE" is shown on the display, and turn off the power.
- 5) Turn on the power.
- 6) Check the firmware version. If it is not the latest version, update the firmware.
- 7) Set the original information in "MAIN MENU>System Setup>IP Setting".

b) Replacing the engine controller

- 1) Turn off the power, and then replace the engine controller.
- 2) Use Service mode to start the printer.
- 3) Next, "E/C Replaced.." is shown on the display. (This will be displayed same the "Canon W72xx".)
- 4) Next, "Turn Power Off!!" is shown on the display, and turn off the power.
- 5) Turn on the power.
- 6) Check the firmware version. If it is not the latest version, update the firmware.

5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit

The procedures for manually opening the caps and ink supply valves are presented below.

The carriage lock pin and caps need to be released manually if moving the carriage when the power is turned off. For details on the sensors and flags, refer to [Part 4: 5. DETECTION FUNCTIONS](#) (page 4-54).

5.3.1 Opening the caps and releasing the carriage lock pins

- 1) Remove the rear cover, rear right cover, and upper right cover.
- 2) Insert a long Phillips-head screwdriver into the hole in the purge gear from the printer right side.
- 3) Rotate the purge gear in the counter-clockwise direction until the carriage lock pin drops while checking the carriage lock pin from the printer rear side.

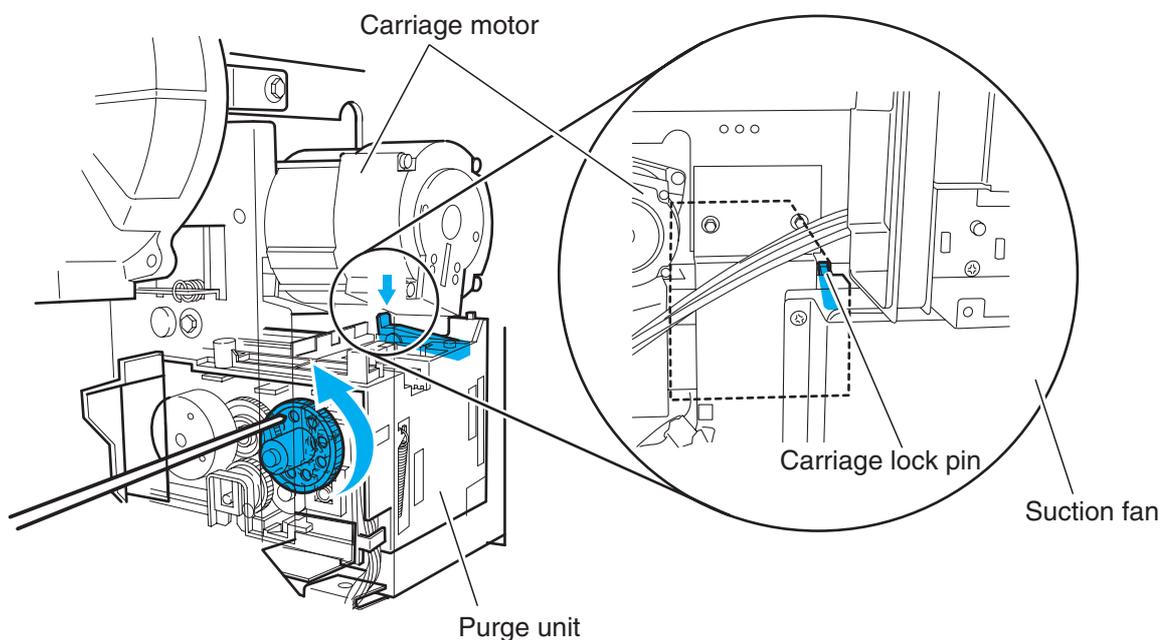


Fig. 5-39 Opening the Caps and Releasing the Carriage Lock Pins

NOTE

After opening the caps and removing the carriage lock pin, rotating the gear further will close the caps after the wiper unit has completed the return movement, and the carriage lock pin will rise and lock the carriage.

5.3.2 Opening and closing the ink supply valve

- 1) Remove rear cover, rear right cover, and upper right cover.
- 2) Insert a long Phillips-head screwdriver into the hole in the purge gear from the printer right side. (See [Figure 5-39](#))
- 3) Rotate the purge gear in the counter-clockwise direction, and then open or close the ink supply valve.



The ink supply valve is open whenever the purge lever is sticking out. If the tube is filled with ink and the printhead lock lever is unlocked while the ink supply valve is opened, the ink in the tube may reverse-flow due to the difference in the water head, and ink may leak from the ink supply needle.

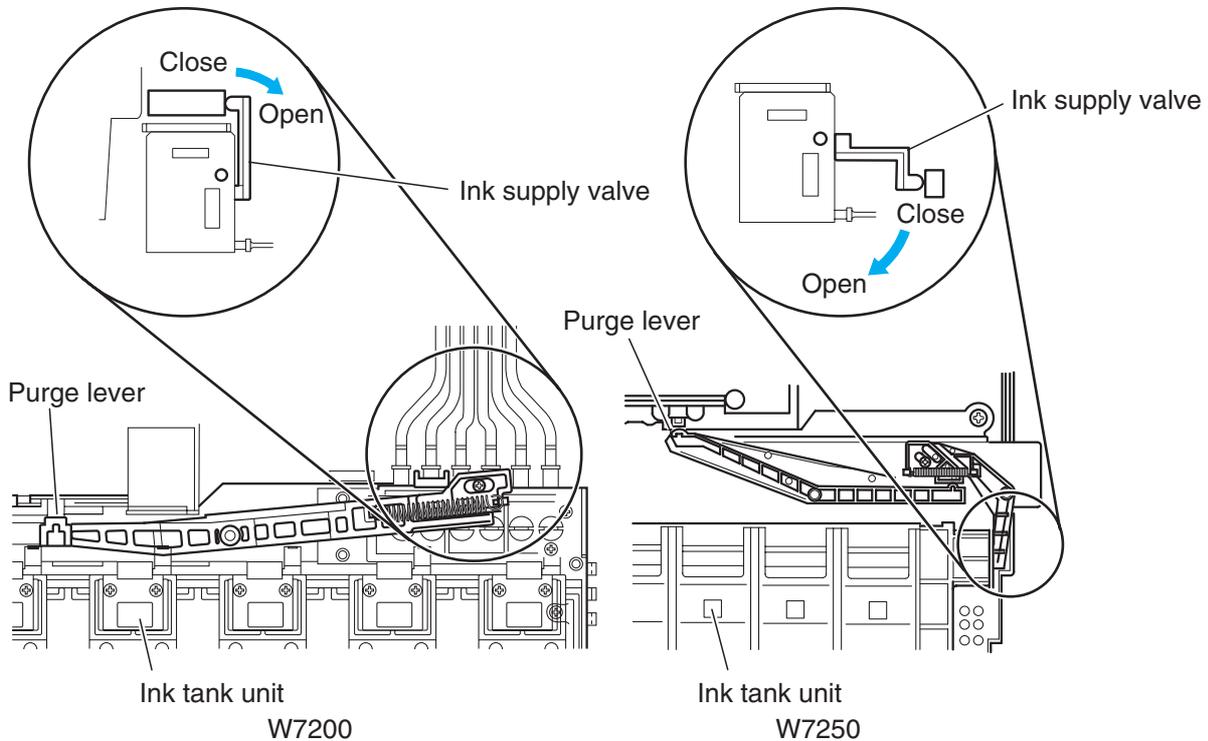


Fig. 5-40 Opening and Closing the Ink Supply Valve

5.3.3 Moving the wiper unit

- 1) Remove the rear cover, rear right cover, and upper right cover.
- 2) Insert a long Phillips-head screwdriver into the hole in the purge gear from the printer right side. (See [Figure 5-39](#))
- 3) Rotate the purge gear in the counter-clockwise direction, and then move the wiper unit.

5.4 Draining the Ink

There are two methods of removing the ink, using a manual method or automatic method.

When the ink is drained, the ink inside the ink passage totaling approximately 210 g (35 g x 6 colors) is drained as waste ink.



To prevent ink leaks, be sure to always remove the ink inside the ink passage when disassembling or transporting the parts of the ink passage section.

5.4.1 Automatic ink drainage

Automatic ink drainage is performed by selecting Main Menu --> System Setup --> Move Printer from the operation panel. It takes about 4 minutes for automatic ink drainage to be performed.



Perform automatic ink drainage again if a power outage or other cause shuts off the power during the operation for automatic ink drainage.

5.4.2 Manual ink drainage

A syringe or other implement is used to remove the ink inside the ink passages one color at a time in the event of a printer electrical failure, firmware error, or malfunction in supplying power to the printer.

a) Preparation

Prepare the following items before starting the manual ink drainage procedure.

- 1) Syringe having approx. 50-ml capacity (CK-0541-000) with connecting tube (QA2-6161-000)

If possible, try to use separate syringes for each color.

If the syringes are severely stained or if the tubes are attached to different-color needles, flush and wash the tubes (syringes) with water and allow them to fully dry to prevent mixing of ink colors.

b) Overview of manual ink drainage

Manual ink drainage is performed using the three steps below.

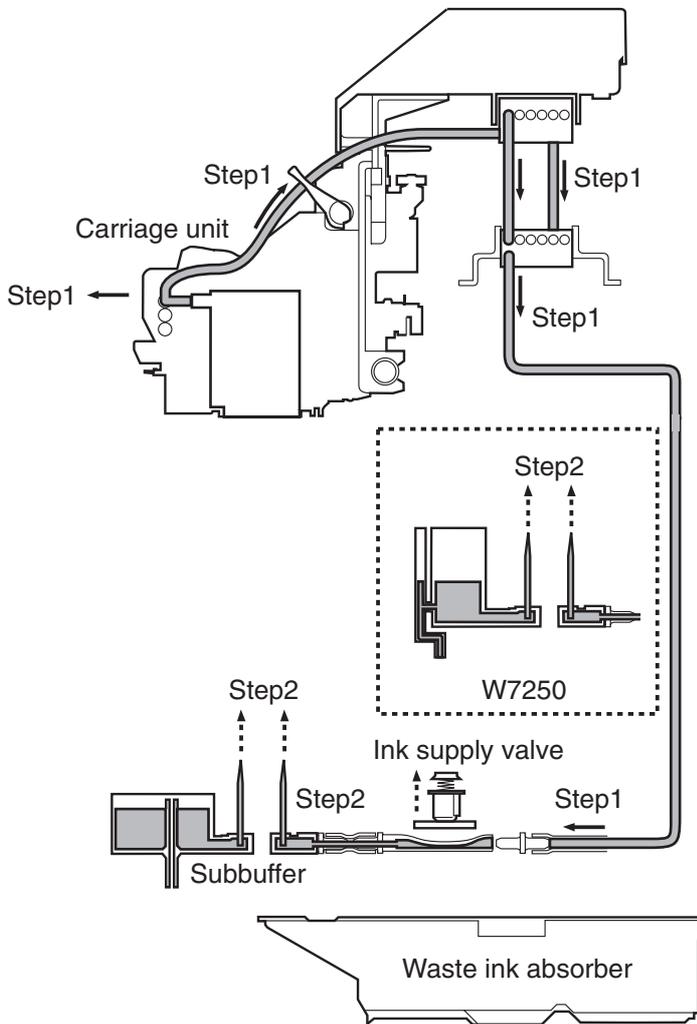
Step 1 The ink in the ink tube unit flows to the waste ink absorber for all six colors simultaneously.

Step 2 The ink in the ink tank unit is removed separately for each color.

Step 3 Step 2 is repeated for the remaining five colors.



If all of the ink passages are opened (ink tank is not installed, ink supply valve is opened, and printhead lock lever is opened) when ink fills the ink tube, the ink in the ink tube may reverse-flow due to the difference in the water head, and ink may leak from the ink supply needle. Therefore, do not open all of the ink passages at the same time when the ink tube is filled with ink.



Step3 Repeated for the remaining five colors.

Fig. 5-41 Overview of Manual Ink Drainage (single color)

c) Manual ink drainage procedure**Step 1**

- 1) Open the right cover. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.2.4 Outer covers \(page 5-13\)](#).
- 2) Remove the ink tank.
- 3) Remove all the joints for the ink tube unit and ink tank unit. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.2.10 Ink tank unit \(page 5-29\)](#).
- 4) Place the joint on the ink tube unit side on the waste ink absorber and secure in place.
- 5) Move the carriage over the platen. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3 Opening the Caps, Opening the Ink Supply Valve, and Moving the Wiper Unit \(page 5-33\)](#).
- 6) Unlock the printhead lock lever to allow all the ink in the ink tubes to flow to the waste ink absorber for all six colors simultaneously.

Step 2

- 7) Connect the syringe ink tube to the needle of the subbuffer. Pull the plunger of the syringe to remove the ink inside the subbuffer and drain the waste ink absorber. Repeat until there is no more ink left.
- 8) Open the ink supply valve. For details, refer to [Part 5: 5.3.2 Opening and closing the ink supply valve \(page 5-34\)](#).
- 9) Connect the syringe ink tube to the needle of the ink supply side. Pull the plunger of the syringe to remove the ink inside the ink port and drain the waste ink absorber. Repeat until there is no more ink remaining.

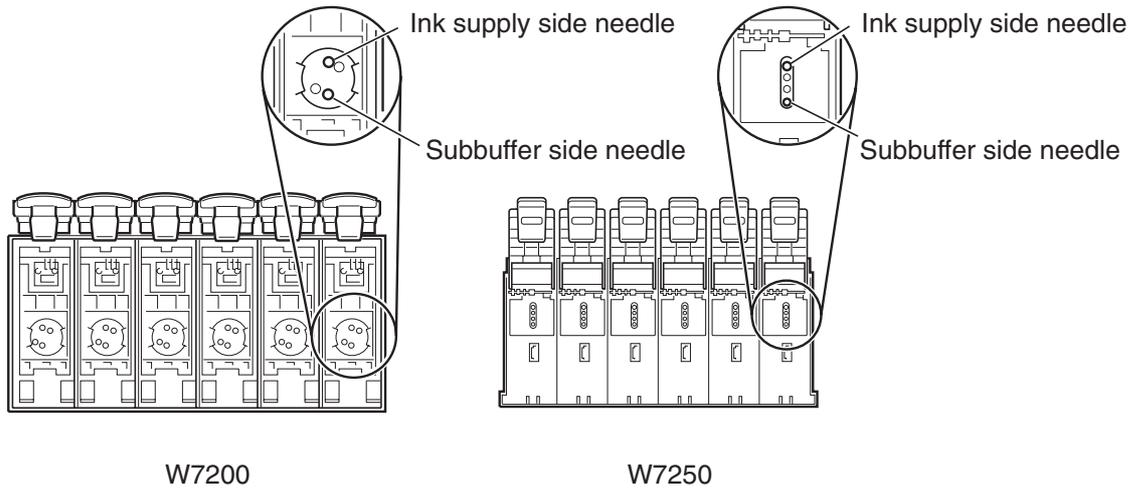


Fig. 5-42 Top View of Ink Tank Unit

Step 3

- 10) Repeat step 2 for each color until all of the ink is removed.
- * This figure shows the main access points for manual ink drainage.
The numbers in parentheses correspond to the numbers of the manual ink drainage procedure.

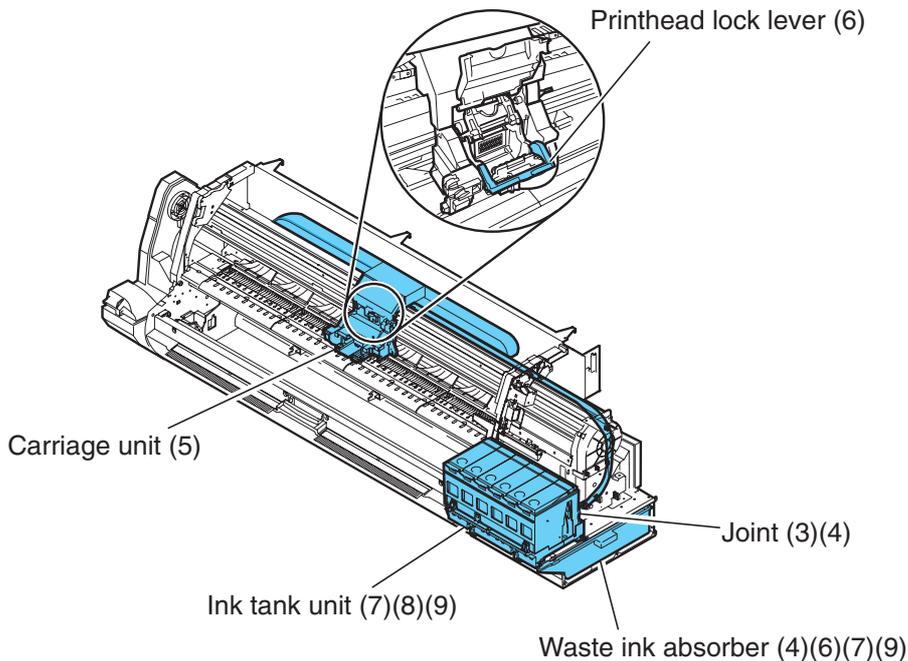


Fig. 5-43 Manual Ink Drainage

6. ADJUSTMENT AND SETUP

6.1 Adjustment and Setup Items

6.1.1 System controller DIP switch settings

These settings are made during assembly, disassembly, and replacement of the system controller.

6.1.2 Engine controller short connector settings

These settings are made during assembly, disassembly, and replacement of the engine controller.

6.1.3 Adjustment of head holder tilt lever

This procedure is performed when the edge sections of the image are not sharp when printing in Fast mode (2-pass).

6.2 Adjustment and Setup Procedures

6.2.1 System controller DIP switch settings

Be careful that you do not move the DIP switch setting positions during assembly and disassembly of the system controller.

Make the settings as shown in the figure below if the setting positions of the DIP switches are inadvertently moved or a system controller installed as a service part has different DIP switch setting positions.

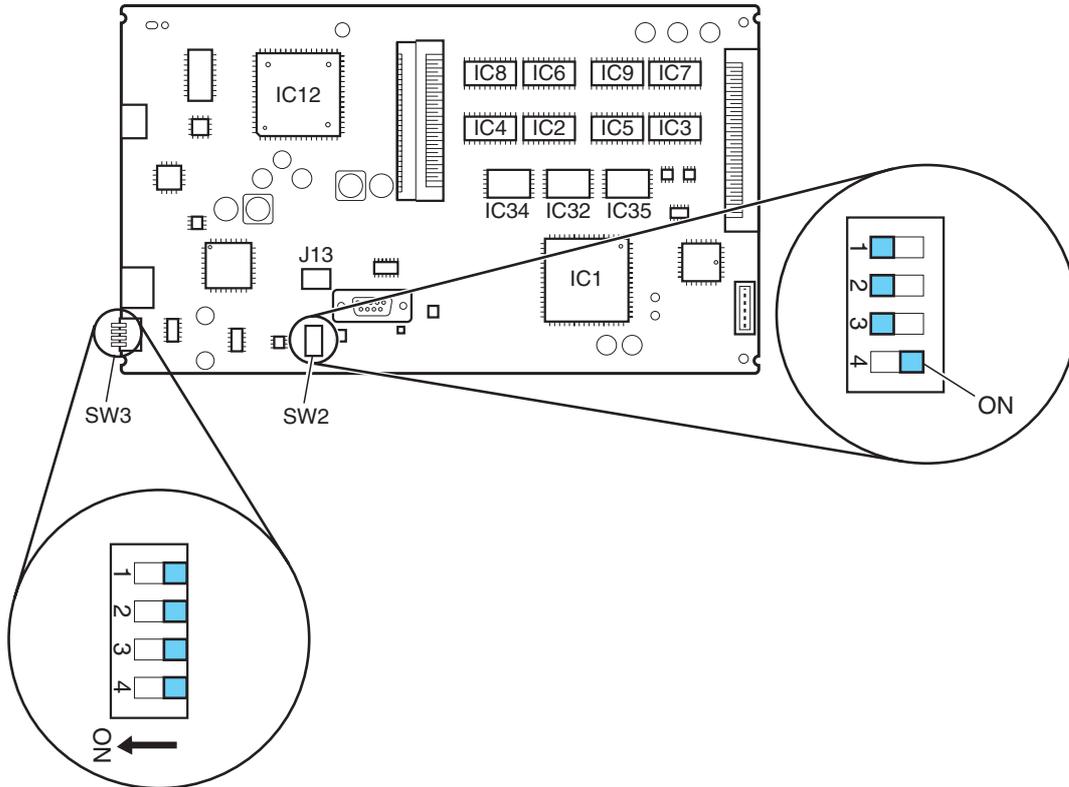


Fig. 5-44 System Controller DIP Switch Settings

6.2.2 Engine controller short connector settings

Be careful that you do not move the short connector setting positions during assembly and disassembly of the engine controller.

Make the settings as shown in the figure below if the setting positions of the short connector are inadvertently moved or a system controller installed as a service part has different short connector setting positions.

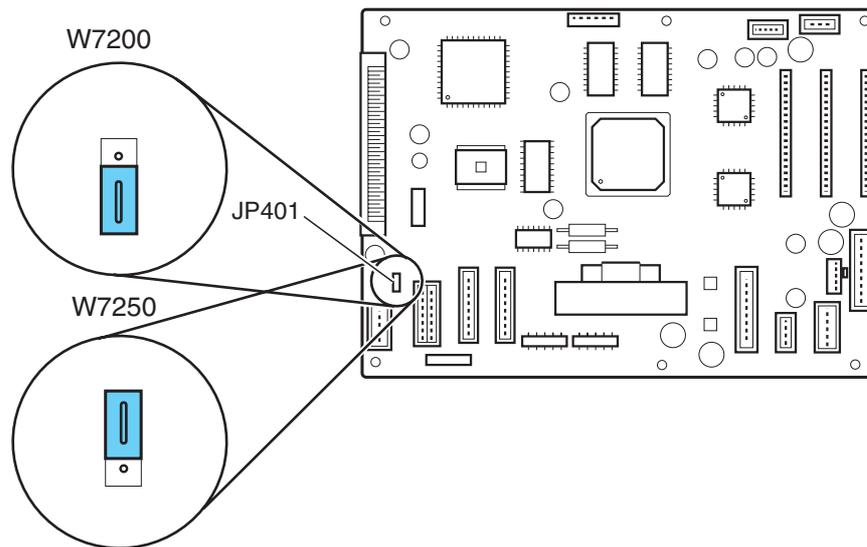


Fig. 5-45 Engine Controller Short Connector Settings

6.2.3 Adjustment of the head holder tilt lever

This adjustment is performed when the edge sections of the image are not sharp when printing in Fast mode (2-pass).

After adjusting the head holder tilt lever, mark the number visible from the window of the head holder tilt lever with the number inside the sensor cover.

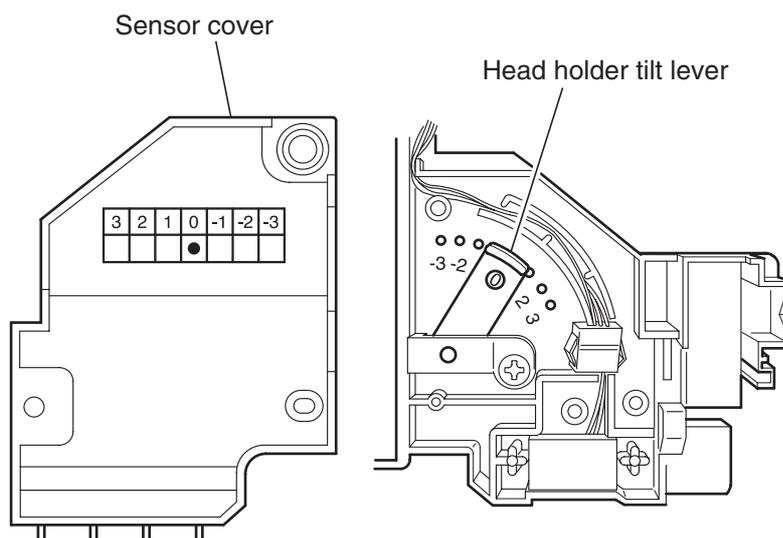


Fig. 5-46 Adjusting the Head Holder Tilt Lever

This page intentionally left blank

7. TROUBLESHOOTING

7.1 Outline of Troubleshooting

7.1.1 Outline

There are two types of trouble: trouble which is reported by the messages indicated on the display, including "operator call," "warning," "error," and "firmware error"; and trouble not indicated on the message display.

In this manual, a colon (:) is used to distinguish the first and second lines of the message.

The alphanumeric code indicating the type of error, that is the "warning", or "error," will be displayed on the printer's display. The letters at the end of the code indicates the following: W for the "warning" and E for the "error".

See [Part 3: 5.3 Error Indications \(Page 3-63\)](#) for a list of the problems which can be detailed on the message display.

7.1.2 Notice for Troubleshooting

1. Obtain information about the system environment and the type of media used for printing.
2. Before performing troubleshooting, make sure that all cables are connected properly.
3. When servicing the printer with the external cover is removed and the AC power connected, pay special attention when handling the electrical parts or the boards to avoid an electric shock or short circuit.
4. In the following sections, the troubleshooting steps (action) are described such that the component related to the most probable cause of the problem will be repaired or replaced first, following by components with less failure probability. If multiple components are the same probability of predicted failure, the steps are indicated based on how easy the servicing is.
After performing a step, check to see if the problem has been solved by executing a test print. If not resolved, proceed with the next step.
5. When the service has been completed, check to ensure that all connectors/cables are reinstalled and screws are firmly tightened.
6. After performing replacement or repair services, run test prints to check whether the problem has been solved.

7.2 Troubleshooting When Warnings Occur

Codes in parentheses are not displayed when a warning occurs. These codes can be checked in the warning history by using SERVICE MODE>DISPLAY>WARNING.

7.2.1 **x Ink Check (the ink color is indicated by x)** (W01000, W01001, W01002, W01003, W01004, W01005)

<Cause>

This is displayed when the electrodes mounted to the hollow needle in the ink tank unit detect that the ink is below the prescribed level.

<Probable problem locations>

Ink tank, ink tank unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Check the ink level.
2. Replace the ink tank.
3. Check the connectors of the ink tank unit.
4. Replace the ink tank unit.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.2.2 **W-Ink Full Soon** (W01006)

<Cause>

This is displayed when a nearly full (approx. 95% capacity of the waste ink absorber) waste ink level is detected in the waste ink absorber.

<Probable problem locations>

Waste ink absorber, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Waste ink absorber
Use SERVICE MODE>COUNTER>PRINTER>W-INK to check the waste ink absorber. Replace if the waste ink level is near the limit (W7200: 14400/W7250: 12000).
After replacing the tank, perform SERVICE MODE>INITIALIZE>W-INK.
2. Replace the engine controller.
3. Replace the system controller.

7.2.3 Memory Overflow (W0100C)

<Cause>

This is displayed when a data fault occurs due to insufficient memory.

<Probable problem locations>

Operation error, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Check the operating procedure and transmit data.
2. Replace the system controller.

7.2.4 Feed Limit (W0100F)

<Cause>

This is displayed when the engine controller has detected the feed limit of the media during manual feeding.

During back feeding, the print standby position (on feed roller) is the feed limit.

During forward feeding, the feed limits are as follows.

Roll media: 18 m

Cut sheet: Detected size when sheets are loaded

<Probable problem locations>

Engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the engine controller.
2. Replace the system controller.

7.2.5 Incorrect Media (W01021)

<Cause>

During data reception, this is displayed when the media type required by the received data is different from the media type that is currently loaded.

<Probable problem locations>

Operation error, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Check the operating procedures and reprint.
2. Replace the engine controller.
3. Replace the system controller.

**7.2.6 W01030/W01031/W01032/W01033/W01034/W01035/W01036/
W01037/W01038/W01039: GARO W0103x (number is indicated by x)****<Cause>**

During data reception, this is displayed when an error occurs in the data reception GARO command.

<Probable problem locations>

Operation error, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Check the operating procedures and reprint.
2. Replace the system controller.

7.3 Troubleshooting When Errors Occur

7.3.1 E02000 Roll media end sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when a roll media end sensor has detected the roll media trailing edge during printing or loading of the roll media.

<Probable problem locations>

Roll media, roll media end sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Roll media
Install the roll media if there is none.
2. Visual check
Replace the sensor if the sensor flag is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
3. Roll media end sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the roll media end sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.3.2 E02005/E0200D/E02016 Feed sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the feed sensor could not detect the roll media even after feeding the prescribed length during loading of the roll media.
This is displayed when the feed sensor could not detect the cut sheet trailing edge even after feeding the prescribed length during cut sheet loading.
This is displayed during printing when the feed sensor has detected the cut sheet trailing edge at a different position from the media loading position.

<Probable problem locations>

Paper path, roll drive unit, feed sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the paper path and feed sensor.
Replace the paper path if the feeding surface or sliding section of the paper path is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
Replace the roll drive unit if it is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
2. Feed sensor
Use SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY to check operation, and replace if faulty.
3. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the feed sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
4. Replace the engine controller.
5. Replace the system controller.

7.3.3 E0200A/E0200B/E0200C/E0200E/E0200F/E02010/E02015/ E02017/E02018 Media sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the light intensity of the media sensor could not be adjusted during media loading.

This is displayed when the media sensor has detected a media loading position error during detection of the media right edge.

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media leading edge during detection of the media leading edge.

This is displayed when the media sensor has detected a media smaller than the prescribed size during media loading.

Media width: Less than 200 mm

Media length: Less than 100 mm

This is displayed when the media sensor has detected a media larger than the prescribed size during media loading.

Media width: More than 927 mm (W7200)/More than 645 mm (W7250)

Media length (roll media): More than 18 m

Media length (cut sheet): More than 1.6 m (W7200) / More than 1.4 m (W7250)

This is displayed when the media sensor detects slanting that exceeds the prescribed amount during media loading.

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media leading edge during detection after cutting of the roll media.

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media right edge during media loading.

This is displayed when the media sensor could not detect the media left edge during media loading.

<Probable problem locations>

Media, media loading procedure, media sensor, carriage relay PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Media check

Replace any media that have printing or soiling at the detection position or that are outside the prescribed size.

2. Media loading check

Reload the media if there is anything abnormal about the media loading status.

3. Visual check

Remove any foreign objects adhering to the media sensor.

4. Media sensor

Use SERVICE MODE>DISPLAY>SYSTEM>SIZE CR to check the reading of the media sensor. Replace if it is not functioning normally.

5. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the media sensor and carriage relay PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.

6. Replace the carriage relay PCB.

7. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the carriage relay PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

8. Replace the engine controller.

9. Replace the system controller.

7.3.4 E02011 Roll media tray set sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when a roll media tray set sensor has detected that the roll media tray unit has been pulled out during printing or loading of the roll media.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, roll media tray set sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Reload the roll media tray unit.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the roll media tray set sensor.
Replace the sensor if the sensor flag is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
3. Roll media tray set sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the roll media tray set sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.3.5 E02400/E02401/E02402/E02403 Path mismatch error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the loaded media is a cut sheet when the received data is designated for roll media.

This is displayed when the roll media is not loaded when the received data is designated for roll media.

This is displayed when the cut sheet is not loaded when the received data is designated for cut sheet.

This is displayed when printing the adjustment pattern if the loaded media is smaller than the prescribed size of the adjustment pattern.

<Probable problem locations>

Media, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Media check
Check the media loading status, and reload the media if the media are different from the transmit data, the media are not loaded, or the loaded media are outside of the prescribed size.
2. Replace the engine controller.
3. Replace the system controller.

7.3.6 E02500/E02501/E02502/E02503/E02504/E02505 Ink empty error

<Cause>

This is displayed when no ink is detected in the ink tank.

<Probable problem locations>

Ink tank, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the ink tank.
2. Replace the engine controller.
3. Replace the system controller.

7.3.7 E02506/E02507/E02508/E02509/E0250A/E0250B Ink tank uninstalled error (during ink tank replacement)

<Cause>

This is displayed when the sensor detects that the right cover is closed with an ink tank removed during ink tank replacement.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, ink tank, right cover sensor, ink tank unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Install the ink tank.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the ink tank contacts and right cover sensor.
3. Replace the ink tank.
4. Right cover sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
5. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the right cover sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
6. Replace the ink tank unit.
7. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the ink tank unit and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
8. Replace the engine controller.
9. Replace the system controller.

7.3.8 E02800/E02801/E02802/E02803/E02811 Printhead error

<Cause>

This is displayed when no printhead is detected.

This is displayed when unusually high temperatures are detected in the printhead.

This is displayed when installation of an incorrect printhead is detected.

This is displayed when a checksum error occurs in the printhead EEPROM.

This is displayed when a DI correction failure is detected in the printhead.

<Probable problem locations>

Printhead, head relay PCB, carriage relay PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the printhead.

2. Replace the head relay PCB.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the head relay PCB and carriage relay PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Replace the carriage relay PCB.

5. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the carriage relay PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

6. Replace the engine controller.

7. Replace the system controller.

7.3.9 E02804/E02805/E02806/E02807/E02808/E02809/E0280A/ E0280B/E0280C/E0280D/E0280E/E0280F Ink tank error

<Cause>

This is displayed when installation of an incorrect ink tank is detected.

This is displayed when a checksum error occurs in the ink tank EEPROM.

<Probable problem locations>

Ink tank, ink tank unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the ink tank.

2. Replace the ink tank unit.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the ink tank unit and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Replace the engine controller.

5. Replace the system controller.

7.3.10 E02812/E02A00/E02A01/E02A02/E02A03 Engine controller internal error

<Cause>

This is displayed when an error occurs in the engine controller EEPROM.

This is displayed when an error occurs in the firmware of the engine controller.

This is displayed when an error occurs in the FLASH ROM of the engine controller.

<Probable problem locations>

Engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Turn the power off and then on again.
2. Replace the engine controller.
3. Replace the system controller.

7.3.11 E02B01 Tray sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the tray sensor has detected that the tray is open during media loading or printing.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, tray sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Open / close the tray.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the tray sensor.
3. Tray sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the tray sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.3.12 E02B04 Upper cover sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the upper cover sensor has detected that the upper cover is open while the upper cover is locked.

<Probable problem locations>

Upper cover, upper cover sensor, upper cover lock unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check

Replace the sensor if the upper cover sensor flag or upper cover sensor is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.

Remove any foreign objects adhering to the upper cover lock unit.

2. Upper cover sensor

Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the upper cover sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Upper cover lock unit

Check operation, and replace if it is not functioning normally.

5. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the upper cover lock unit and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

6. Replace the engine controller.

7. Replace the system controller.

7.3.13 E02B05 Right cover sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the right cover sensor has detected that the right cover has been opened not using operations from the main menu.

<Probable problem locations>

Right cover, right cover lock unit, right cover sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check

Replace the right cover or right cover lock unit if any of them are damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.

2. Right cover sensor

Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the right cover sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Replace the engine controller.

5. Replace the system controller.

7.3.14 E02B06 Carriage cover sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the carriage cover sensor has detected that the carriage cover is open while the upper cover is locked.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, carriage cover sensor, carriage relay PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Close the carriage cover firmly.
2. Visual check
Replace the carriage cover if it is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
3. Carriage cover sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the carriage cover sensor and carriage relay PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the carriage relay PCB.
6. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the carriage relay PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
7. Replace the engine controller.
8. Replace the system controller.

7.3.15 E02D00/E02D01 Sensor error in purge unit

<Cause>

This is displayed when sensors in the purge unit could not detect the positions of the motors within the prescribed time.

<Probable problem locations>

Purge unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Homeposition sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace the purge unit if anything does not function normally.
2. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the sensors and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
3. Replace the engine controller.
4. Replace the system controller.

7.3.16 E02D02 Carriage homeposition error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the carriage homeposition sensor could not detect the carriage within the prescribed time.

<Probable problem locations>

Foreign object in carriage contact section, carriage homeposition sensor, linear scale, linear encoder, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check

Remove any foreign objects adhering to the carriage contact section, carriage homeposition sensor, linear scale, and linear sensor.

2. Carriage homeposition sensor

Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the carriage homeposition sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Replace the linear scale.

5. Replace the linear encoder.

6. Replace the engine controller.

7. Replace the system controller.

7.3.17 E02D03 Feed motor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the feed motor could not reach the prescribed speed within the prescribed time or the feed roller sensor could not detect the prescribed number of steps from the encoder slit.

<Probable problem locations>

Feed roller sensor, encoder slit, feed motor, motor driver PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check

Remove any foreign objects adhering to the feed roller sensor and encoder slit.

2. Replace the feed roller sensor.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the feed roller sensor and motor driver PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Replace the feed motor.

5. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the feed motor and motor driver PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.

6. Replace the motor driver PCB.

7. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the motor driver PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

8. Replace the engine controller.

9. Replace the system controller.

7.3.18 E02D04 Roll media feed motor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the roll media feed motor could not reach the prescribed speed within the prescribed time.

<Probable problem locations>

Roll media feed motor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the roll media feed motor

2. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the roll media feed motor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

3. Replace the engine controller.

4. Replace the system controller.

7.3.19 E02D05 Air flow fan error

<Cause>

Fan rotation could not be detected while the air flow fan was running.

<Probable problem locations>

Air flow fan, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the air flow fan and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
2. Replace the air flow fan.
3. Replace the engine controller.
4. Replace the system controller.

7.3.20 E02E01/E02E05 Carriage motor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when a jam or other physical problem puts an excessive load on the carriage motor so that the carriage could not operate.

This is displayed when the carriage motor could not reach the prescribed speed within the prescribed time.

<Probable problem locations>

Foreign object in carriage movement path, carriage rail, carriage belt, linear scale, linear encoder, carriage motor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Carriage movement path check
Remove any foreign objects (jammed sheet) in the carriage movement path.
2. Carriage rail
Use rail cleaner to clean the carriage rails if a visual check reveals that they are dirty.
3. Carriage belt
If a visual check reveals slack in the carriage belt, remount the belt.
4. Replace the linear scale.
5. Replace the linear encoder.
6. Replace the carriage motor.
7. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the carriage motor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
8. Replace the engine controller.
9. Replace the system controller.

7.3.21 E02E02 Roll media set sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the roll media set sensor could not detect positional changes by the paper guide during the paper guide opening and closing operations.

<Probable problem locations>

Roll media set sensor, roll media tray unit, roll drive unit, motor driver PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the roll media set sensor.
2. Roll media set sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
3. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the roll media set sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
4. Roll media tray unit
Replace the unit if a visual check reveals that the gears are damaged, deformed, or otherwise do not function normally.
Replace the unit if an operation check reveals that the roll release lever does not function normally.
5. Roll drive unit
Replace the unit if a visual check reveals that the gears are damaged, deformed, or otherwise do not function normally.
6. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the roll drive unit and motor driver PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.
7. Replace the motor driver PCB.
8. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the motor driver PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
9. Replace the engine controller.
10. Replace the system controller.

7.3.22 E02E03 Pinch roller up/down sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the pinch roller up/down sensor could not detect positional changes by the pinch roller during the pinch roller up/down operations.

<Probable problem locations>

Pinch roller up/down sensor, pinch roller drive unit, motor driver PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the pinch roller up/down sensor.
2. Pinch roller up/down sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
3. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the pinch roller up/down sensor and motor driver PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.
4. Pinch roller drive unit
Replace the unit if a visual check reveals that the gears are damaged, deformed, or otherwise do not function normally.
5. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the pinch roller drive unit and motor driver PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.
6. Replace the motor driver PCB.
7. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the motor driver PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
8. Replace the engine controller.
9. Replace the system controller.

7.3.23 E02E04 Roll feed sensor error

<Cause>

This is displayed when the roll feed sensor has detected stoppage of the rotary flag during supplying or feeding of the roll media.

<Probable problem locations>

Media, roll feed sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Paper path check
Perform a visual check, and remove any foreign objects (jammed sheet) in the paper path.
2. Media
Replace the media if media feeding cannot be performed normally, such as when the media trailing edge is stuck to the paper tube.
3. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the roll feed sensor.
4. Roll feed sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
5. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the roll feed sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
6. Replace the engine controller.
7. Replace the system controller.

7.3.24 E02E10 IEEE1394 error

<Cause>

This is displayed when an error has occurred in the IEEE1394 interface.

<Probable problem locations>

IEEE1394 interface board, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Turn the power off and then on again.
2. IEEE1394 interface board
Remount the IEEE1394 interface board, and then turn on the power again.
Replace the IEEE1394 interface board if it still is not functioning normally.
3. Replace the system controller.

7.3.25 E02F00
System controller internal error

<Cause>

This is displayed when an error has occurred in the firmware of the system controller.

<Probable problem locations>

System controller

<Remedy>

1. Turn the power off and then on again.
2. Replace the system controller.

7.4 Troubleshooting When Service Call Errors Occur

Codes in parentheses are not displayed when a service call error occurs. These codes can be checked in the error history by using SERVICE MODE>DISPLAY>ERROR.

7.4.1 Printhead error! (E04000)

<Cause>

This is displayed when a drive voltage error occurs in the printhead.

<Probable problem locations>

Printhead, head relay PCB, carriage relay PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the printhead.
2. Replace the head relay PCB.
3. Replace the carriage relay PCB.
4. Replace the engine controller.
5. Replace the system controller.

7.4.2 Waste ink full! (E04001)

<Cause>

This is displayed when a full waste ink absorber is detected.

<Probable problem locations>

Waste ink absorber, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Replace the waste ink absorber.
Use SERVICE MODE>COUNTER>PRINTER>W-INK to check the waste ink absorber. Replace if the waste ink level is near the limit (W7200: 14400/W7250: 12000).
After replacing the tank, perform SERVICE MODE>INITIALIZE>W-INK.
2. Replace the engine controller.
3. Replace the system controller.

7.4.3 Scale read error! (E04002)

<Cause>

This is displayed when the carriage sensor could not read the linear scale.

<Probable problem locations>

Linear scale, carriage sensor, carriage unit, carriage relay PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check

Replace the linear scale if it is dirty, damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.

Remove any foreign objects adhering to the carriage sensor.

2. Replace the carriage unit.

3. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the carriage sensor and carriage relay PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.

4. Replace the carriage relay PCB.

5. Cable connection check

Replace the cable between the carriage relay PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.

6. Replace the engine controller.

7. Replace the system controller

7.5 Troubleshooting for Other Problems Indicated on the Display

7.5.1 Incorrect Value: Check Value

<Cause>

This is displayed when it is detected that the default G/W input value does not match the IP address.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message turns off when the proper value is entered for "System Setup" > "IP Setting" > "Default G/W" of the main menu.
2. Replace the system controller.

7.5.2 Offline: Load Roll Media

<Cause>

This is displayed when the roll media end sensor does not detect any roll media in roll media mode.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, roll media end sensor, roll media set sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the roll media is loaded and the roll media tray is closed.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the sensors.
Replace the sensor if the sensor flag is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
3. Roll media end sensor/roll media set sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the sensors and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.5.3 Offline: Load Cut Sheet Offline: Remove Cut Sheet

<Cause>

This is displayed when the feed sensor does not detect any sheets in cut sheet mode. This is displayed when the feed sensor detects sheets when switching from cut sheet mode to roll media mode.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, feed sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the cut sheets are loaded or when the cut sheets are removed.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the feed sensor.
3. Feed sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the feed sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.5.4 Offline: Open Upper Cover

<Cause>

This is displayed when the upper cover sensor detects that the upper cover is closed when switching from roll media mode to cut sheet mode.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, upper cover, upper cover sensor, upper cover lock unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the upper cover is opened.
2. Visual check
Replace the sensor if the upper cover sensor flag or upper cover sensor is damaged, deformed, or otherwise does not function normally.
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the upper cover lock unit.
3. Upper cover sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the upper cover sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.5.5 Offline: Open Tray

<Cause>

This is displayed when the roll media end sensor detects that there is no roll media in roll media mode, and the tray sensor detects that the tray is closed.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, tray sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the tray is opened.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the tray sensor.
3. Tray sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the tray sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.5.6 Off line: Open Roll Tray

<Cause>

This is displayed when the roll media end sensor detects that there is no roll media in roll media mode, and the roll media tray set sensor detects that the roll media tray is closed.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, roll media tray set sensor, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the roll media tray is opened.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the roll media tray set sensor.
3. Roll media tray set sensor
Check operation using SERVICE MODE>I/O DISPLAY, and replace if anything does not function normally.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the roll media tray set sensor and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the engine controller.
6. Replace the system controller.

7.5.7 Printer Setup: Install Phead

<Cause>

This is displayed when no printhead is detected when the power is turned on.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, printhead, head relay PCB, carriage relay PCB, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the printhead is installed.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the printhead contact face.
3. Replace the printhead.
4. Replace the head relay PCB.
5. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the head relay PCB and carriage relay PCB if the connection is not functioning normally.
6. Replace the carriage relay PCB.
7. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the carriage relay PCB and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
8. Replace the engine controller.
9. Replace the system controller.

7.5.8 Printer Setup: Ins. Ink Tank OK

<Cause>

This is displayed when no ink tank is detected when the power is turned on.

<Probable problem locations>

Operating procedure, ink tank, ink tank unit, engine controller, system controller

<Remedy>

1. Operation check
Check that the message changes when the ink tanks for all colors are installed.
2. Visual check
Remove any foreign objects adhering to the contact face.
3. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the ink tank unit and engine controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
4. Replace the ink tank.
5. Replace the ink tank unit.
6. Replace the engine controller.
7. Replace the system controller.

7.6 Troubleshooting for Problems Not Indicated on the Display

7.6.1 Printer does not turn on

<Condition example>

Nothing is shown on the display when the Power button is pressed.

<Cause>

Broken connection in connector, faulty inlet unit, faulty power supply, faulty operation panel, faulty engine controller, faulty system controller

<Remedy>

1. Power cord
Reconnect the power cord.
2. Connector check
Reconnect the connectors for the operation panel (CN1), relay connector (J86), system controller (J6, J2), engine controller (J408, J417, J418, J419), and power supply (J1, J102, J103, J105).
3. Fuse check
Replace if the fuse for the power supply is blown.
4. Cable connection check
Replace the cable between the operation panel and system controller if the connection is not functioning normally.
Replace the cable between the engine controller and power supply if the connection is not functioning normally.
Replace the cable between the power supply and inlet unit if the connection is not functioning normally.
5. Replace the power supply.
6. Replace the operation panel.
7. Replace the engine controller.
8. Replace the system controller.

7.6.2 Network is not connected

<Condition example>

Printing cannot be performed from the network.

<Cause>

Cable is not connected properly, incompatibility with hub, system controller fault

<Remedy>

1. Check the cable.
Reconnect the LAN cable.
2. Check the communication settings.
Auto-negotiation cannot be performed for some configurations of the connected hub. Use the DIP switches (SW3) on the system controller to reset the network transmission speed and transfer mode according to the specifications of the hub that is used.
3. Replace the hub.
Explain to the customer that there is no problem with the printer unit.
4. Replace the system controller.

7.6.3 Right cover does not open

<Condition example>

The right cover does not open. (No error message is shown on the display.)

<Cause>

Connector is not connected properly, engine controller fault

<Remedy>

1. Check the connector

Connect the connector (J42) for the right cover lock solenoid and the relay connector (J24) for the right cover sensor to the connectors having the same color.

White: Connector for right cover lock solenoid (J42)

Blue: Relay connector for right cover sensor (J24)

2. Replace the engine controller.

7.6.4 Printing problems (ink is full)

<Condition example>

Step 1

- * Interface is not recognized.
- * A test print can be printed, but printing from the host computer is not functioning normally.

Step 2

- * No printing can be performed.
- * Printing of the test print and printing from the host computer are not functioning normally.
- * Textures appear in the image.

<Cause>

Faulty host computer, faulty interface cable, dirty carriage rail, improper position for head tilt lever, faulty printhead, faulty purge unit, faulty linear scale, faulty carriage unit, faulty carriage relay PCB, faulty engine controller, faulty system controller

Step 1 remedy

1. Interface cable
Replace the interface cable if a visual check reveals that the connectors are damaged, deformed, or otherwise do not function normally.
2. Computer
Install the printer drivers to a computer, and connect to the printer. If the print data can be sent normally, instruct the customer to replace his computer.
3. Replace the system controller.

Step 2 remedy

1. Dirty carriage rail
Use rail cleaner to clean the carriage rails if a visual check reveals that they are dirty or other abnormalities.
2. Head tilt lever
Check if changing the position of the head tilt lever fixes the problem.
3. Purge unit
Perform a visual check, and remove any foreign objects adhering to the caps and wipers.
4. Print adjustment check
Execute print adjustment, and adjust the shift between nozzle arrays.
5. Printhead
Execute head cleaning, and replace the printhead if the result is not improved.
6. Linear scale
Replace the linear scale if it is dirty or otherwise does not function normally.
7. Replace the carriage unit.
8. Replace the carriage relay PCB.
9. Replace the engine controller.
10. Replace the system controller.

7.6.5 Printing problems (ink is not full)

<Condition example>

- * No printing can be performed.
- * A specific ink is not printed.
- * Ink is not filled to the ink tube for the printhead lock lever.
- * Ink is not filled to the ink tube before the ink tank unit.

<Cause>

Faulty ink tank, faulty printhead, faulty purge unit, faulty ink tank unit, faulty ink tube unit, faulty engine controller, faulty system controller

<Remedy>

1. Visual check
Remove the ink tube if it is bent or otherwise not functioning normally.
2. Ink tank
Remount the ink tank.
3. Ink supply valve
Refer to [Part 5: 5.2.10 Ink tank unit \(p.5-29\)](#), and check the ink supply valve.
4. Ink filling
Check if there is any ink inside the ink tube, and then remove the printheads and ink tanks, and turn on the power. Then, follow the messages to install the printheads and ink tanks and fill the ink.
5. Replace the printhead.
6. Replace the purge unit.
7. Replace the ink tank unit.
8. Replace the ink tube unit.
9. Replace the engine controller.
10. Replace the system controller.

7.6.6 Other printing problems

<Condition example>

Soiled media

<Cause>

Soiling due to ink mist or other substances.

<Remedy>

1. Moisten the upper cover interior or feed unit, and then clean using a soft, full-wrung cloth.

This page intentionally left blank

8. CONNECTOR POSITIONS AND PIN ARRANGEMENT

8.1 System Controller

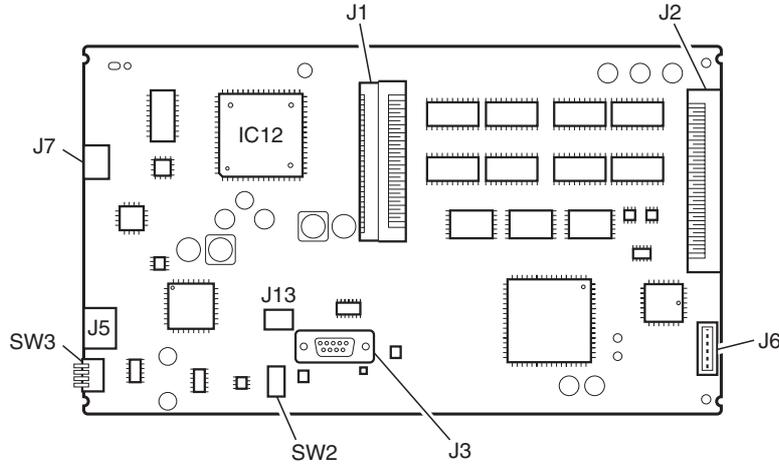


Figure 5-47 System Controller

J1

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.0V)
2	TRST	IN	JTAG test reset signal
3	TMS	IN	JTAG test mode select signal
4	TDI	IN	JTAG test data input signal
5	GND	—	GND
6	RST	IN	Reset signal
7	GND	—	GND
8	GNT	IN	Grant signal
9	AD31	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
10	AD29	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
11	AD27	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
12	GND	—	GND
13	AD25	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
14	CBE3	OUT	Bus command and byte enable signal
15	AD23	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
16	AD21	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
17	GND	—	GND
18	AD19	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
19	AD17	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
20	CBE2	OUT	Bus command and byte enable signal
21	GND	—	GND
22	IRDY	OUT	Initiator ready signal
23	DEVSEL	IN	Device select signal
24	LOCK	OUT	Lock signal
25	GND	—	GND
26	SERR	OUT	System error signal
27	CBE1	OUT	Bus command and byte enable signal
28	AD14	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
29	GND	—	GND

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
30	AD12	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
31	AD10	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
32	AD8	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
33	GND	—	GND
34	AD7	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
35	AD5	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
36	AD3	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
37	AD1	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
38	GND	—	GND
39	3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
40	3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
41	GND	—	GND
42	TCK	IN	JTAG test clock signal
43	TDO	OUT	JTAG test data output signal
44	INTA	OUT	Interrupt signal
45	GND	—	GND
46	CLK	IN	Clock signal
47	GND	—	GND
48	REQ	OUT	Request signal
49	AD30	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
50	AD28	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
51	AD26	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
52	GND	—	GND
53	AD24	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
54	IDSEL	IN	Initialization device select signal
55	AD22	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
56	AD20	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
57	GND	—	GND
58	AD18	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
59	AD16	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
60	FRANE	OUT	Cycle frame signal
61	GND	—	GND
62	TRDY	IN	Target ready signal
63	STOP	IN	Stop signal
64	PERR	IN/OUT	Parity error signal
65	GND	—	GND
66	PAR	IN/OUT	Parity signal
67	AD15	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
68	AD13	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
69	GND	—	GND
70	AD11	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
71	AD9	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
72	CBE0	OUT	Bus command and byte enable signal
73	GND	—	GND
74	AD6	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
75	AD4	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
76	AD2	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
77	AD0	IN/OUT	Address and data signal
78	GND	—	GND
79	3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
80	3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)

J2

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	NC	—	NC
3	NC	—	NC
4	NC	—	NC
5	GND	—	GND
6	NC	—	NC
7	NC	—	NC
8	GND	—	GND
9	NC	—	NC
10	NC	—	NC
11	GND	—	GND
12	SREQ	IN	Status request signal
13	GND	—	GND
14	SACK	OUT	Status acknowledge signal
15	NC	—	NC
16	GND	—	GND
17	GND	—	GND
18	GND	—	GND
19	CEDATA1	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit1)
20	GND	—	GND
21	CEDATA4	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit4)
22	CEDATA5	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit5)
23	CEDATA7	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit7)
24	GND	—	GND
25	CEDATA10	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit10)
26	CEDATA11	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit11)
27	CEDATA13	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit13)
28	GND	—	GND
29	CEDATA16	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit16)
30	CEDATA17	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit17)
31	CEDATA19	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit19)
32	GND	—	GND
33	CEDATA22	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit22)
34	CEDATA23	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit23)
35	CEDATA25	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit25)
36	GND	—	GND
37	CEDATA28	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit28)
38	CEDATA29	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit29)
39	CEDATA31	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit31)
40	STANDBY	OUT	Power supply ON/OFF signal
41	NC	—	NC
42	NC	—	NC
43	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
44	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
45	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
46	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
47	RESETC	OUT	Controller reset signal
48	NC	—	NC
49	NC	—	NC

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
50	GND	—	GND
51	GND	—	GND
52	NC	—	NC
53	GND	—	GND
54	NC	—	NC
55	GND	—	GND
56	GND	—	GND
57	NC	—	NC
58	GND	—	GND
59	NC	—	NC
60	GND	—	GND
61	GND	—	GND
62	CREQ	OUT	Command request signal
63	CACK	IN	Command acknowledge signal
64	GND	—	GND
65	READY	IN	Image data request signal
66	GND	—	GND
67	DCLK	OUT	Image data transfer synchronous signal
68	GND	—	GND
69	CEDATA0	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit0)
70	CEDATA2	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit2)
71	CEDATA3	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit3)
72	GND	—	GND
73	CEDATA6	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit6)
74	CEDATA8	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit8)
75	CEDATA9	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit9)
76	GND	—	GND
77	CEDATA12	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit12)
78	CEDATA14	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit14)
79	CEDATA15	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit15)
80	GND	—	GND
81	CEDATA18	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit18)
82	CEDATA20	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit20)
83	CEDATA21	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit21)
84	GND	—	GND
85	CEDATA24	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit24)
86	CEDATA26	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit26)
87	CEDATA27	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit27)
88	GND	—	GND
89	CEDATA30	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus(bit30)
90	START	IN	Steady-state input power supply (+3.3V)
91	+5V	IN	Power supply (+5.0V)
92	NC	—	NC
93	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
94	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
95	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
96	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
97	WAKE	OUT	Wake signal from sleep mode
98	NC	—	NC
99	NC	—	NC
100	GND	—	GND

J3 (RS-232C)

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	CD	IN	Data Carrier Detect
2	RXD	IN	Receive data by serial communication
3	TXD	OUT	Transmit data by serial communication
4	DTR	OUT	Data Terminal ready
5	GND	—	GND
6	DSR	IN	Data set ready
7	RTS	OUT	Request to send
8	CTS	IN	Clear to send
9	RI	IN	Ring Indicate

J5 (LAN)

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	TD+	OUT	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX differential output signal
2	TD-	OUT	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX differential output signal
3	TDCT	—	Pulse transfer center tap GND
4	GND	—	GND
5	GND	—	GND
6	RDCT	—	Pulse transfer center tap GND
7	RD+	IN	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX differential input signal
8	RD-	IN	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX differential input signal
9	G_LED+	—	Green LED anode
10	G_LED-	—	Green LED cathode
11	Y_LED+	—	Yellow LED anode
12	Y_LED-	—	Yellow LED cathode

J6

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
2	PCS	OUT	Select signal to operation panel
3	PDO	OUT	Transmit data to operation panel
4	PCLK	OUT	Clock signal to operation panel
5	PDI	IN	Receive data from operation panel
6	GND	—	GND
7	SOFT_SW1	IN	Power supply ON/OFF signal
8	SOFT_SW2	OUT	Steady-state input power supply (+3.3V)

J7 (USB)

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VBUS	IN	Power supply (+5.0V)
2	D-	IN/OUT	USB data signal
3	D+	IN/OUT	USB data signal
4	GND	—	GND

8.2 Engine Controller

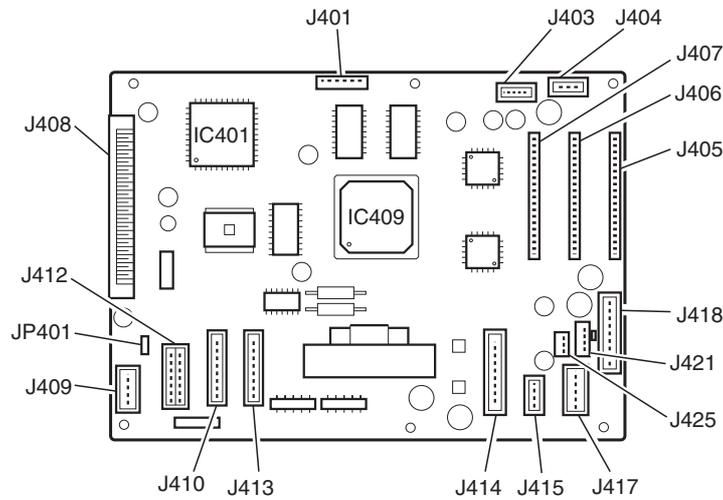


Figure 5-48 Engine Controller

J401

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
3	DIPSW5	—	For factory
4	DIPSW4	—	For factory
5	DIPSW3	—	For factory
6	DIPSW2	—	For factory
7	DIPSW1	—	For factory
8	DIPSW0	—	For factory

J403

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	TANKCVR	IN	Right cover opening and closing detection signal
3	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
4	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
5	COVERSOL_R	OUT	Upper cover lock solenoid right drive signal
6	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
7	TANKSOL	OUT	Right cover lock solenoid drive signal

J404

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM_CRM	OUT	Carriage motor drive power supply (+26.5V)
2	VM_CRM	IN	Carriage motor drive power supply (+26.5V)

J405

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	C2_SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (PM)
3	C1_SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (M)
4	C0_SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (Y)
5	C2_HENB	OUT	Heat pulse output (PM)
6	C1_HENB	OUT	Heat pulse output (M)
7	C0_HENB	OUT	Heat pulse output (Y)
8	GND	—	GND
9	HDLTP	OUT	Head data latch signal + output
10	HDLTN	OUT	Head data latch signal - output
11	HDCLKP	OUT	Head data transfer clock + output
12	HDCLKN	OUT	Head data transfer clock - output
13	GND	—	GND
14	C2_EDATA1P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 + output (PM)
15	C2_EDATA1N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 - output (PM)
16	C2_EDATA0P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 + output (PM)
17	C2_EDATA0N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 - output (PM)
18	C2_ODATA1P	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 + output (PM)
19	C2_ODATA1N	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 - output (PM)
20	C2_ODATA0P	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 + output (PM)
21	C2_ODATA0N	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 - output (PM)
22	GND	—	GND
23	C1_EDATA1P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 + output (M)
24	C1_EDATA1N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 - output (M)
25	C1_EDATA0P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 + output (M)
26	C1_EDATA0N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 - output (M)
27	C1_ODATA1P	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 + output (M)
28	C1_ODATA1N	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 - output (M)
29	C1_ODATA0P	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 + output (M)
30	C1_ODATA0N	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 - output (M)
31	GND	—	GND
32	C0_EDATA1P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 + output (Y)
33	C0_EDATA1N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 - output (Y)
34	C0_EDATA0P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 + output (Y)
35	C0_EDATA0N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 - output (Y)
36	C0_ODATA1P	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 + output (Y)
37	C0_ODATA1N	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 - output (Y)
38	C0_ODATA0P	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 + output (Y)
39	C0_ODATA0N	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 - output (Y)
40	GND	—	GND

J406

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	C3_SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (C)
3	C4_SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (PC)
4	C5_SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (BK)
5	C3_HENB	OUT	Heat pulse output (C)
6	C4_HENB	OUT	Heat pulse output (PC)
7	C5_HENB	OUT	Heat pulse output (BK)
8	GND	—	GND
9	C3_EDATA1P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 + output (C)
10	C3_EDATA1N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 - output (C)
11	C3_EDATA0P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 + output (C)
12	C3_EDATA0N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 - output (C)
13	C3_ODATA1P	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 + output (C)
14	C3_ODATA1N	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 - output (C)
15	C3_ODATA0P	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 + output (C)
16	C3_ODATA0N	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 - output (C)
17	GND	—	GND
18	C4_EDATA1P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 + output (PC)
19	C4_EDATA1N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 - output (PC)
20	C4_EDATA0P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 + output (PC)
21	C4_EDATA0N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 - output (PC)
22	C4_ODATA1P	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 + output (PC)
23	C4_ODATA1N	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 - output (PC)
24	C4_ODATA0P	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 + output (PC)
25	C4_ODATA0N	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 - output (PC)
26	GND	—	GND
27	C5_EDATA1P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 + output (BK)
28	C5_EDATA1N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 - output (BK)
29	C5_EDATA0P	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 + output (BK)
30	C5_EDATA0N	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 - output (BK)
31	C5_ODATA1P	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 + output (BK)
32	C5_ODATA1N	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 - output (BK)
33	C5_ODATA0P	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 + output (BK)
34	C5_ODATA0N	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 - output (BK)
35	GND	—	GND
36	ADC_DRET	IN	AD converter receive data
37	ADC_DSET	OUT	AC converter transmit data
38	ADC_CLK	OUT	Clock for AD converter data transfer
39	ADC_CS	OUT	Clock for AD converter data transfer
40	GND	—	GND

J407

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	MGND	—	GND
2	MGND	—	GND
3	MGND	—	GND
4	MGND	—	GND
5	MGND	—	GND
6	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
7	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
8	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
9	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
10	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
11	GND	—	GND
12	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
13	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
14	LVDSENB	OUT	Differential IC (for reception) output enable signal
15	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
16	VHENB	OUT	Head drive voltage ON/OFF control signal
17	H5VENB	OUT	Head 5V power supply ON/OFF control signal
18	GND	—	GND
19	GND	—	GND
20	PLEDON	OUT	LED ON/OFF control signal for media sensor
21	DCDC_OVP	IN	DC-DC converter error detection signal
22	PSNS	IN	Media sensor detection signal
23	PLED	OUT	LED light intensity control signal for media sensor
24	BAIAS	IN	Head overcurrent detection signal
25	JOINTSNS	IN	Carriage cover opening and closing detection signal
26	GND	—	GND
27	HEADEEPCLK	OUT	Head EEPROM data transfer clock signal
28	HEADEEPRD	IN	Head EEPROM read data
29	HEADEEPWD	OUT	Head EEPROM write data
30	HEADEEPCS	OUT	Head EEPROM chip select signal
31	CRENCB	IN	Linear scale phase signal B
32	CRENCA	IN	Linear scale phase signal A
33	GND	—	GND
34	DACLK	OUT	ASIC control data transfer clock signal
35	ADTRG	OUT	Head DI sensor output sample signal
36	DADT	OUT	ASIC control data signal
37	DLD	OUT	ASIC control data load signal
38	DSOUT1A	IN	ASIC output analog signal 1
39	DSOUT2A	IN	ASIC output analog signal 2
40	GND	—	GND

J408

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	NC	—	NC
3	NC	—	NC
4	NC	—	NC
5	GND	—	GND
6	NC	—	NC
7	NC	—	NC
8	GND	—	GND
9	NC	—	NC
10	NC	—	NC
11	GND	—	GND
12	SREQ	OUT	Status request signal
13	GND	—	GND
14	SACK	IN	Status acknowledge signal
15	NC	—	NC
16	GND	—	GND
17	GND	—	GND
18	GND	—	GND
19	CEDATA1	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit1)
20	GND	—	GND
21	CEDATA4	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit4)
22	CEDATA5	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit5)
23	CEDATA7	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit7)
24	GND	—	GND
25	CEDATA10	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit10)
26	CEDATA11	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit11)
27	CEDATA13	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit13)
28	GND	—	GND
29	CEDATA16	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit16)
30	CEDATA17	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit17)
31	CEDATA19	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit19)
32	GND	—	GND
33	CEDATA22	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit22)
34	CEDATA23	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit23)
35	CEDATA25	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit25)
36	GND	—	GND
37	CEDATA28	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit28)
38	CEDATA29	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit29)
39	CEDATA31	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit31)
40	STANDBY	IN	Power supply ON/OFF signal
41	NC	—	NC
42	NC	—	NC
43	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
44	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
45	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
46	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
47	RESETC	IN	Controller reset signal
48	NC	—	NC
49	NC	—	NC
50	GND	—	GND

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
51	GND	—	GND
52	NC	—	NC
53	GND	—	GND
54	NC	—	NC
55	GND	—	GND
56	GND	—	GND
57	NC	—	NC
58	GND	—	GND
59	NC	—	NC
60	GND	—	GND
61	GND	—	GND
62	CREQ	IN	Command request signal
63	CACK	OUT	Command acknowledge signal
64	GND	—	GND
65	READY	OUT	Image data request signal
66	GND	—	GND
67	DCLK	IN	Image data transfer synchronous signal
68	GND	—	GND
69	CEDATA0	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit0)
70	CEDATA2	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit2)
71	CEDATA3	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit3)
72	GND	—	GND
73	CEDATA6	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit6)
74	CEDATA8	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit8)
75	CEDATA9	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit9)
76	GND	—	GND
77	CEDATA12	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit12)
78	CEDATA14	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit14)
79	CEDATA15	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit15)
80	GND	—	GND
81	CEDATA18	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit18)
82	CEDATA20	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit20)
83	CEDATA21	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit21)
84	GND	—	GND
85	CEDATA24	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit24)
86	CEDATA26	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit26)
87	CEDATA27	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit27)
88	GND	—	GND
89	CEDATA30	IN/OUT	Bidirectional data bus (bit30)
90	START	OUT	Steady-state input power supply (+3.3V)
91	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
92	NC	—	NC
93	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
94	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
95	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
96	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
97	WAKE	IN	Wake signal from sleep mode
98	NC	—	NC
99	NC	—	NC
100	GND	—	GND

J409

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	OUTA	OUT	Carriage motor phase signal (A)
2	OUTB	OUT	Carriage motor phase signal (B)
3	OUTC	OUT	Carriage motor phase signal (C)
4	NC	—	NC

J410

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
2	GND	—	GND
3	EEPWD	OUT	Tank EEPROM write data signal
4	TANKEEPRD	IN	Tank EEPROM read data signal
5	EEPCLK	OUT	Tank EEPROM data clock signal
6	TANKCS5	OUT	Tank EEPROM select signal (BK)
7	TANKCS4	OUT	Tank EEPROM select signal (PC)
8	TANKCS3	OUT	Tank EEPROM select signal (C)
9	TANKCS2	OUT	Tank EEPROM select signal (PM)
10	TANKCS1	OUT	Tank EEPROM select signal (M)
11	TANKCS0	OUT	Tank EEPROM select signal (Y)
12	GND	—	GND
13	LM_SENSE	IN	Remaining ink level detection signal (PM)
14	LC_SENSE	IN	Remaining ink level detection signal (PC)
15	Y_SENSE	IN	Remaining ink level detection signal (Y)
16	M_SENSE	IN	Remaining ink level detection signal (M)
17	C_SENSE	IN	Remaining ink level detection signal (C)
18	BK_SENSE	IN	Remaining ink level detection signal (BK)

J412

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
A1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
A2	MISTPWM_R	OUT	Air flow fan right drive signal
A3	ASF_A	OUT	Pump motor phase excitation signal A
A4	ASF_B	OUT	Pump motor phase excitation signal B
A5	ASF_BN	OUT	Pump motor phase excitation signal BN
A6	ASF_AN	OUT	Pump motor phase excitation signal AN
A7	NC	—	NC
A8	NC	—	NC
A9	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
A10	PGA	OUT	Purge motor phase excitation signal A
A11	PGAN	OUT	Purge motor phase excitation signal AN
A12	PGB	OUT	Purge motor phase excitation signal B
A13	PGBN	OUT	Purge motor phase excitation signal BN
A14	NC	—	NC
B1	GND	—	GND
B2	ASFHP	IN	Pump motor home position signal
B3	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
B4	GND	—	GND
B5	PGHP	IN	Purge motor home position signal
B6	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
B7	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
B8	GND	—	GND
B9	HALL_IN1	IN	Carriage motor hall element input (1)
B10	HALL_IN2	IN	Carriage motor hall element input (2)
B11	HALL_IN3	IN	Carriage motor hall element input (3)
B12	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
B13	KYUINPWM_R	OUT	Suction fan drive signal
B14	GND	—	GND

J413

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	ROLLEND	IN	Roll media end detection signal
3	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
4	GND	—	GND
5	HIKIDASHISET	IN	Roll media tray set detection signal
6	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
7	GND	—	GND
8	KAATSU	IN	Roll media set detection signal
9	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
10	GND	—	GND
11	CRGHP	IN	Carriage homeposition detection signal
12	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
13	GND	—	GND
14	MEDIA	IN	Media detection signal
15	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
16	GND	—	GND
17	ROLLFEED	IN	Roll media feed detection signal
18	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
19	NC	—	NC

J414

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	COVERSOL_L	OUT	Upper cover lock solenoid left drive signal
2	GND	—	GND
3	SUBLF_CL	OUT	Roll media feed clutch drive signal
4	PINCH_CL	OUT	Pinch roller up/down clutch drive signal
5	ATUKAI_CL	OUT	Follow roller up/down clutch drive signal
6	MISTPWM_L2	OUT	Air flow fan right drive signal
7	ROLLCVR	IN	Manual tray opening and closing detection signal
8	GND	—	GND
9	LFENCB	IN	Encoder slit rotation detection signal (B phase)
10	LFENCA	IN	Encoder slit rotation detection signal (A phase)
11	SUBLF_HP	IN	Pinch roller up/down detection signal
12	LFMAIN_A	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (A)
13	LFMAIN_B	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (B)
14	LFMAIN_AN	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (AN)
15	LFMAIN_BN	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (BN)
16	GND	—	GND
17	SUBLF_A	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (A)

J414

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
18	SUBLF_B	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (B)
19	SUBLF_AN	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (AN)
20	SUBLF_BN	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (BN)

J415

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	SUBLF_OUT2	OUT	Roll media drive motor maximum phase current (Vref2)
3	SUBLF_OUT1	OUT	Roll media drive motor maximum phase current (Vref1)
4	GND	—	GND
5	LFMAIN_OUT2	OUT	Feed motor maximum phase current (Vref2)
6	LFMAIN_OUT1	OUT	Feed motor maximum phase current (Vref1)

J417

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	GND	—	GND
3	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
4	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)

J418

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	+5V	IN	Power supply (+5.1V)
3	MGND	—	GND
4	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
5	MGND_CRM	—	GND for VM_CRM
6	MGND_CRM	—	GND for VM_CRM
7	VM_CRM	IN	Carriage motor drive power supply (+26.5V)
8	VM_CRM	IN	Carriage motor drive power supply (+26.5V)

J419

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	START	IN	Steady-state input power supply (+3.3V)
2	STANDBY	OUT	Power supply ON/OFF signal

J421

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	MGND	—	GND
3	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
4	GND	—	GND

J425

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	MISTFAN_S	OUT	Air flow fan left drive signal
3	NC	—	NC

8.3 Carriage Relay PCB

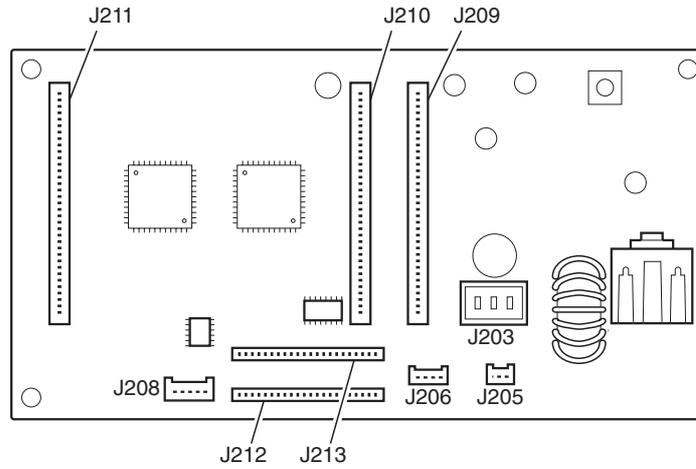


Figure 5-49 Carriage Relay PCB

J203

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
2	HGND	—	GND
3	GNDR	—	GND

J205

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	JOINTSNS	IN	Carriage cover opening and closing detection signal
3	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)

J206

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	CRENCB	IN	Linear scale phase signal B
2	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
3	CRENCA	IN	Linear scale phase signal A
4	GND	—	GND

J208

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	PTC	OUT	Media sensor light-receiving element power supply
2	PTE	IN	Media sensor light-receiving element detection signal
3	PLED_A	OUT	Media sensor light-emitting element power supply
4	PLED_K	IN	Media sensor light-emitting element ON/OFF signal
5	NC	—	NC

J209

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	DSOUT2A	OUT	ASIC output analog signal 2
3	DSOUT1A	OUT	ASIC output analog signal 1
4	DLD	IN	ASIC control data load signal
5	DADT	IN	ASIC control data signal
6	ADTRG	IN	Head DI sensor output sample signal
7	DACLK	IN	ASIC control data transfer clock signal
8	GND	—	GND
9	CRENCA	OUT	Linear scale phase signal A
10	CRENCB	OUT	Linear scale phase signal B
11	HEADEEPCS	IN	Head EEPROM chip select signal
12	HEADEEPWD	IN	Head EEPROM write data
13	HEADEEPRD	OUT	Head EEPROM read data
14	HEADEEPCLK	IN	Head EEPROM data transfer clock signal
15	GND	—	GND
16	JOINTSNS	OUT	Carriage cover opening and closing detection signal
17	BAIAS	OUT	Head overcurrent detection signal
18	PLED	IN	LED control signal for media sensor
19	PSNS	OUT	Media sensor detection signal
20	DCDC_OVP	OUT	DC-DC converter error detection signal
21	PLEDON	IN	LED ON/OFF control signal for media sensor
22	GND	—	GND
23	GND	—	GND
24	H5VENB	IN	Head 5V power supply ON/OFF control signal
25	VHENB	IN	Head driving power supply ON/OFF control signal
26	+3.3V	IN	Power supply (+3.3V)
27	LVDSENB	IN	Differential IC (for reception) output enable signal
28	+5V	IN	Power supply (+5.1V)
29	+5V	IN	Power supply (+5.1V)
30	GND	—	GND
31	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
32	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
33	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
34	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
35	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
36	MGND	—	GND
37	MGND	—	GND
38	MGND	—	GND
39	MGND	—	GND
40	MGND	—	GND

J210

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	ADC_CS	IN	Clock for AD converter data transfer
3	ADC_CLK	IN	Clock for AD converter data transfer
4	ADC_DSET	IN	AD converter transmit data
5	ADC_DRET	OUT	AD converter receive data
6	GND	—	GND

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
7	C5_ODATA0N	IN	Even nozzle data 0- output (BK)
8	C5_ODATA0P	IN	Even nozzle data 0+ output (BK)
9	C5_ODATA1N	IN	Even nozzle data 1- output (BK)
10	C5_ODATA1P	IN	Even nozzle data 1+ output (BK)
11	C5_EDATA0N	IN	Odd nozzle data 0- output (BK)
12	C5_EDATA0P	IN	Odd nozzle data 0+ output (BK)
13	C5_EDATA1N	IN	Odd nozzle data 1- output (BK)
14	C5_EDATA1P	IN	Odd nozzle data 1+ output (BK)
15	GND	—	GND
16	C4_ODATA0N	IN	Even nozzle data 0- output (PC)
17	C4_ODATA0P	IN	Even nozzle data 0+ output (PC)
18	C4_ODATA1N	IN	Even nozzle data 1- output (PC)
19	C4_ODATA1P	IN	Even nozzle data 1+ output (PC)
20	C4_EDATA0N	IN	Odd nozzle data 0- output (PC)
21	C4_EDATA0P	IN	Odd nozzle data 0+ output (PC)
22	C4_EDATA1N	IN	Odd nozzle data 1- output (PC)
23	C4_EDATA1P	IN	Odd nozzle data 1+ output (PC)
24	GND	—	GND
25	C3_ODATA0N	IN	Even nozzle data 0- output (C)
26	C3_ODATA0P	IN	Even nozzle data 0+ output (C)
27	C3_ODATA1N	IN	Even nozzle data 1- output (C)
28	C3_ODATA1P	IN	Even nozzle data 1+ output (C)
29	C3_EDATA0N	IN	Odd nozzle data 0- output (C)
30	C3_EDATA0P	IN	Odd nozzle data 0+ output (C)
31	C3_EDATA1N	IN	Odd nozzle data 1- output (C)
32	C3_EDATA1P	IN	Odd nozzle data 1+ output (C)
33	GND	—	GND
34	C5_HENB	IN	Heat pulse output (BK)
35	C4_HENB	IN	Heat pulse output (PC)
36	C3_HENB	IN	Heat pulse output (C)
37	C5_SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse output (BK)
38	C4_SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse output (PC)
39	C3_SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse output (C)
40	GND	—	GND

J211

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	C0_ODATA0N	IN	Even nozzle data 0- output (Y)
3	C0_ODATA0P	IN	Even nozzle data 0+ output (Y)
4	C0_ODATA1N	IN	Even nozzle data 1- output (Y)
5	C0_ODATA1P	IN	Even nozzle data 1+ output (Y)
6	C0_EDATA0N	IN	Odd nozzle data 0- output (Y)
7	C0_EDATA0P	IN	Odd nozzle data 0+ output (Y)
8	C0_EDATA1N	IN	Odd nozzle data 1- output (Y)
9	C0_EDATA1P	IN	Odd nozzle data 1+ output (Y)
10	GND	—	GND
11	C1_ODATA0N	IN	Even nozzle data 0- output (M)
12	C1_ODATA0P	IN	Even nozzle data 0+ output (M)

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
13	C1_ODATA1N	IN	Even nozzle data 1- output (M)
14	C1_ODATA1P	IN	Even nozzle data 1+ output (M)
15	C1_EDATA0N	IN	Odd nozzle data 0- output (M)
16	C1_EDATA0P	IN	Odd nozzle data 0+ output (M)
17	C1_EDATA1N	IN	Odd nozzle data 1- output (M)
18	C1_EDATA1P	IN	Odd nozzle data 1+ output (M)
19	GND	—	GND
20	C2_ODATA0N	IN	Even nozzle data 0- output (PM)
21	C2_ODATA0P	IN	Even nozzle data 0+ output (PM)
22	C2_ODATA1N	IN	Even nozzle data 1- output (PM)
23	C2_ODATA1P	IN	Even nozzle data 1+ output (PM)
24	C2_EDATA0N	IN	Odd nozzle data 0- output (PM)
25	C2_EDATA0P	IN	Odd nozzle data 0+ output (PM)
26	C2_EDATA1N	IN	Odd nozzle data 1- output (PM)
27	C2_EDATA1P	IN	Odd nozzle data 1+ output (PM)
28	GND	—	GND
29	HDCLKN	IN	Head data transfer clock - output
30	HDCLKP	IN	Head data transfer clock + output
31	HDLTN	IN	Head data latch signal - output
32	HDLTP	IN	Head data latch signal + output
33	GND	—	GND
34	C0_HENB	IN	Heat pulse output (Y)
35	C1_HENB	IN	Heat pulse output (M)
36	C2_HENB	IN	Heat pulse output (PM)
37	C0_SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse output (Y)
38	C1_SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse output (M)
39	C2_SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse output (PM)
40	GND	—	GND

J212

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	C0_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse input (Y)
2	C1_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse input (M)
3	C2_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse input (PM)
4	C0SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse input (Y)
5	C1SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse input (M)
6	C2SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse input (PM)
7	C3SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse input (C)
8	C4SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse input (PC)
9	C5SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse input (BK)
10	C3_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse input (C)
11	C4_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse input (PC)
12	C5_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse input (BK)
13	GND	—	GND
14	DACLKX	OUT	Receiver ASIC input data clock
15	GND	—	GND
16	DSOUT2	IN	Receiver ASIC analog output
17	DSOUT1	IN	Receiver ASIC analog output
18	DLDX	OUT	Receiver ASIC input data latch signal

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
19	DADTX	OUT	Receiver ASIC input data
20	DASHX	OUT	Receiver ASIC output sample hold
21	GND	—	GND
22	HEADEEPCLKX	OUT	Head EEPROM data transfer clock
23	HEADEEPRDX	IN	Head EEPROM read signal
24	HEADEEPWDX	OUT	Head EEPROM write signal
25	HEADEEPCSX	OUT	Head EEPROM chip select signal
26	VHFBH	—	NC
27	VHFBG	—	NC
28	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
29	H5V	OUT	Power supply for driving head logic (+5.1V)
30	GND	—	GND

J213

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	C3_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (C)
3	C3_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (C)
4	C3_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (C)
5	C3_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (C)
6	C4_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (PC)
7	C4_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (PC)
8	C4_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (PC)
9	C4_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (PC)
10	C5_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (BK)
11	C5_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (BK)
12	C5_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (BK)
13	C5_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (BK)
14	GND	—	GND
15	C0_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (Y)
16	C0_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (Y)
17	GND	—	GND
18	C0_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (Y)
19	C0_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (Y)
20	C1_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (M)
21	C1_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (M)
22	C1_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (M)
23	C1_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (M)
24	C2_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (PM)
25	C2_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (PM)
26	C2_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (PM)
27	C2_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (PM)
28	HDCLK	OUT	Head data transfer clock
29	HDLT	OUT	Head data latch signal
30	GND	—	GND

8.4 Head Relay PCB

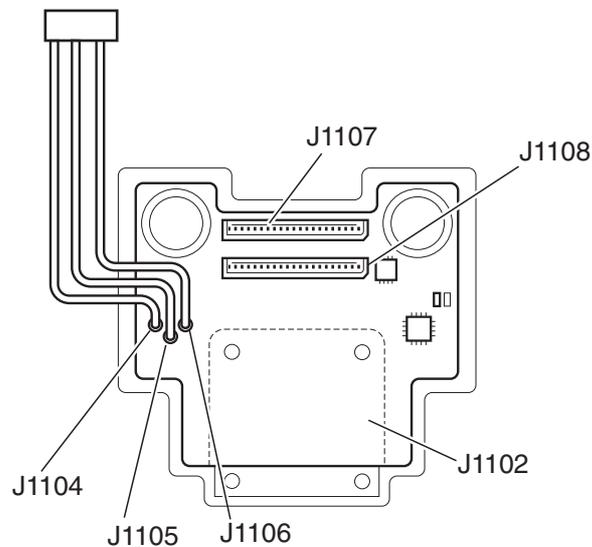


Figure 5-50 Head Relay PCB

J1102

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
2	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
3	C0SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (Y)
4	C3_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse output (C)
5	DIAC1	IN	DI sensor signal 1 (C)
6	HEADEEPWDX	OUT	Head EEPROM write signal
7	HEADEEPCLKX	OUT	Head EEPROM data transfer clock
8	H5V	OUT	Power supply for driving head logic (+5.1V)
9	C2_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (PM)
10	DIALC1	IN	DI sensor signal 1 (PC)
11	VHT	OUT	Power supply for driving transistor in head (+18.05V)
12	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
13	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
14	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
15	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
16	C3_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (C)
17	C1_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (M)
18	HEADEEPRDX	IN	Head EEPROM read signal
19	C3SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (C)
20	HEADEEPCSX	OUT	Head EEPROM chip select signal
21	H5V	OUT	Power supply for driving head logic (+5.1V)
22	C2_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (PM)
23	C4_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (PC)
24	C5_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (BK)
25	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
26	RGV19	OUT	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)
27	DIAM0	IN	DI sensor signal 0 (M)
28	C1_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (M)
29	C0_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (Y)
30	C0_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (Y)

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
31	DIAY1	IN	DI sensor signal 1 (Y)
32	C1_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse output (M)
33	HDCLK	OUT	Head data transfer clock
34	DIACO	IN	DI sensor signal 0 (C)
35	DIALMO	IN	DI sensor signal 0 (PM)
36	C5_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse output (BK)
37	C4_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (PC)
38	C5_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (BK)
39	C5_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (BK)
40	C0_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (Y)
41	DIAY0	IN	DI sensor signal 0 (Y)
42	C1_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (M)
43	C0_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (Y)
44	DIAMI	IN	DI sensor signal 1 (M)
45	C0_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse output (Y)
46	C1SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (M)
47	DIALM1	IN	DI sensor signal 1 (PM)
48	C4_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse output (PC)
49	C5_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (BK)
50	DIAK1	IN	DI sensor signal 1 (BK)
51	DIAK0	IN	DI sensor signal 0 (BK)
52	DIALCO	IN	DI sensor signal 0 (PC)
53	VHFBG	—	NC
54	HGND	—	GND
55	HGND	—	GND
56	HDLT	OUT	Head data latch signal
57	C1_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (M)
58	GND	—	GND
59	C2_HENB_B	OUT	Heat pulse output (PM)
60	C2SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (PM)
61	C5SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (BK)
62	C4_ODATA0	OUT	Even nozzle data 0 (PC)
63	C4SUBH	OUT	Subheat pulse output (PC)
64	HGND	—	GND
65	HGND	—	GND
66	HGND	—	GND
67	HGND	—	GND
68	C3_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (C)
69	C3_EDATA1	OUT	Odd nozzle data 1 (C)
70	C3_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (C)
71	GND	—	GND
72	GND	—	GND
73	C2_ODATA1	OUT	Even nozzle data 1 (PM)
74	C4_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (PC)
75	C2_EDATA0	OUT	Odd nozzle data 0 (PM)
76	HGND	—	GND
77	HGND	—	GND
78	HGND	—	GND

J1104

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	RGV19	IN	Power supply for driving head (+18.05V)

J1105

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	MGND	—	GND for VM

J1106

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	MGND	—	GND for VM

J1107

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	HDLT	IN	Head data latch signal
3	HDCLK	IN	Head data transfer clock
4	C2_EDATA1	IN	Odd nozzle data 1 (PM)
5	C2_EDATA0	IN	Odd nozzle data 0 (PM)
6	C2_ODATA1	IN	Even nozzle data 1 (PM)
7	C2_ODATA0	IN	Even nozzle data 0 (PM)
8	C1_EDATA1	IN	Odd nozzle data 1 (M)
9	C1_EDATA0	IN	Odd nozzle data 0 (M)
10	C1_ODATA1	IN	Even nozzle data 1 (M)
11	C1_ODATA0	IN	Even nozzle data 0 (M)
12	C0_EDATA1	IN	Odd nozzle data 1 (Y)
13	C0_EDATA0	IN	Odd nozzle data 0 (Y)
14	GND	—	GND
15	C0_ODATA1	IN	Even nozzle data 1 (Y)
16	C0_ODATA0	IN	Even nozzle data 0 (Y)
17	GND	—	GND
18	C5_EDATA1	IN	Odd nozzle data 1 (BK)
19	C5_EDATA0	IN	Odd nozzle data 0 (BK)
20	C5_ODATA1	IN	Even nozzle data 1 (BK)
21	C5_ODATA0	IN	Even nozzle data 0 (BK)
22	C4_EDATA1	IN	Odd nozzle data 1 (PC)
23	C4_EDATA0	IN	Odd nozzle data 0 (PC)
24	C4_ODATA1	IN	Even nozzle data 1 (PC)
25	C4_ODATA0	IN	Even nozzle data 0 (PC)
26	C3_EDATA1	IN	Odd nozzle data 1 (C)
27	C3_EDATA0	IN	Odd nozzle data 0 (C)
28	C3_ODATA1	IN	Even nozzle data 1 (C)
29	C3_ODATA0	IN	Even nozzle data 0 (C)
30	GND	—	GND

J1108

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	H5V	IN	Power supply for driving head logic (+5.1V)
3	+5V	IN	Power supply (+5.1V)
4	VHFBG	—	NC
5	VHFBH	—	NC
6	HEADEEPCSX	IN	Head EEPROM chip select signal
7	HEADEEPWDX	IN	Head EEPROM write signal
8	HEADEEPRDX	OUT	Head EEPROM read signal
9	HEADEEPCLKX	IN	Head EEPROM data transfer clock
10	GND	—	GND
11	DASHX	IN	ASIC output sample hold
12	DADTX	IN	ASIC input data
13	DLDX	IN	ASIC input data latch signal
14	DSOUT1	OUT	ASIC analog output
15	DSOUT2	OUT	ASIC analog output
16	GND	—	GND
17	DACLKX	IN	ASIC input data clock
18	GND	—	GND
19	C5_HENB_B	IN	Heat pulse input (BK)
20	C4_HENB_B	IN	Heat pulse input (PC)
21	C3_HENB_B	IN	Heat pulse input (C)
22	C5SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse input (BK)
23	C4SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse input (PC)
24	C3SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse input (C)
25	C2SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse input (PM)
26	C1SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse input (M)
27	C0SUBH	IN	Subheat pulse input (Y)
28	C2_HENB_B	IN	Heat pulse input (PM)
29	C1_HENB_B	IN	Heat pulse input (M)
30	C0_HENB_B	IN	Heat pulse input (Y)

8.5 Motor Driver PCB

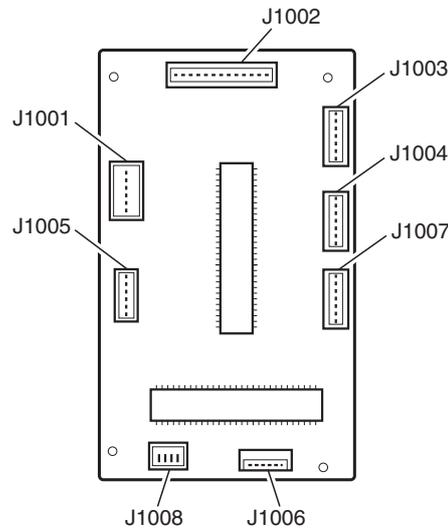


Figure 5-51 Motor Driver PCB

J1001

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	IN	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	MGND	—	GND
3	+5V	IN	Power supply (+5.1V)
4	GND	—	GND

J1002

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	SUBLF_BN	IN	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (BN)
2	SUBLF_AN	IN	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (AN)
3	SUBLF_B	IN	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (B)
4	SUBLF_A	IN	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (A)
5	GND	—	GND
6	LFMAIN_BN	IN	Feed motor phase excitation signal (BN)
7	LFMAIN_AN	IN	Feed motor phase excitation signal (AN)
8	LFMAIN_B	IN	Feed motor phase excitation signal (B)
9	LFMAIN_A	IN	Feed motor phase excitation signal (A)
10	SUBLF_HP	OUT	Pinch roll up/down detection signal
11	LFENCA	OUT	Encoder slit rotation detection signal (A phase)
12	LFENCB	OUT	Encoder slit rotation detection signal (B phase)
13	GND	—	GND
14	ROLLCVR	OUT	Tray opening and closing detection signal
15	MISTPWM_L2	IN	Air flow fan right drive signal
16	ATUKAI_CL	IN	Follow roller up/down clutch drive signal
17	PINCH_CL	IN	Pinch roller up/down clutch drive signal
18	SUBLF_CL	IN	Roll media feed clutch drive signal
19	MISTPWM_L1	IN	Air flow fan left drive signal
20	COVERSOL_L	IN	Upper cover lock solenoid left drive signal

J1003

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	LFENCB	IN	Encoder slit rotation detection signal (B phase)
2	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
3	LFENCA	IN	Encoder slit rotation detection signal (A phase)
4	GND	—	GND
5	GND	—	GND
6	ROLLCVR	IN	Tray opening and closing detection signal
7	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
8	GND	—	GND
9	SUBLF_HP	IN	Pinch roll up/down detection signal
10	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)

J1004

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	NC	—	NC
3	PINCH_CL	OUT	Pinch roller up/down clutch drive signal
4	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
5	COVERSOL_L	OUT	Upper cover lock solenoid left drive signal
6	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
7	MISTPWM_L1	OUT	Air flow fan left drive signal

J1005

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	LFMAIN_OUT1	IN	Feed motor maximum phase current (Vref1)
2	LFMAIN_OUT2	IN	Feed motor maximum phase current (Vref2)
3	GND	—	GND
4	SUBLF_OUT1	IN	Roll media drive motor maximum phase current (Vref1)
5	SUBLF_OUT2	IN	Roll media drive motor maximum phase current (Vref2)
6	GND	—	GND

J1006

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
3	SUBLF_AN	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (AN)
4	SUBLF_A	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (A)
5	SUBLF_B	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (B)
6	SUBLF_BN	OUT	Roll media drive motor phase excitation signal (BN)

J1007

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
3	LFMAIN_A	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (A)
4	LFMAIN_AN	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (AN)
5	LFMAIN_B	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (B)
6	LFMAIN_BN	OUT	Feed motor phase excitation signal (BN)
7	NC	—	NC

J1008

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	SUBLF_CL	OUT	Roll media feed clutch drive signal
3	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
4	ATUKAI_CL	OUT	Follow roller up/down clutch drive signal

8.6 Power Supply

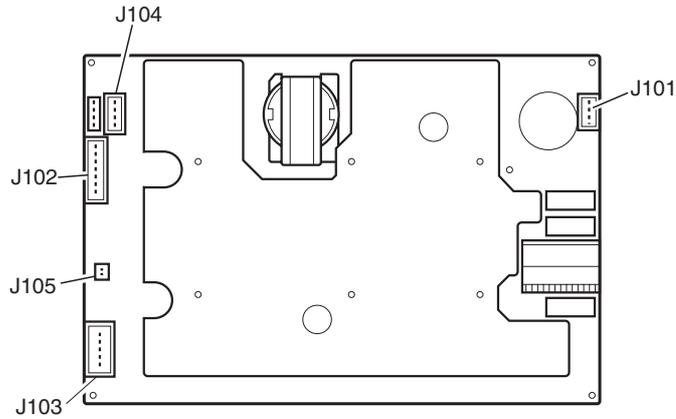


Figure 5-52 Power Supply

J101

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	—	—	Power supply (AC 100V to AC 240V)
2	—	—	Power supply (AC 100V to AC 240V)

J102

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
3	MGND	—	GND
4	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
5	MGND_CRM	—	GND
6	MGND_CRM	—	GND
7	VM_CRM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
8	VM_CRM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)

J103

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	GND	—	GND
2	GND	—	GND
3	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)
4	+3.3V	OUT	Power supply (+3.3V)

J104

Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	VM	OUT	Power supply (+26.5V)
2	MGND	—	GND
3	+5V	OUT	Power supply (+5.1V)
4	GND	—	GND

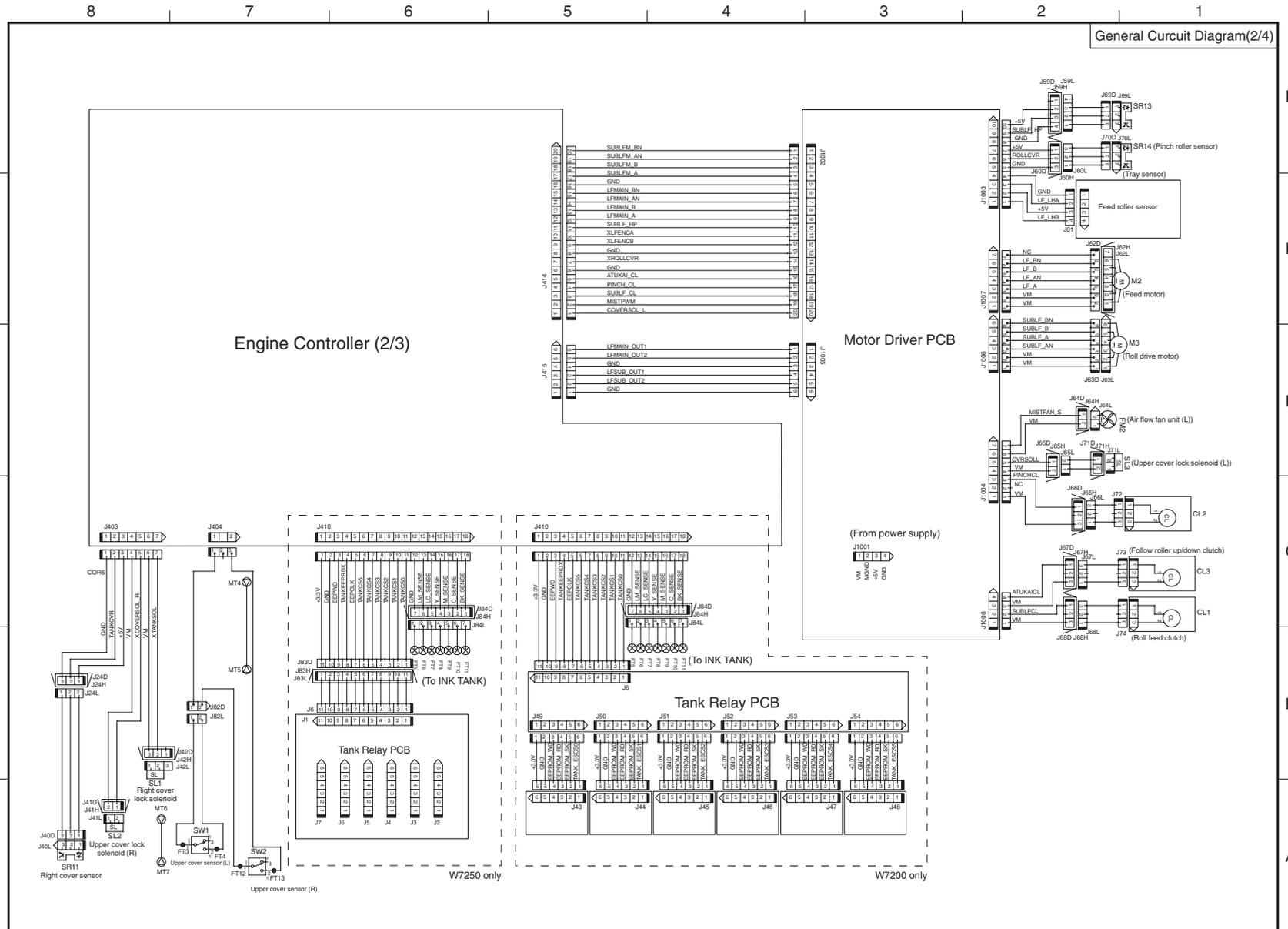
J105

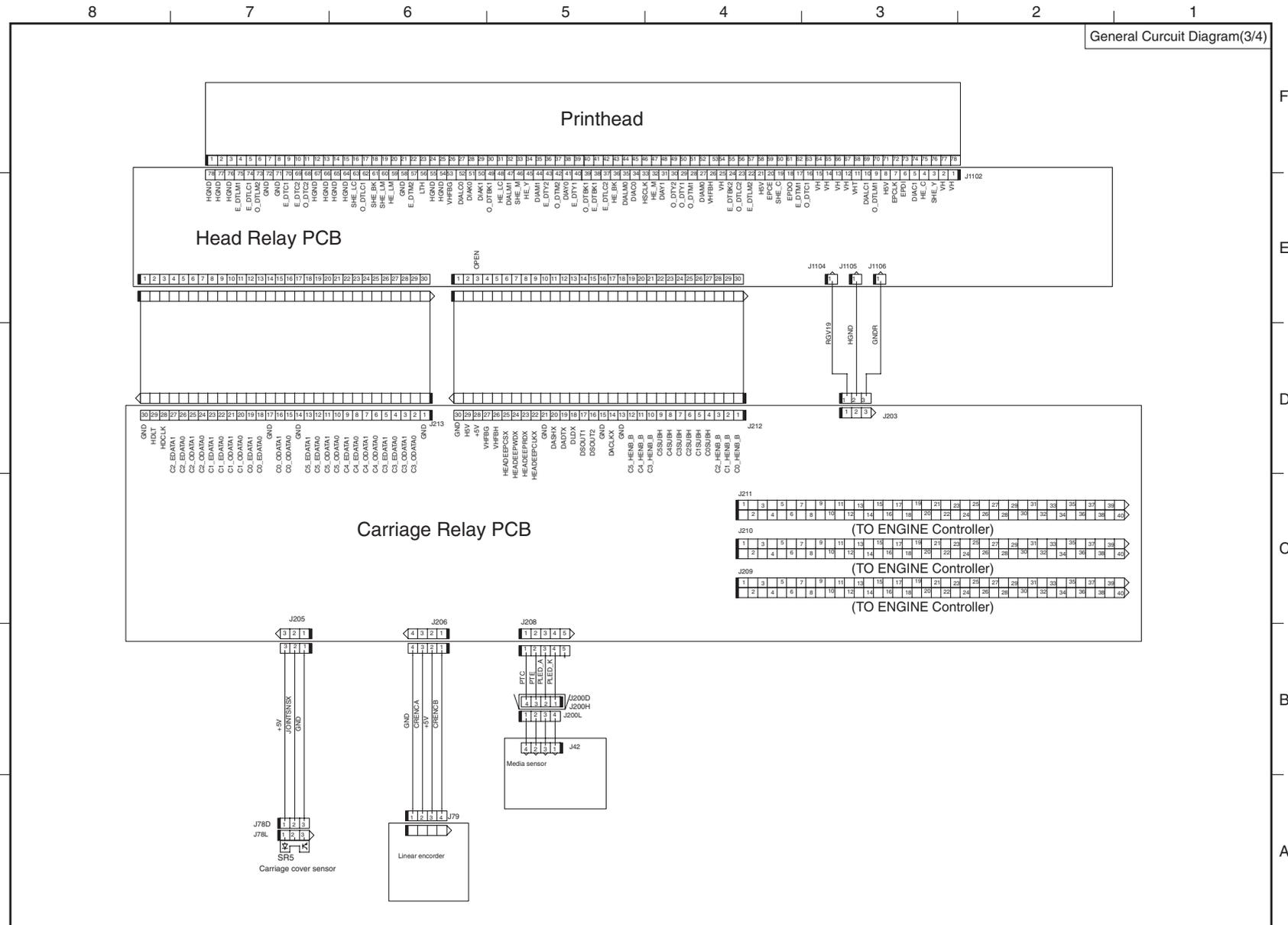
Pin number	Signal name	IN/OUT	Function
1	START	OUT	Stead-state input power supply (+3.3V)
2	STANDBY	IN	Power supply ON/OFF signal

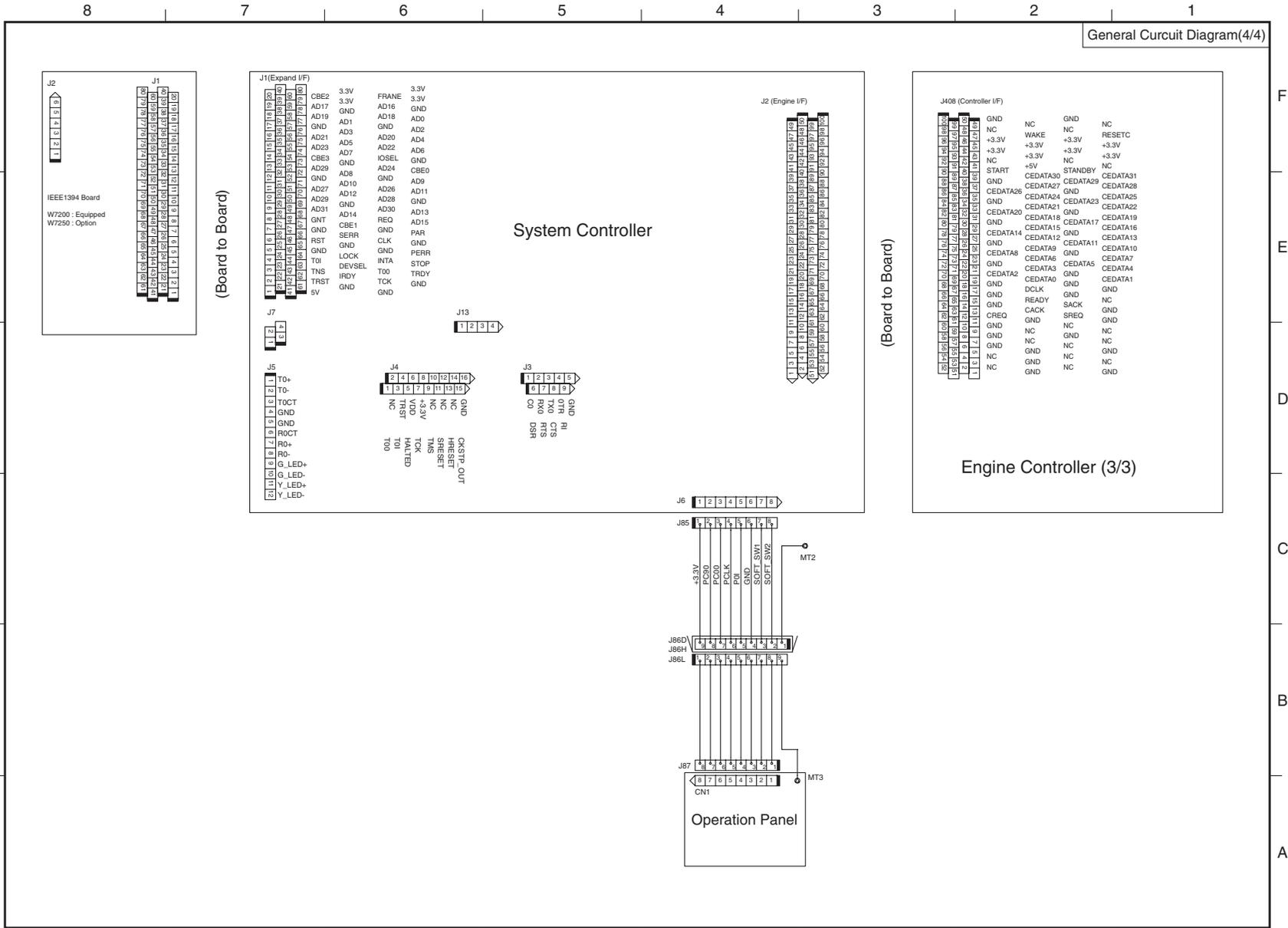
9. CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

Refer to Parts Catalog for the part layouts on each board.

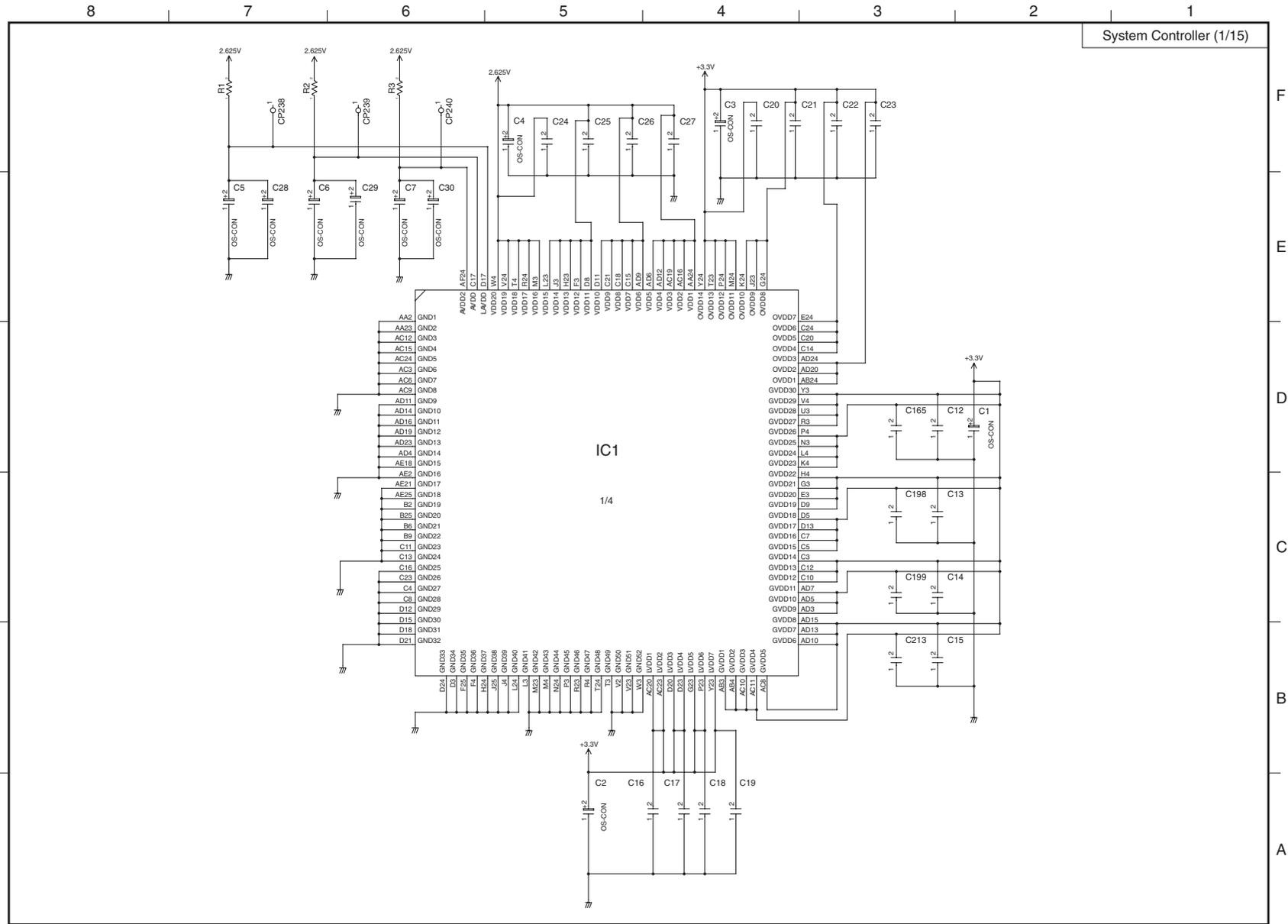
This page intentionally left blank

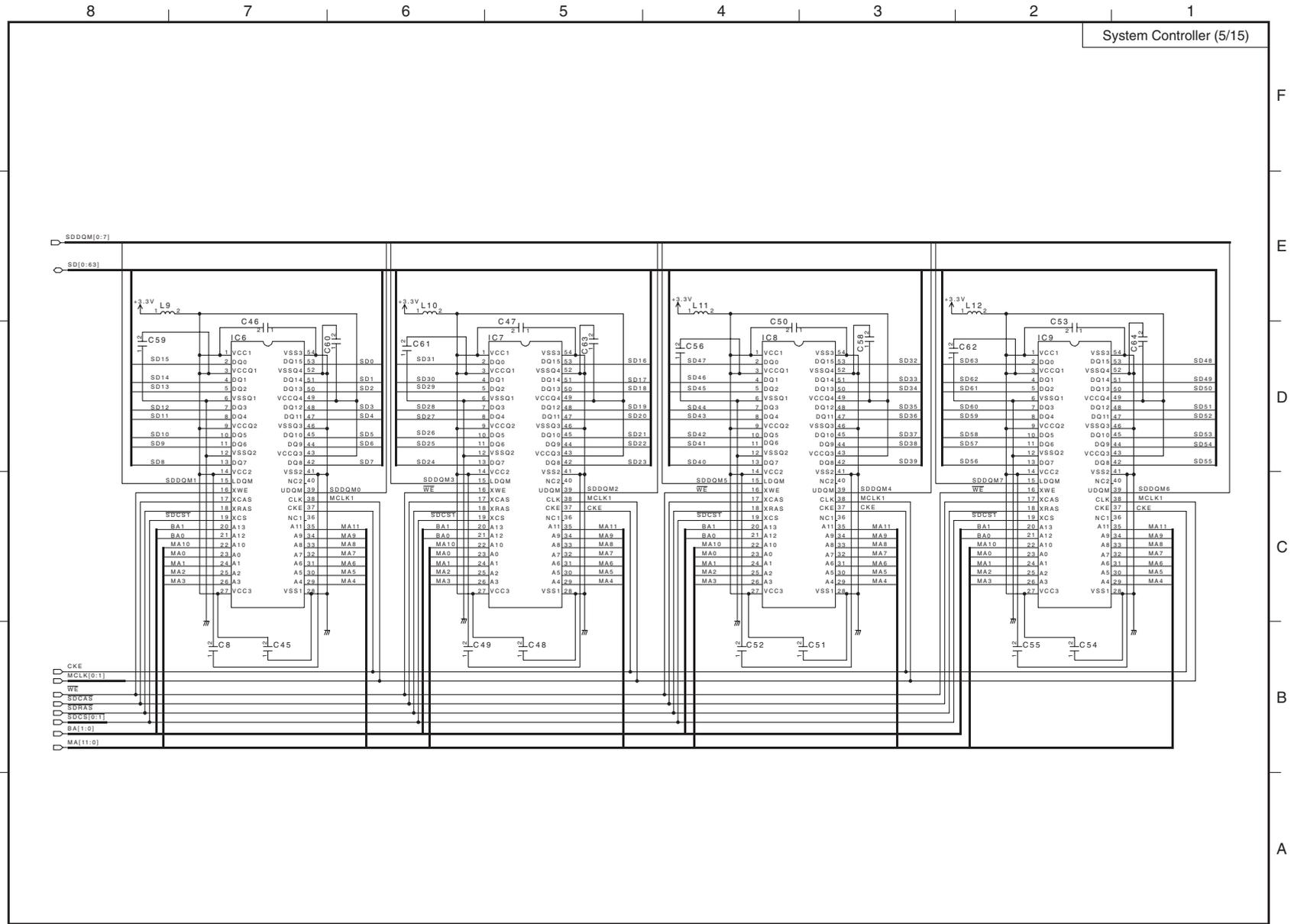


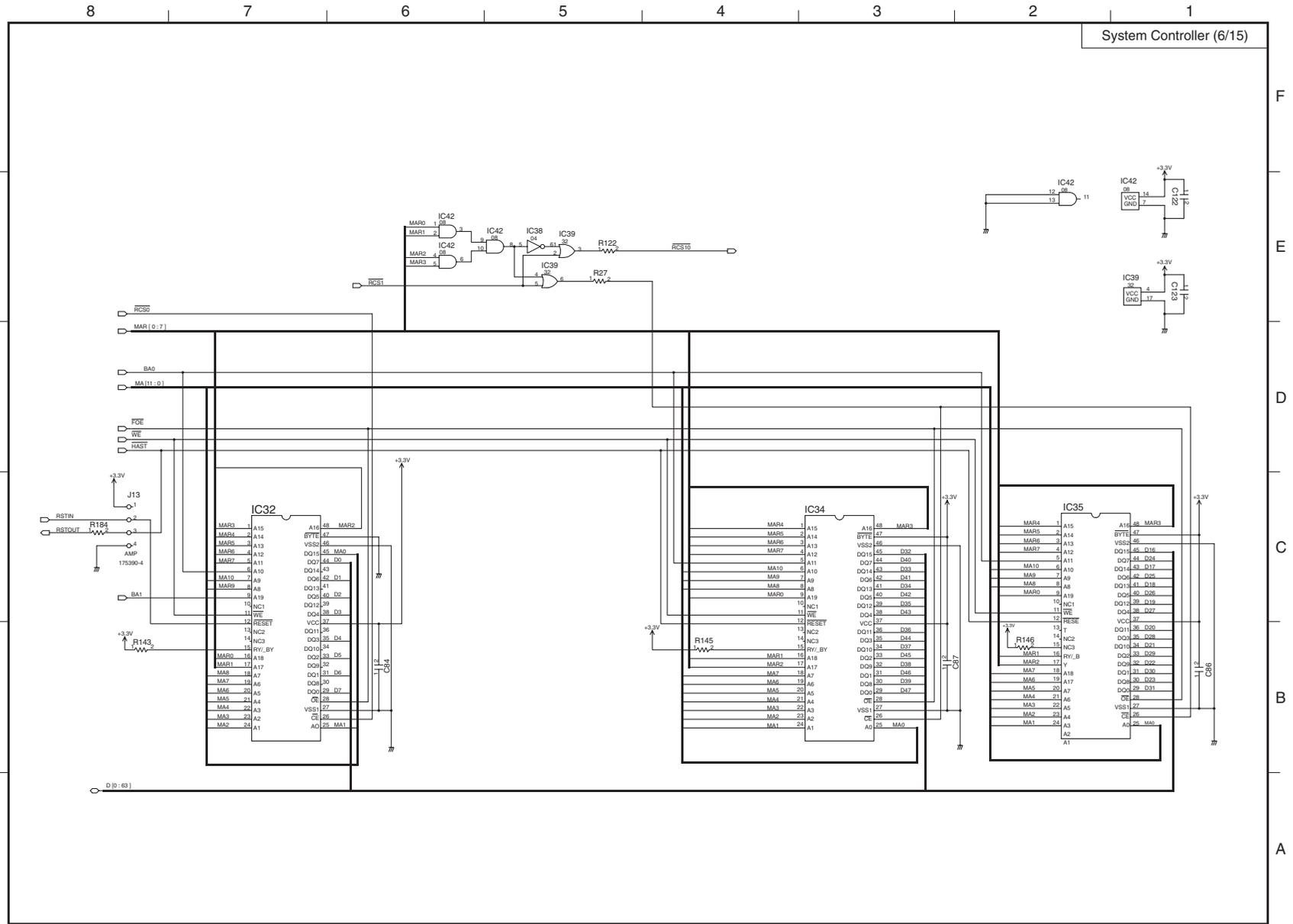


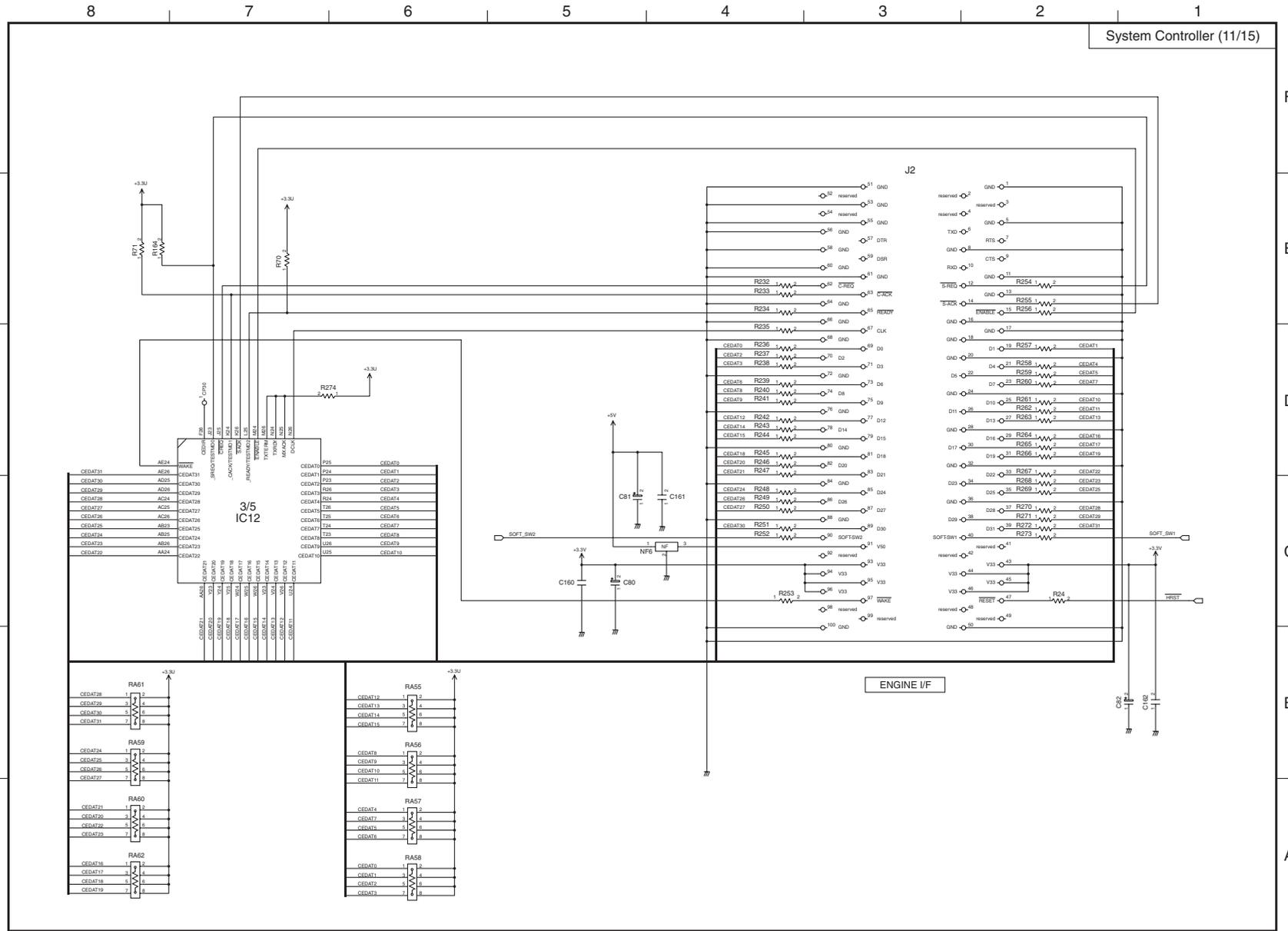


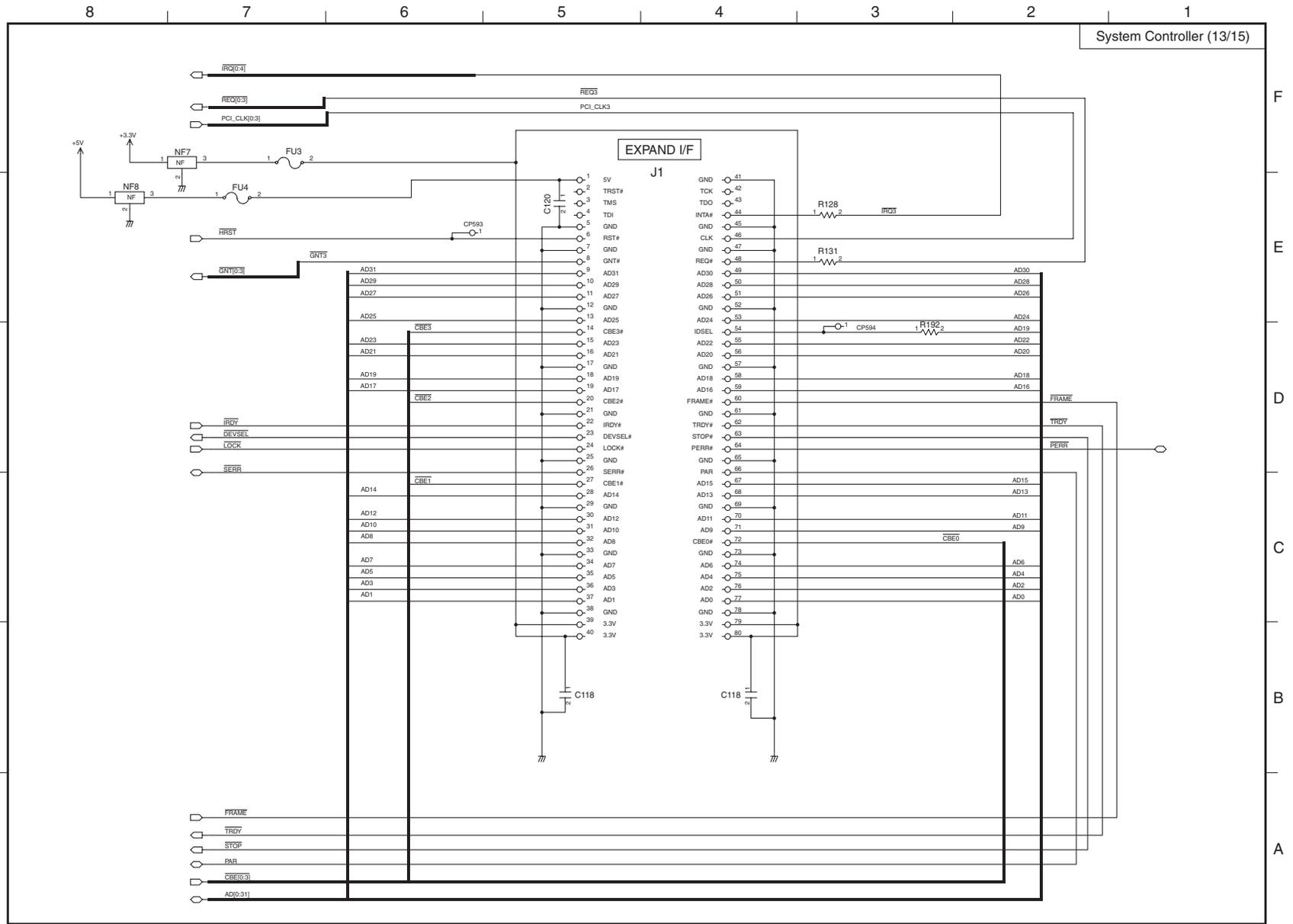
9.2 System Controller

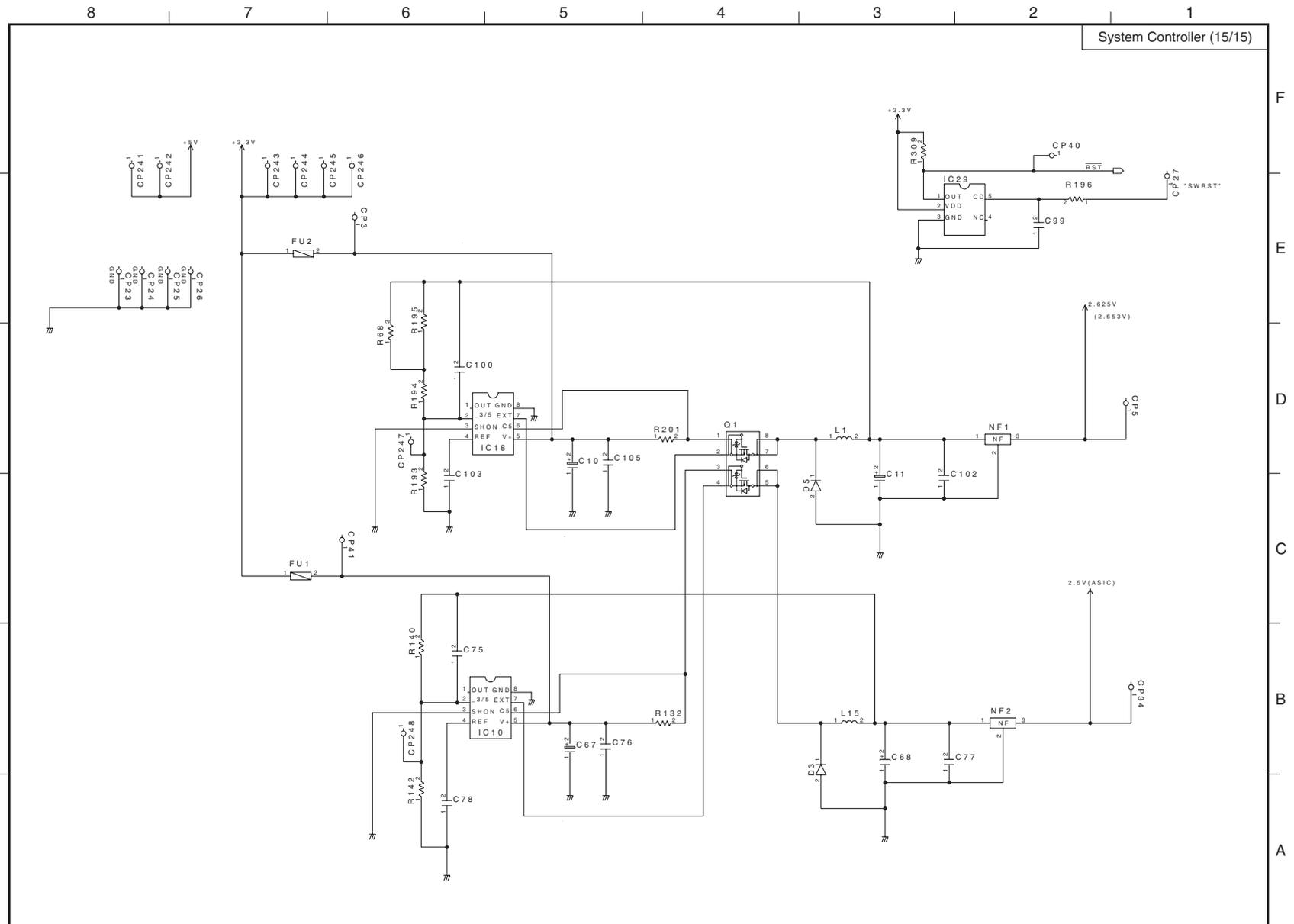


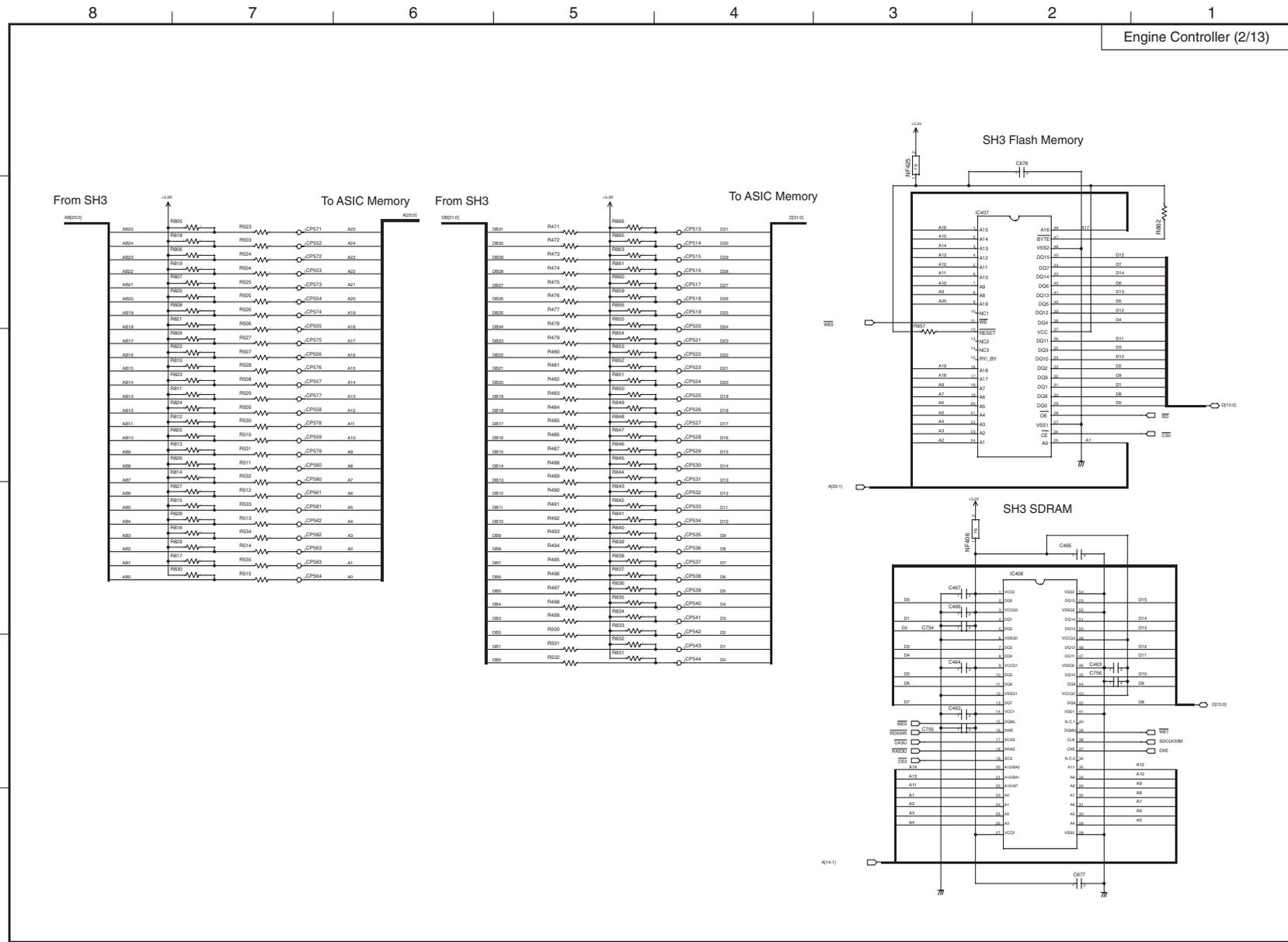


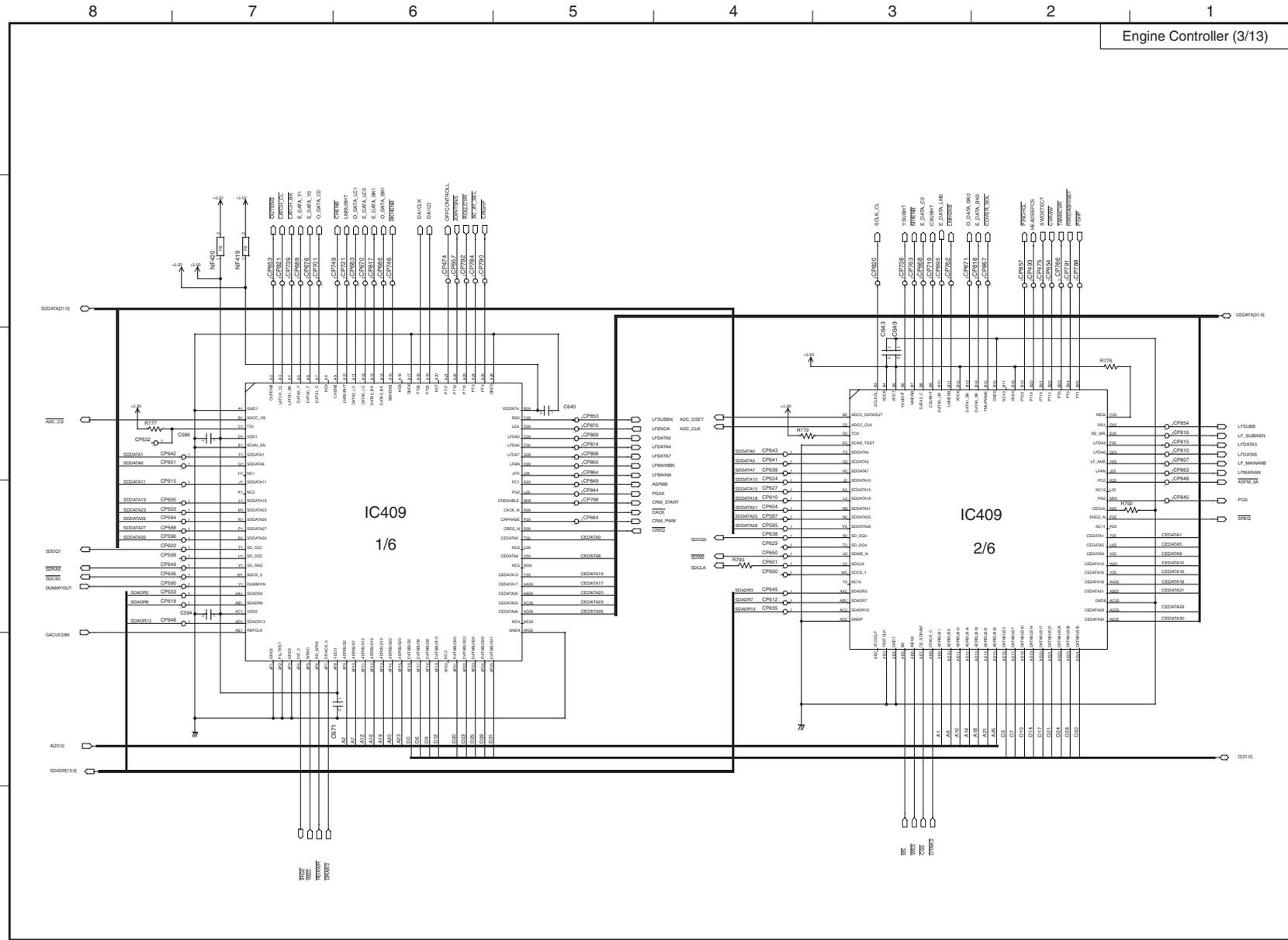


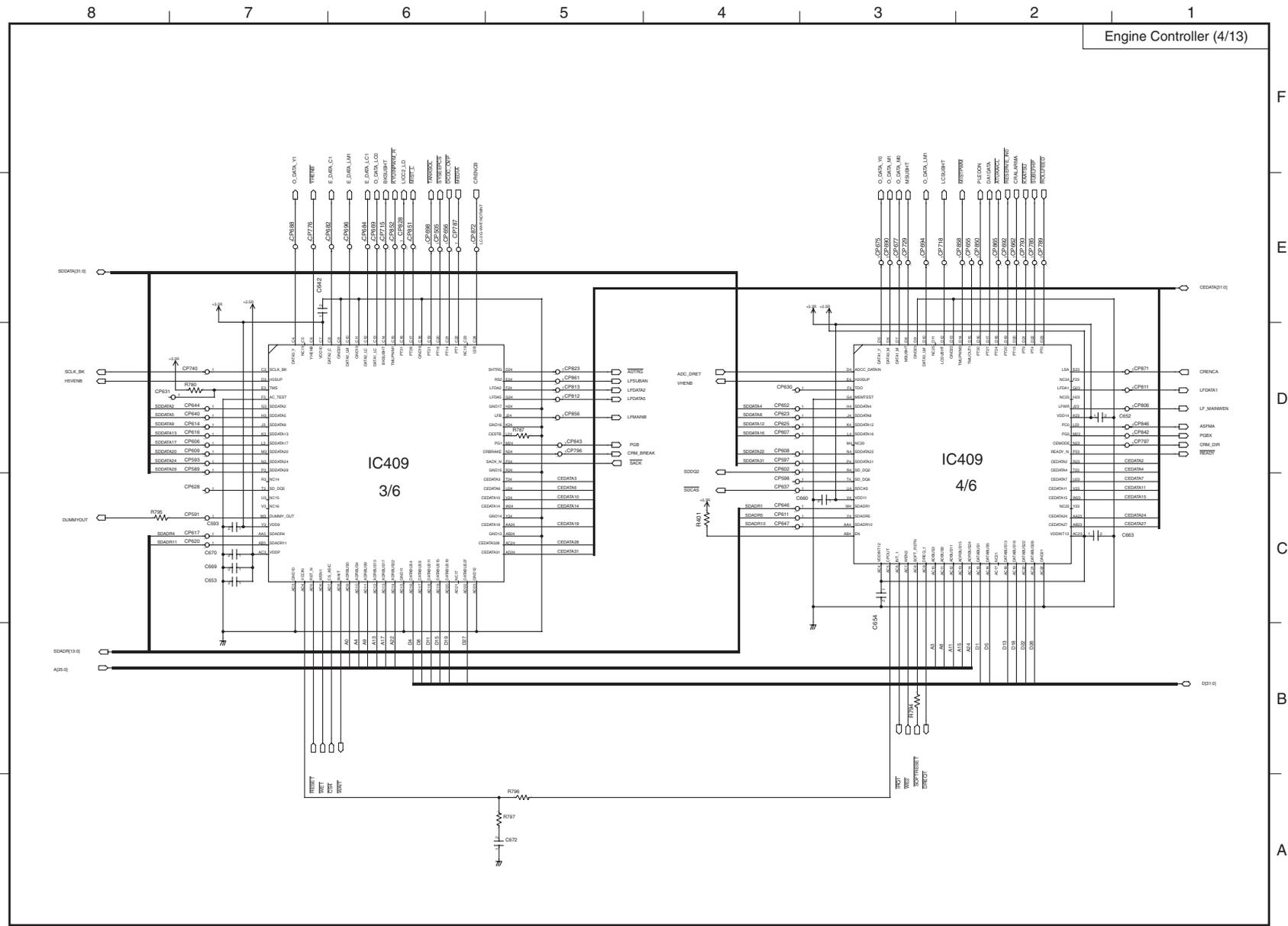


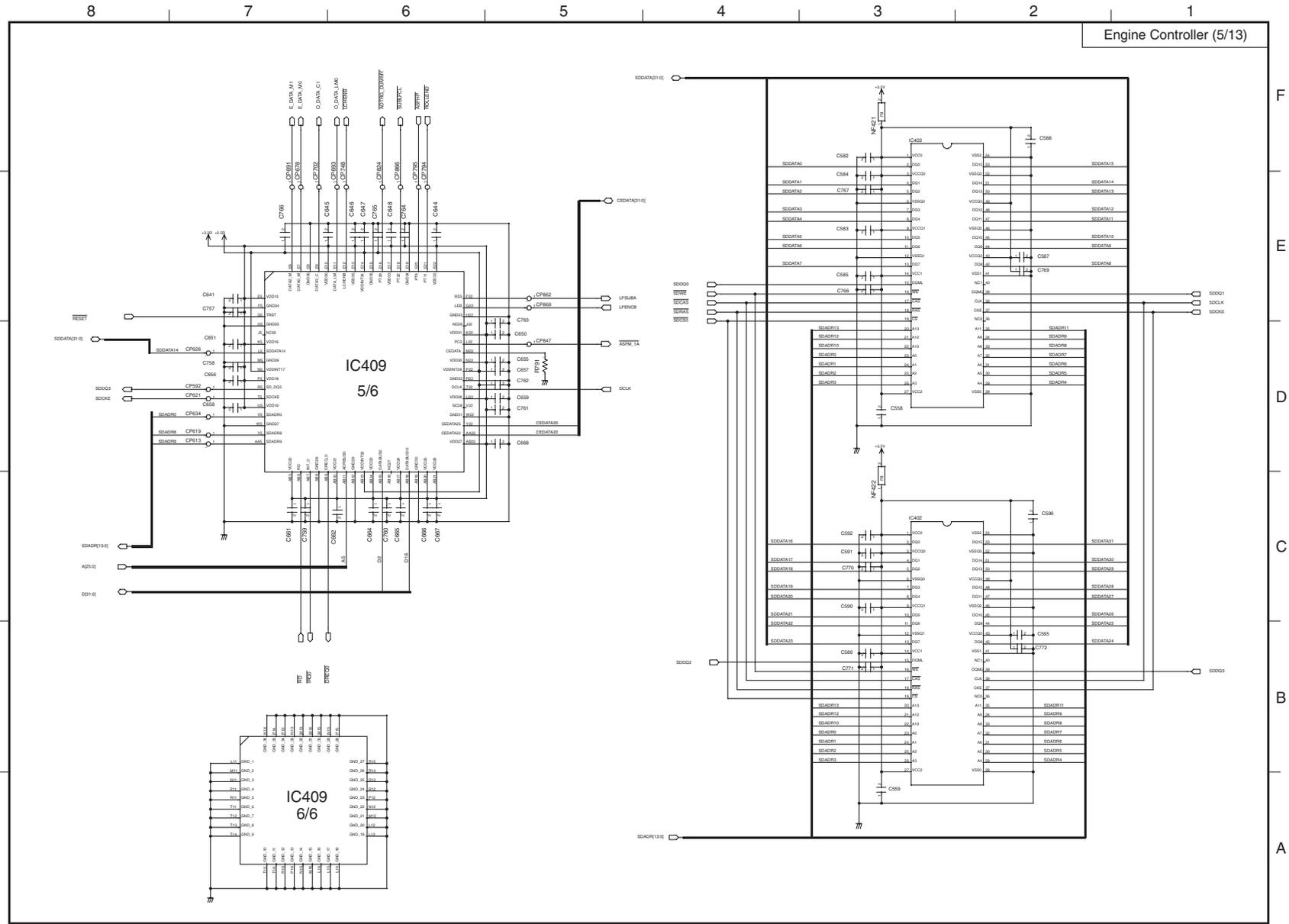


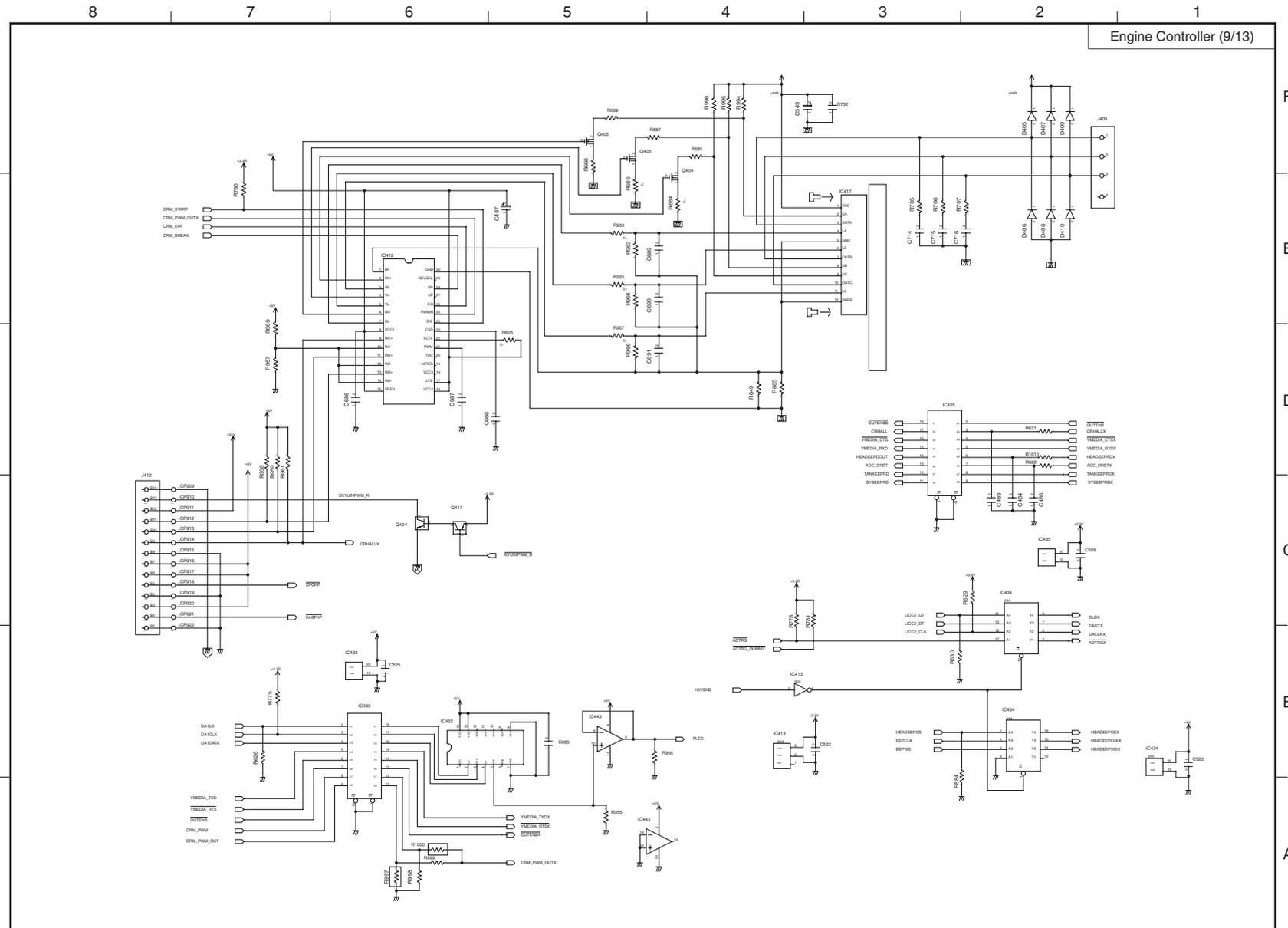


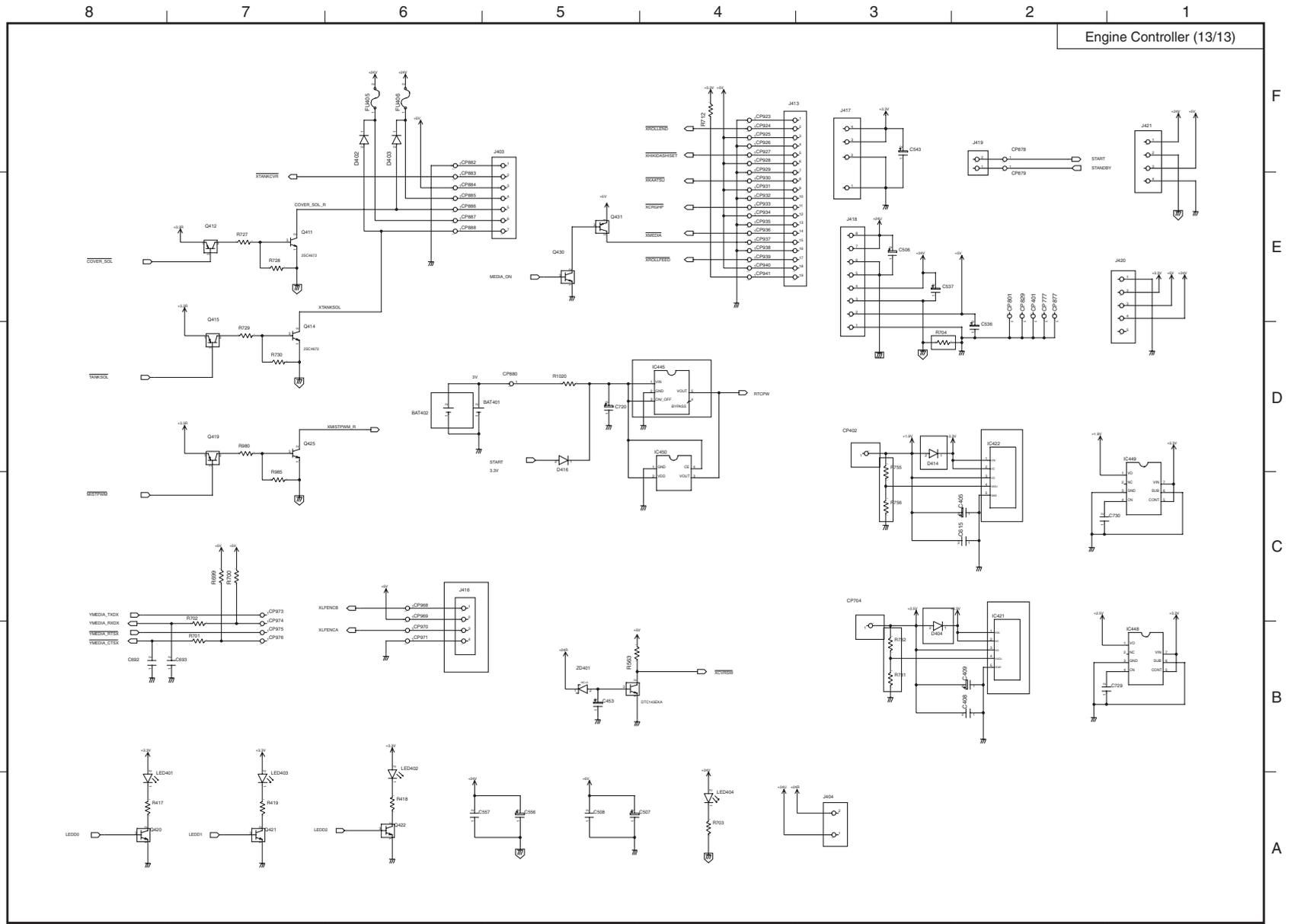




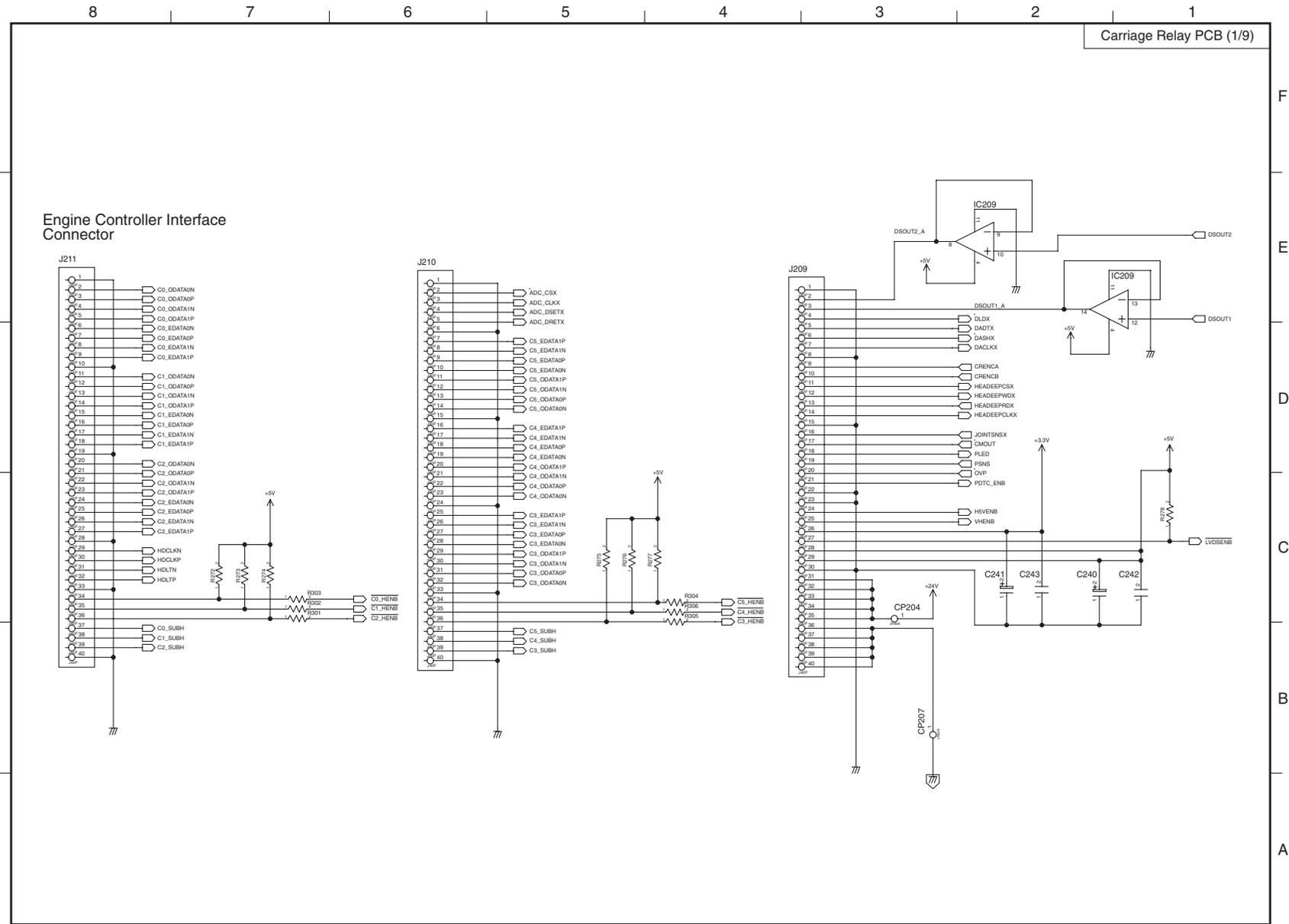


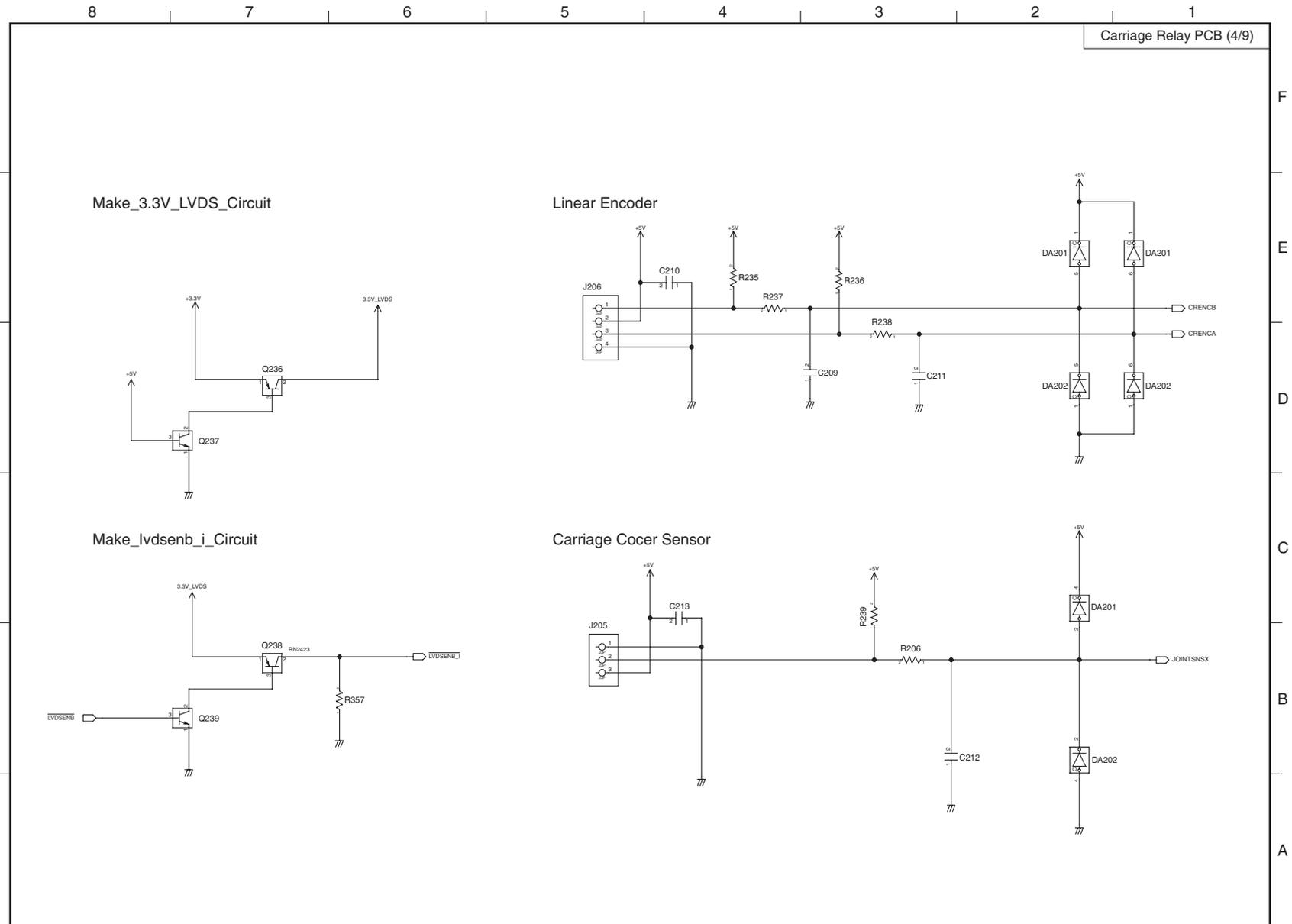


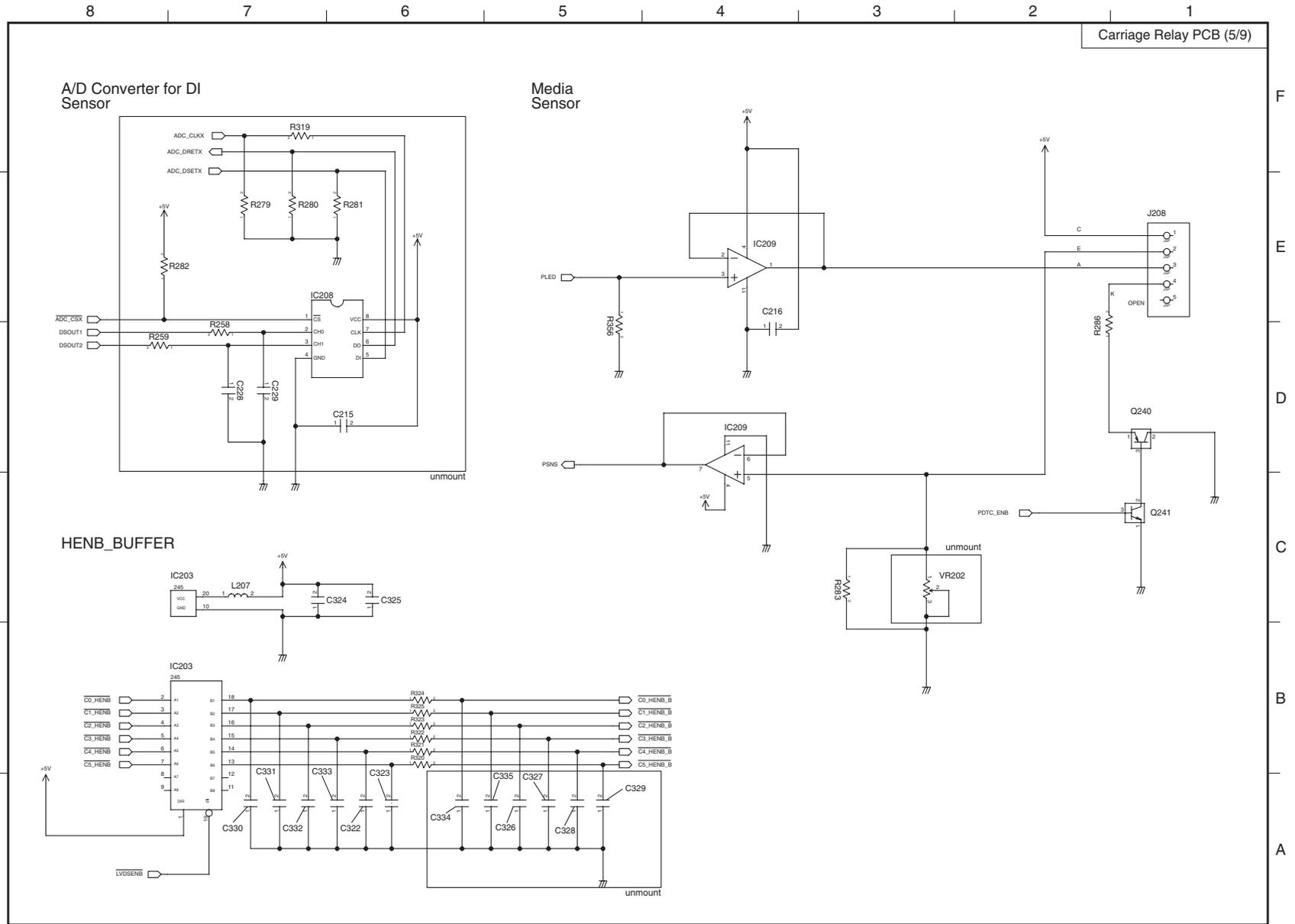


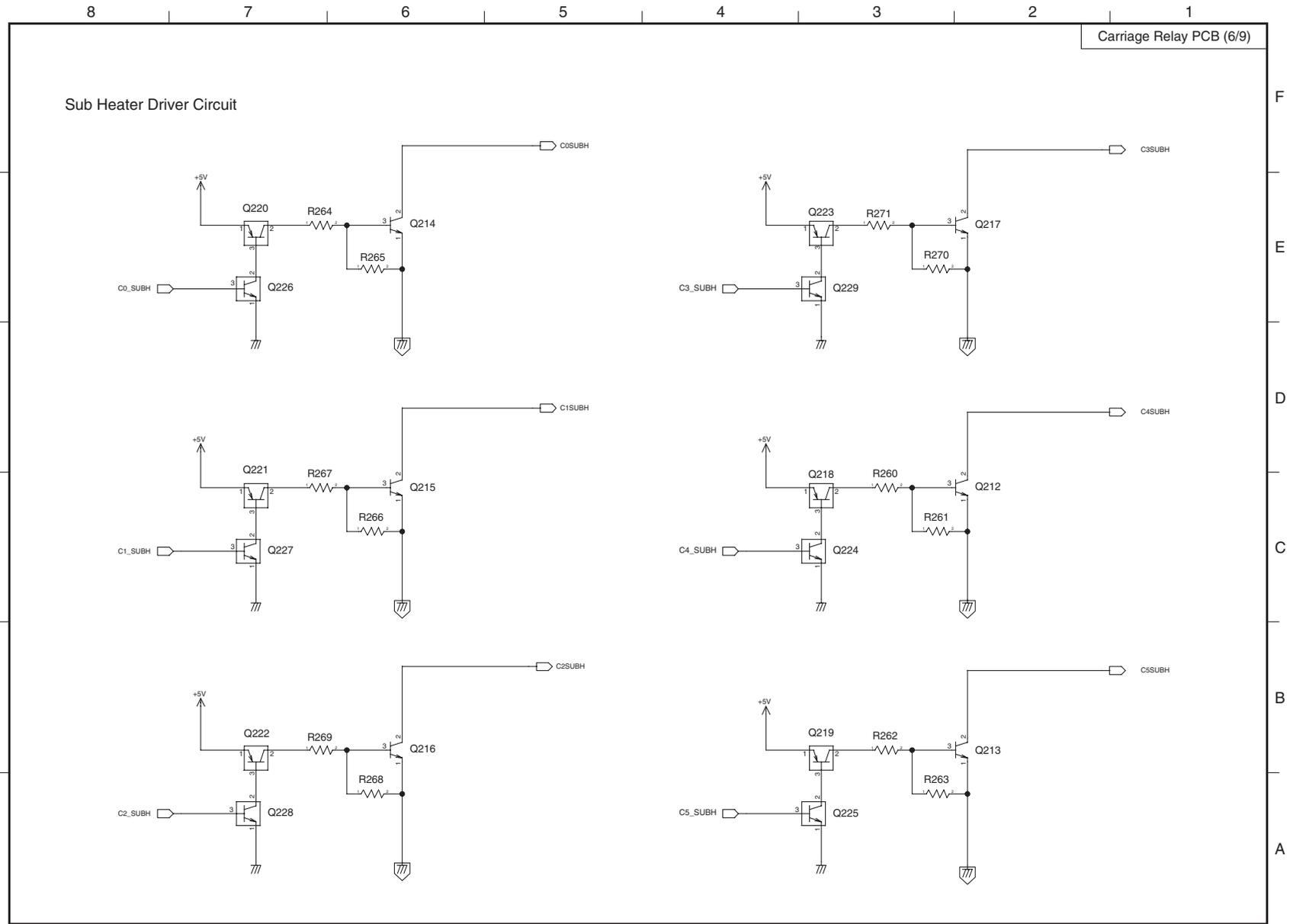


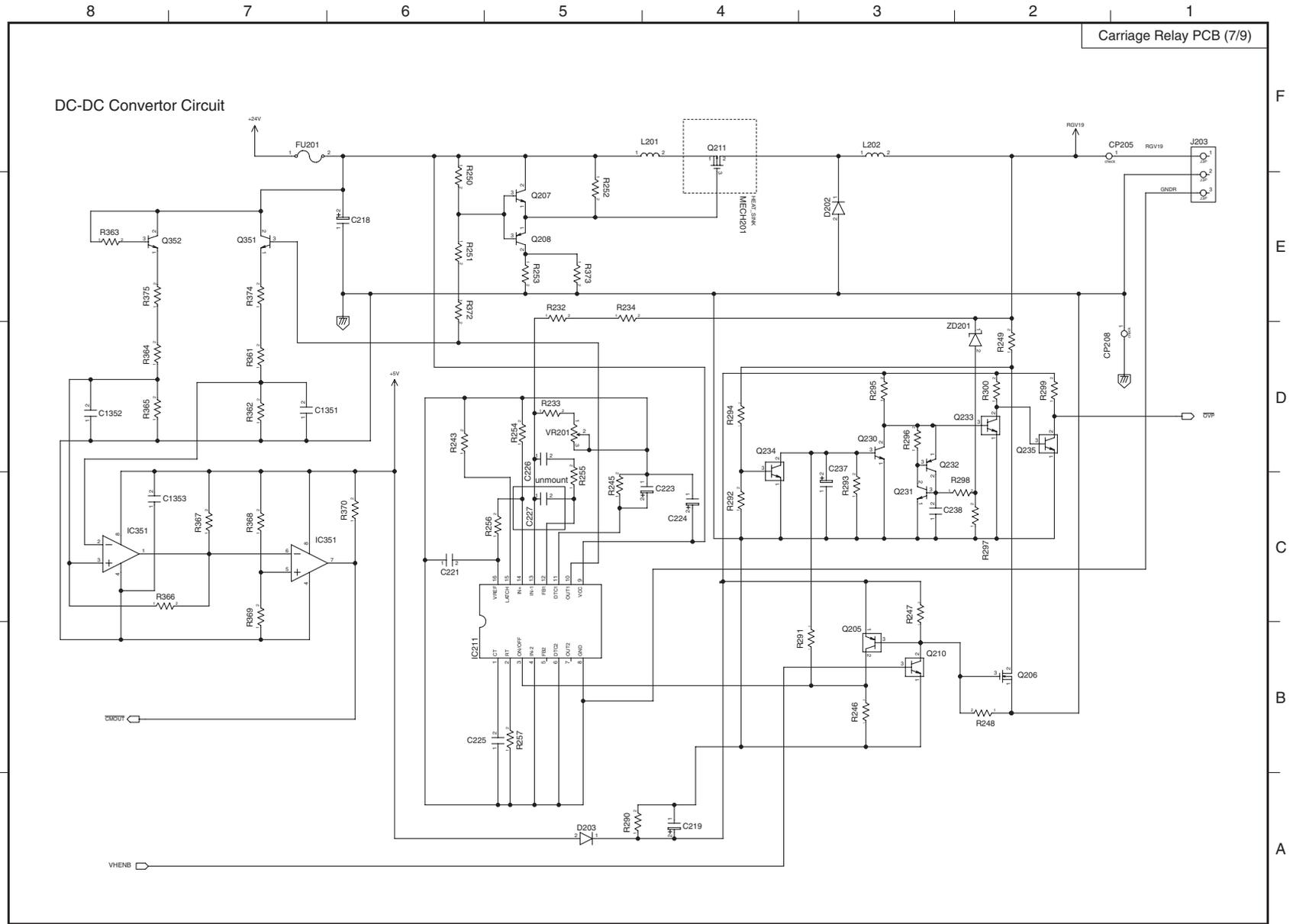
9.4 Carriage Relay PCB

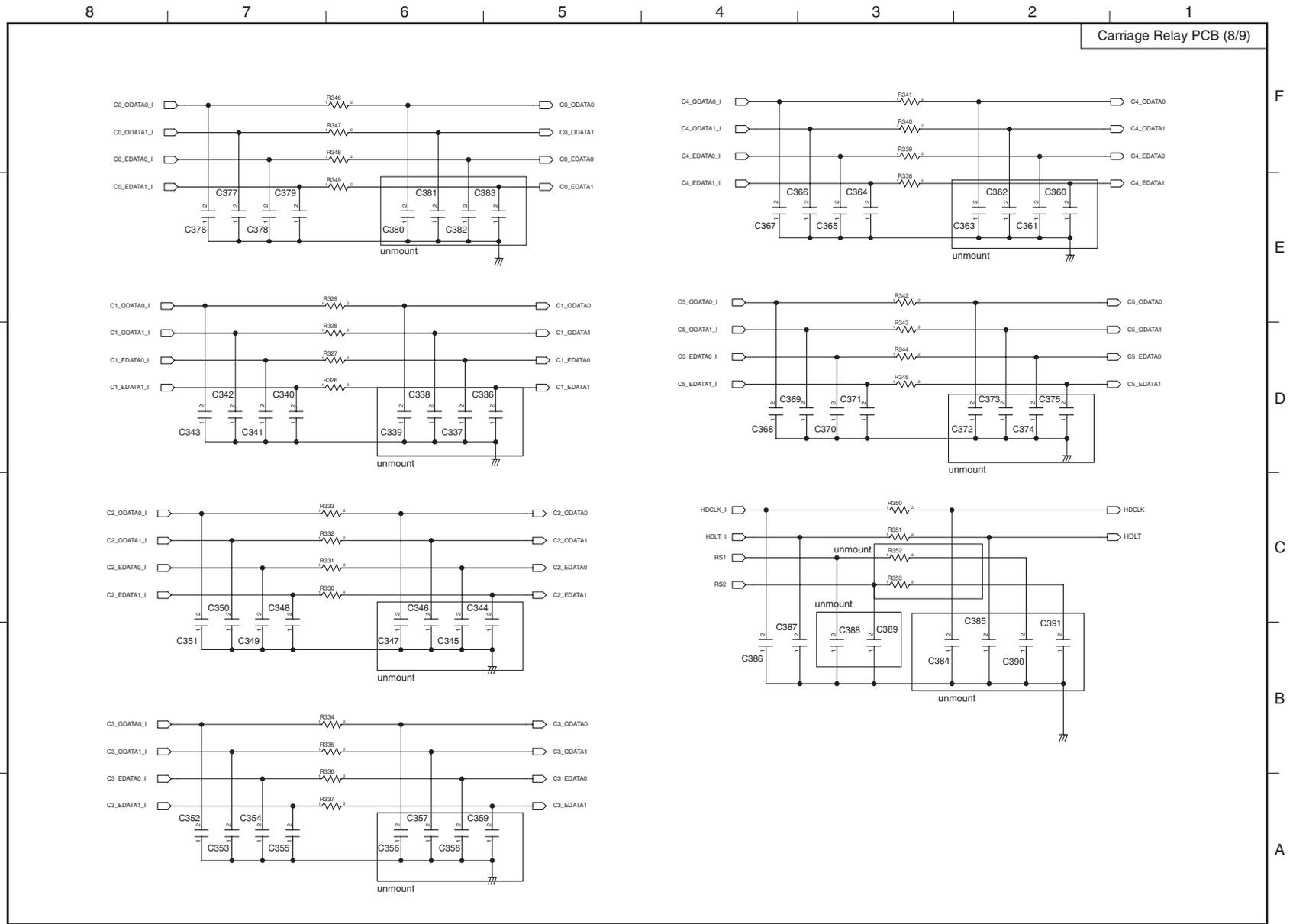


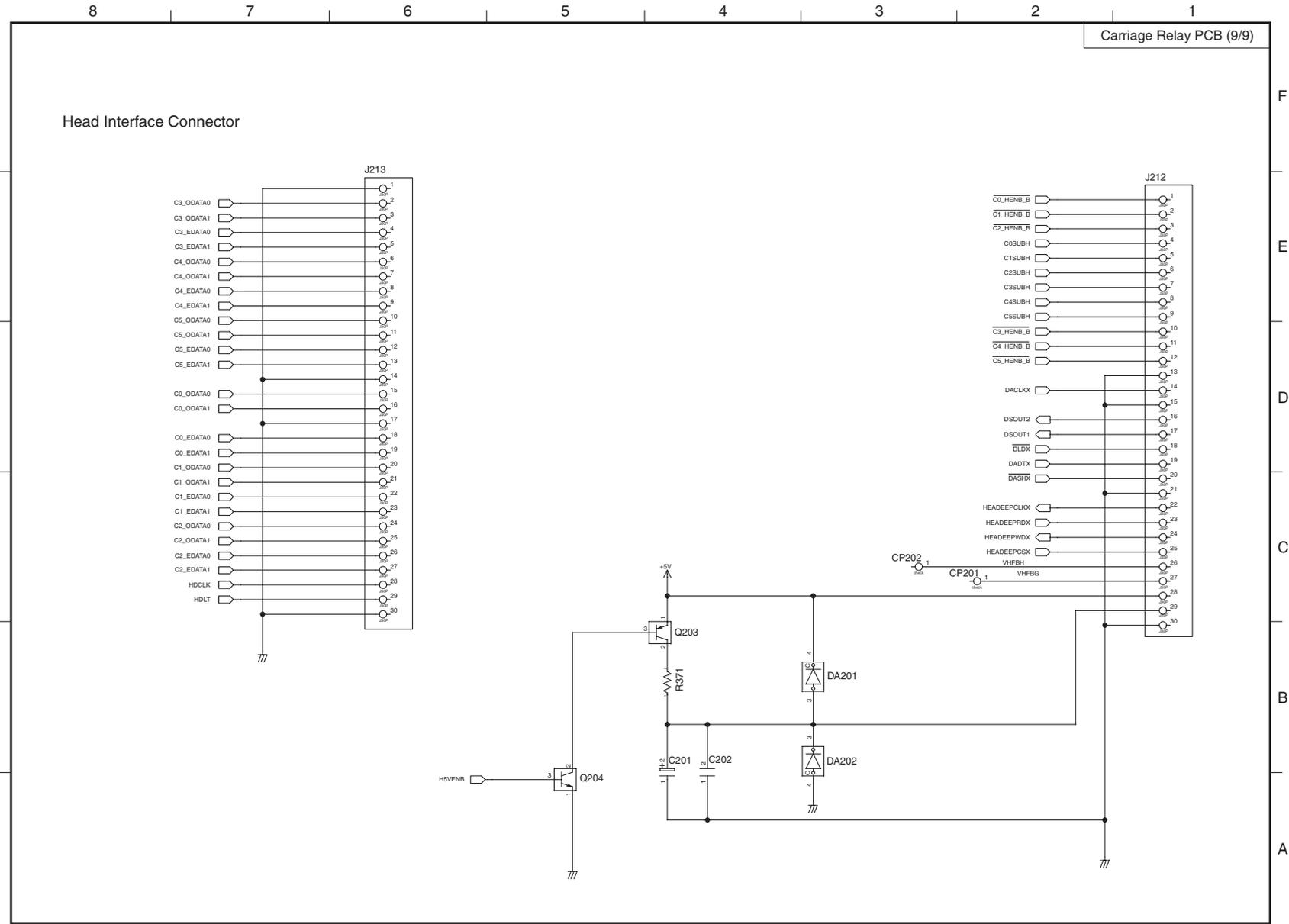




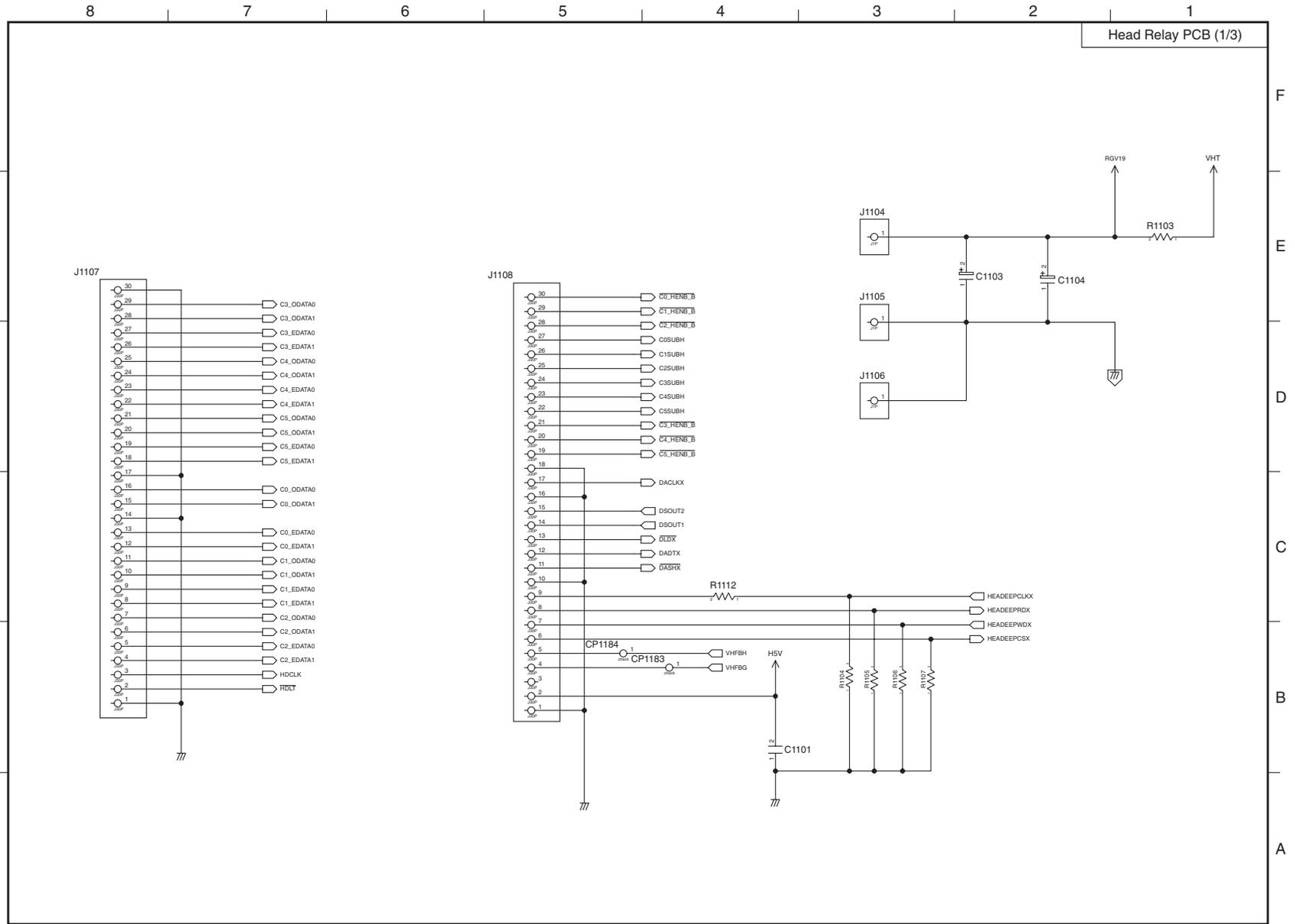


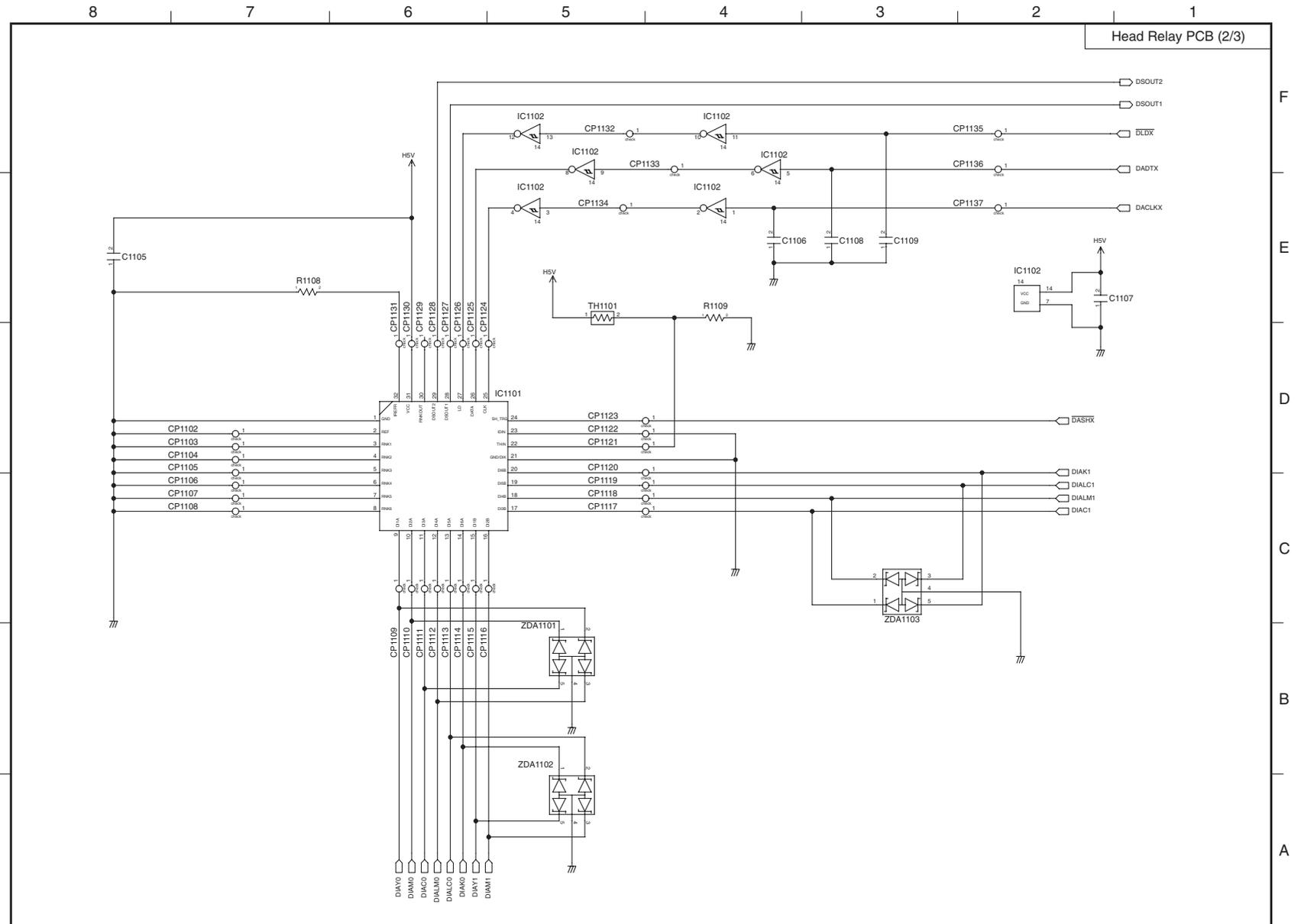


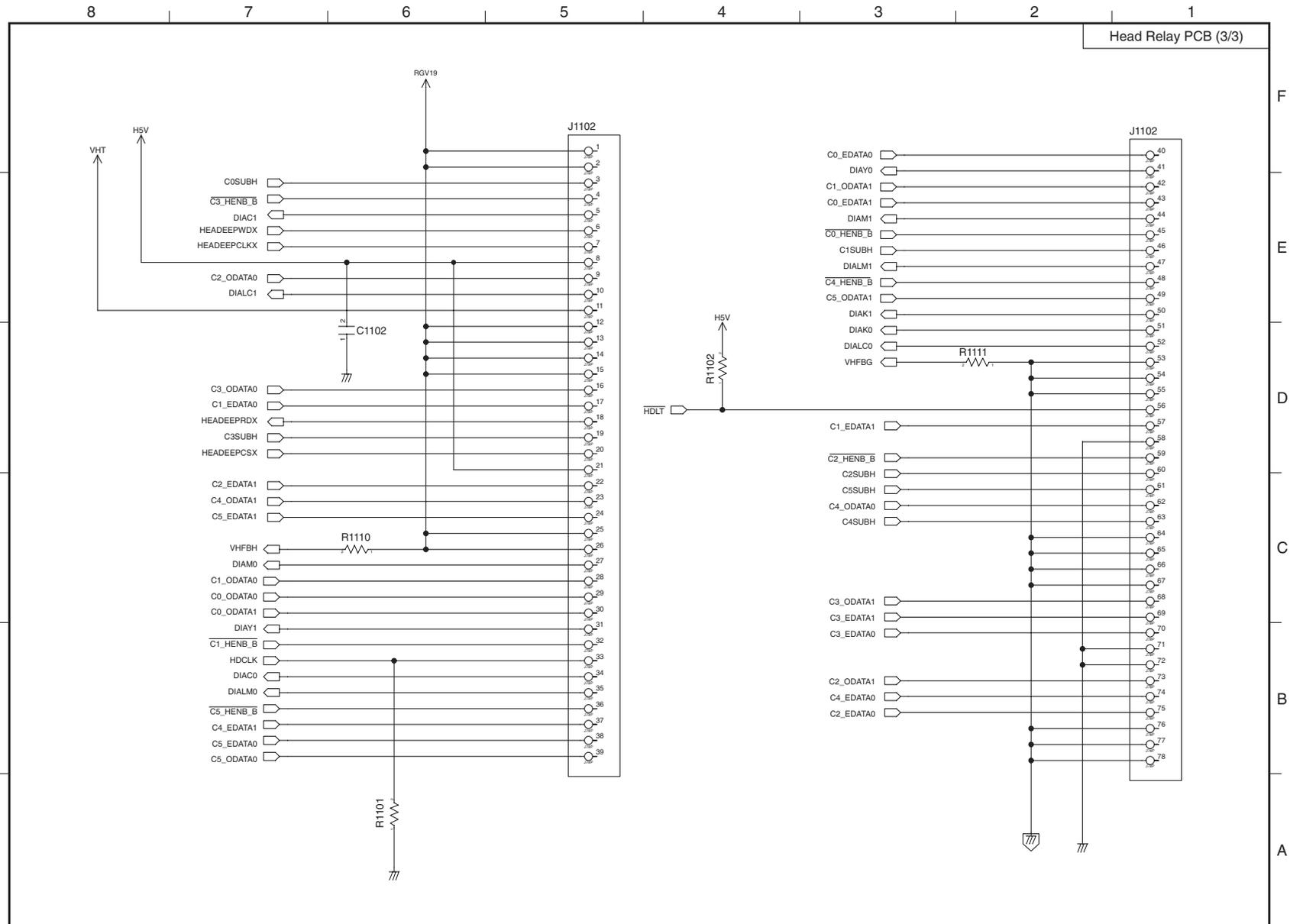




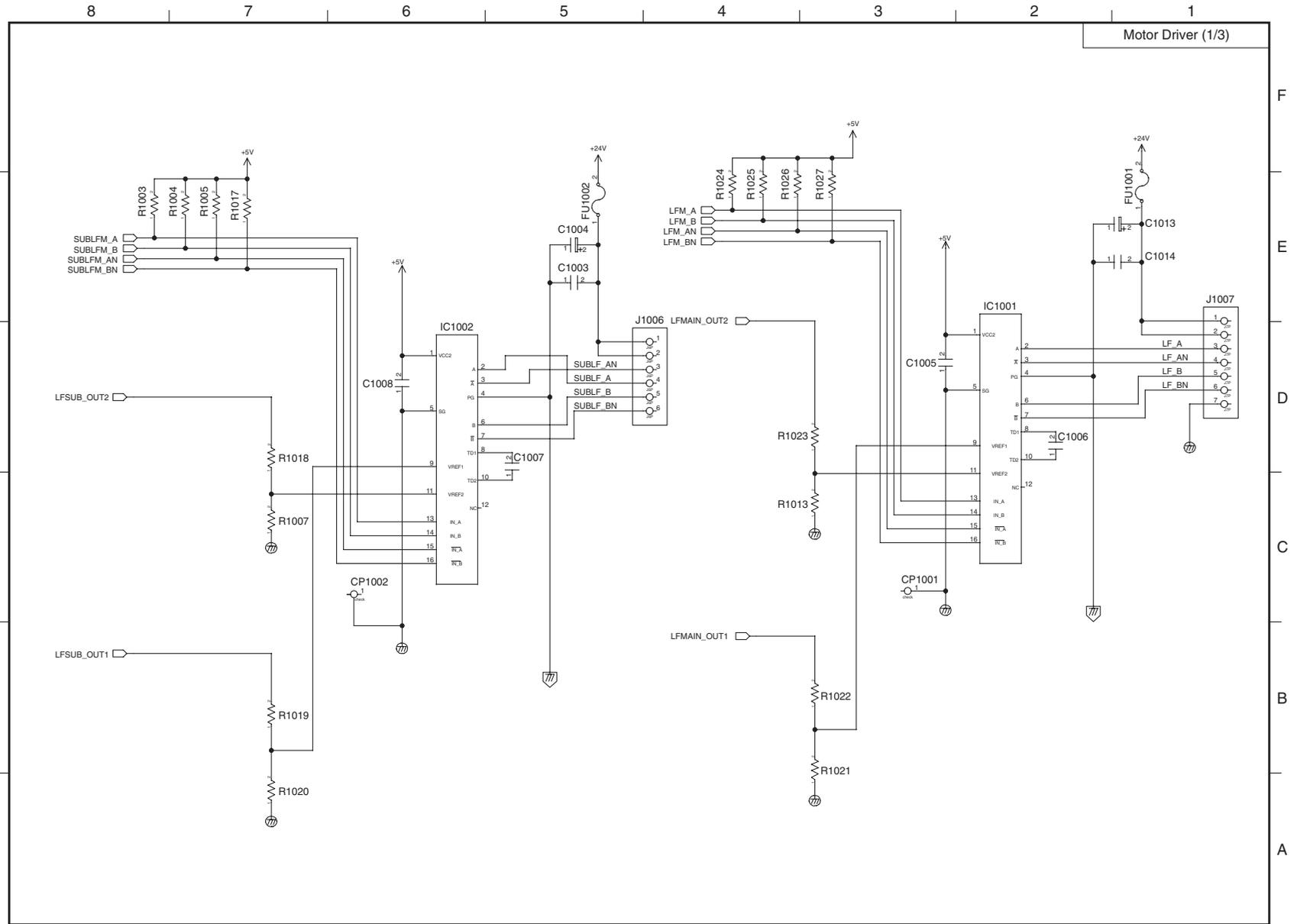
9.5 Head Relay PCB

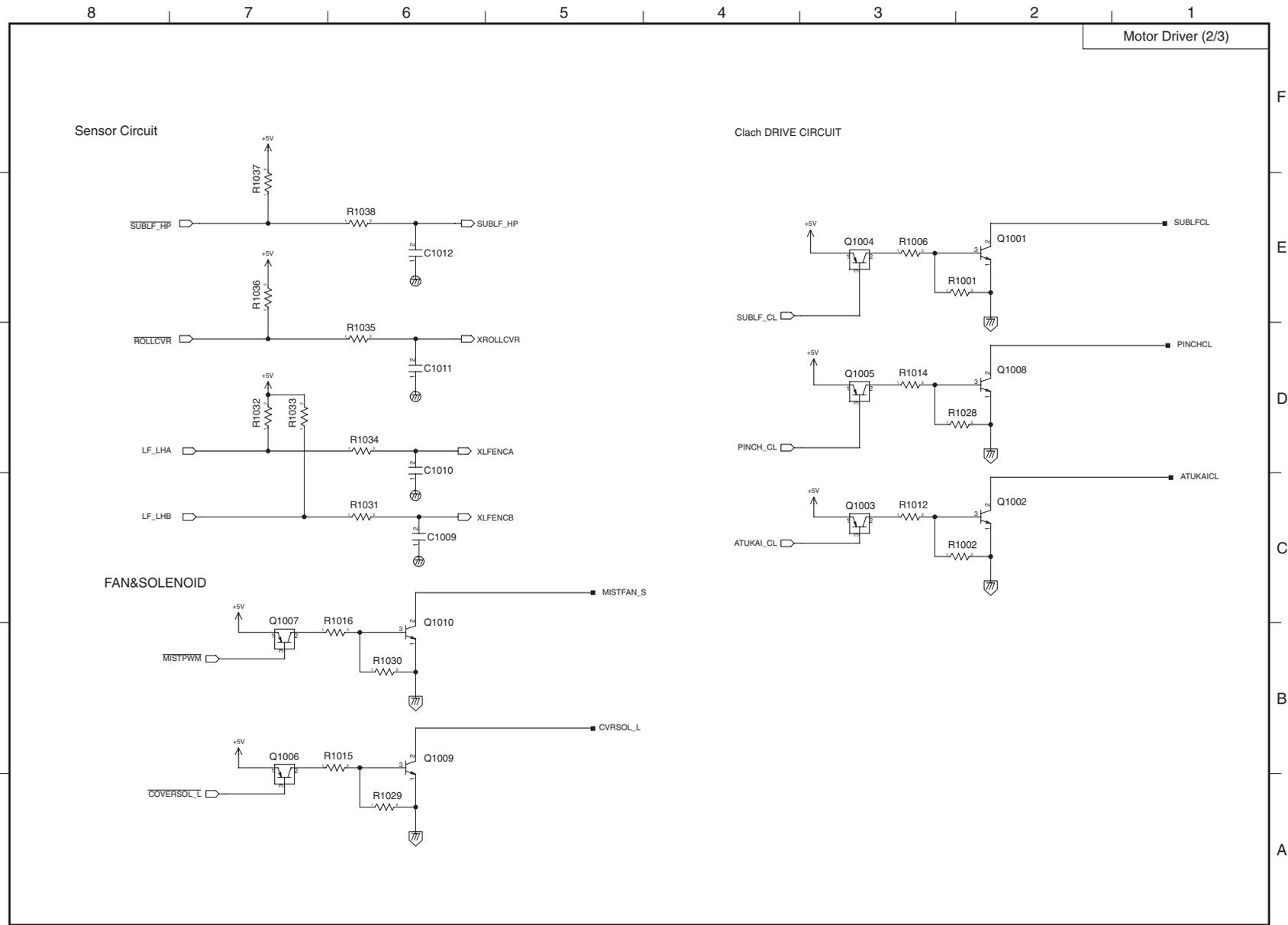


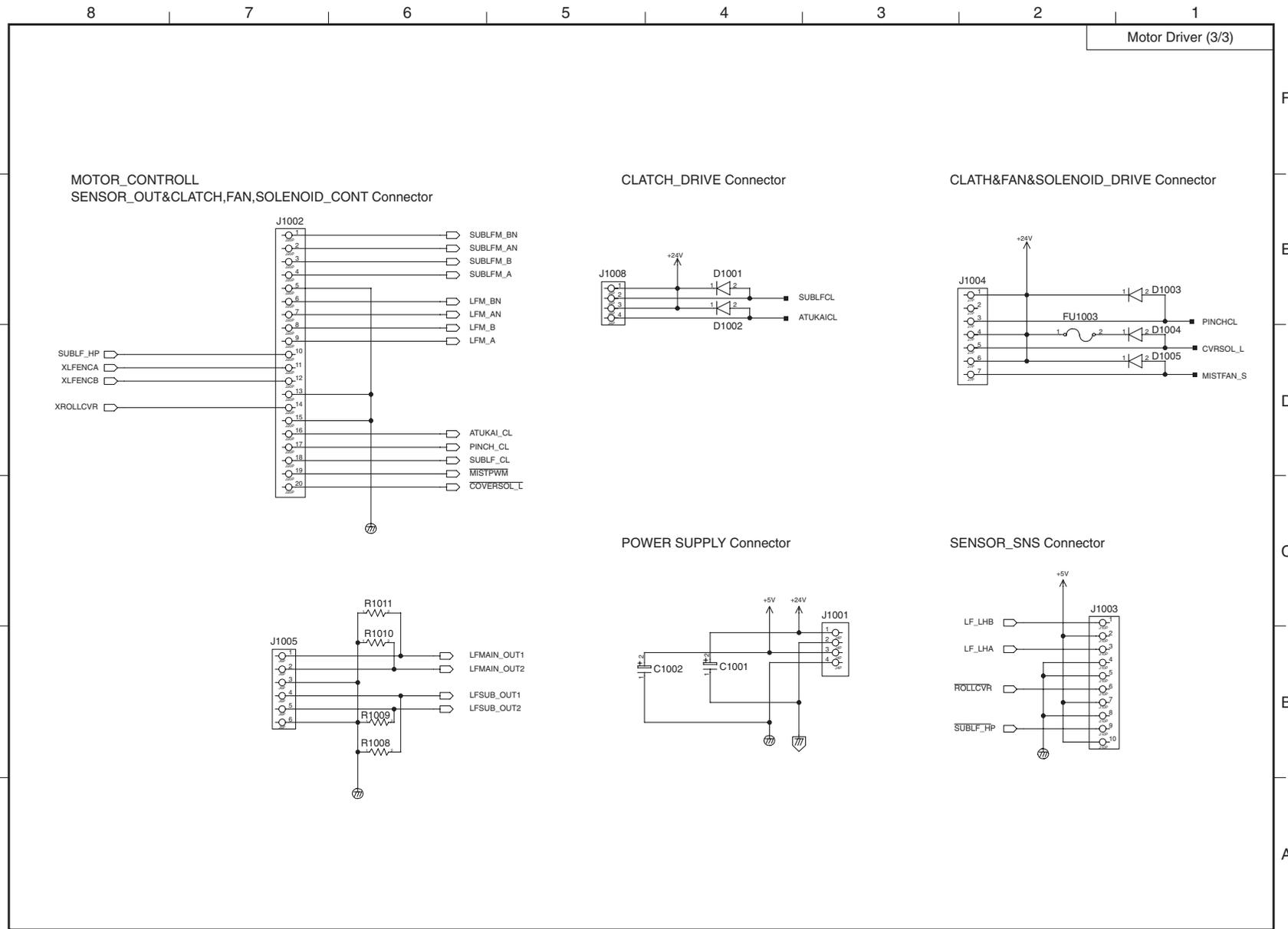




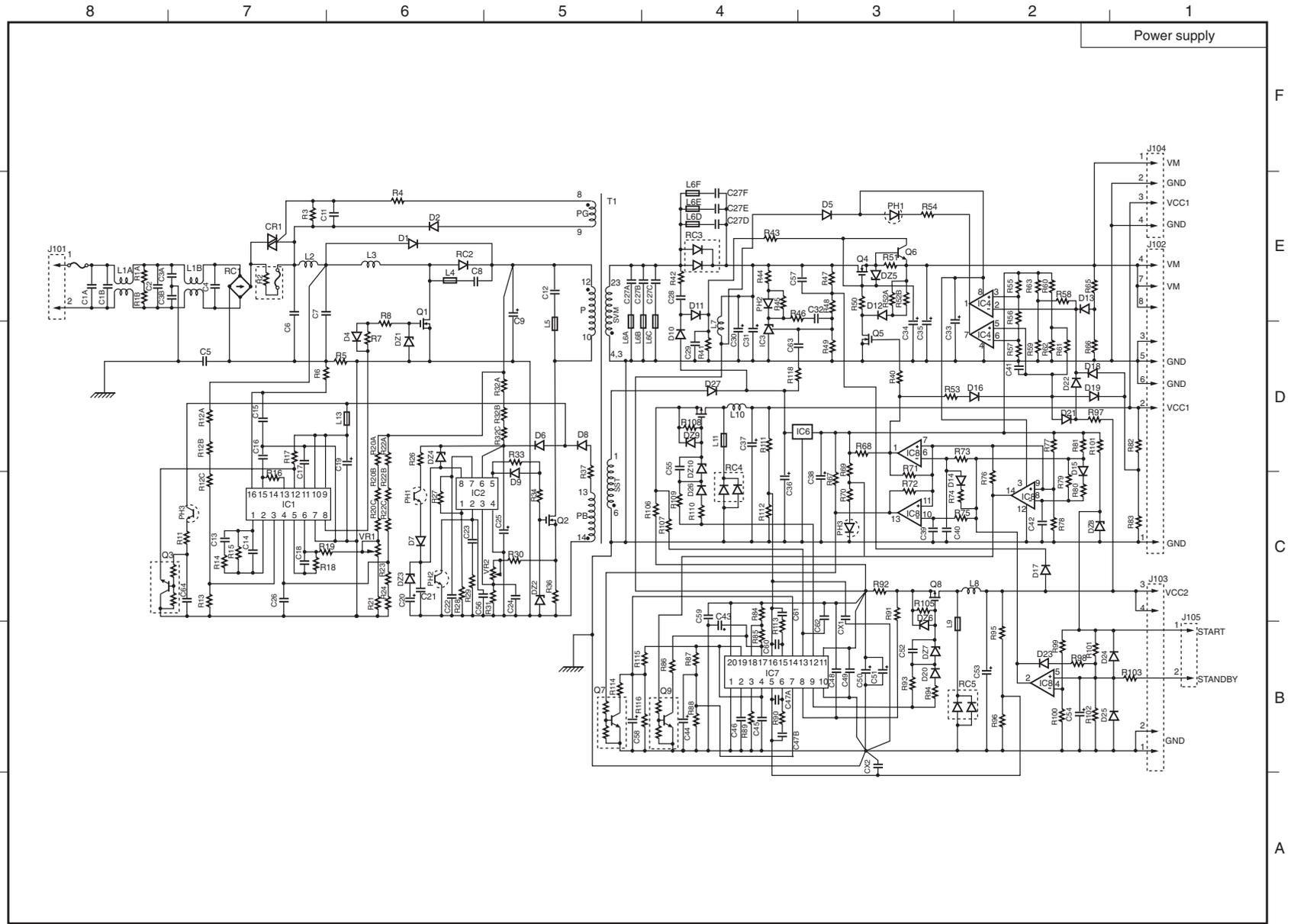
9.6 Motor Driver







9.7 Power Supply





This document is printed
on 100% recycled paper.

Canon

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

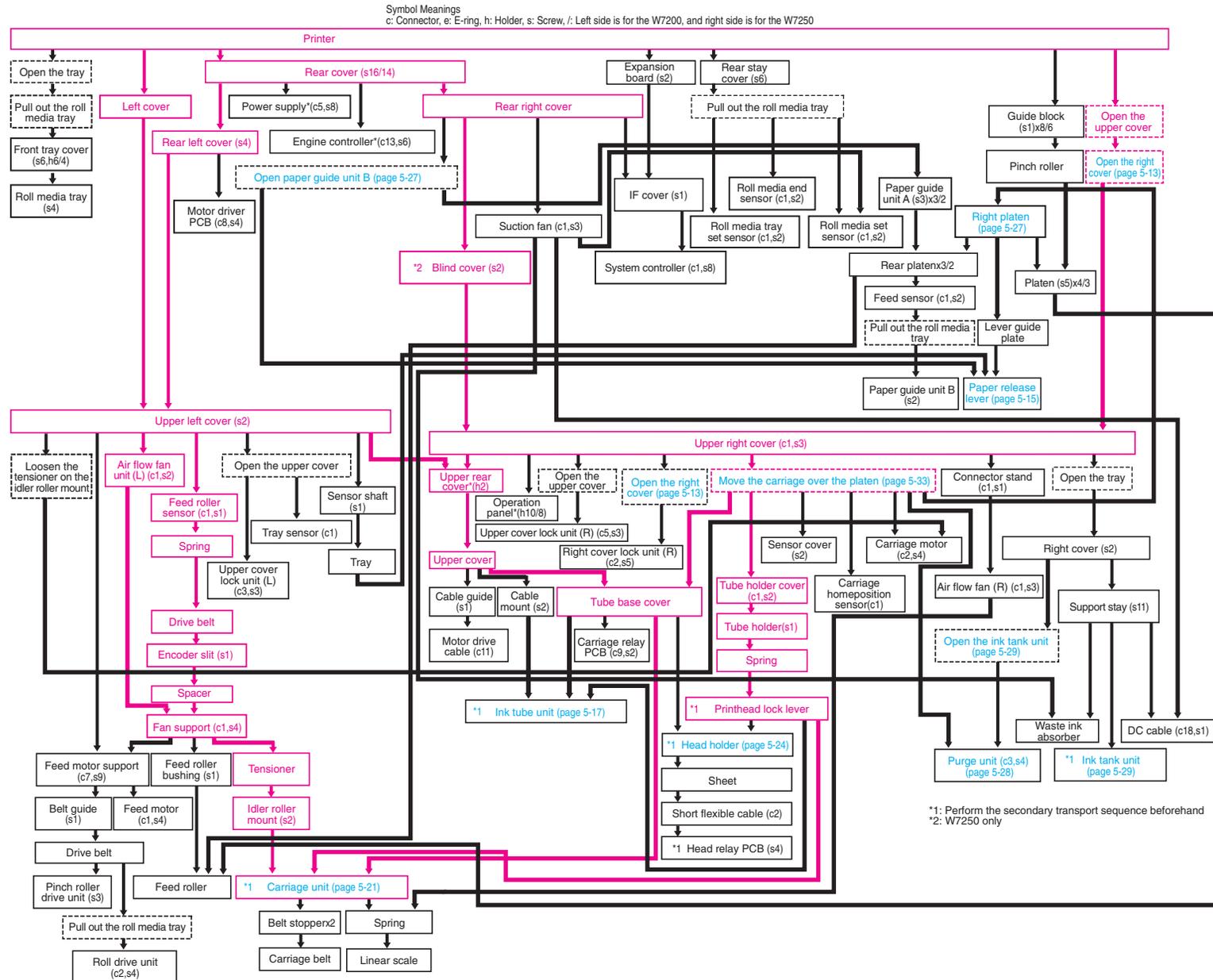


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

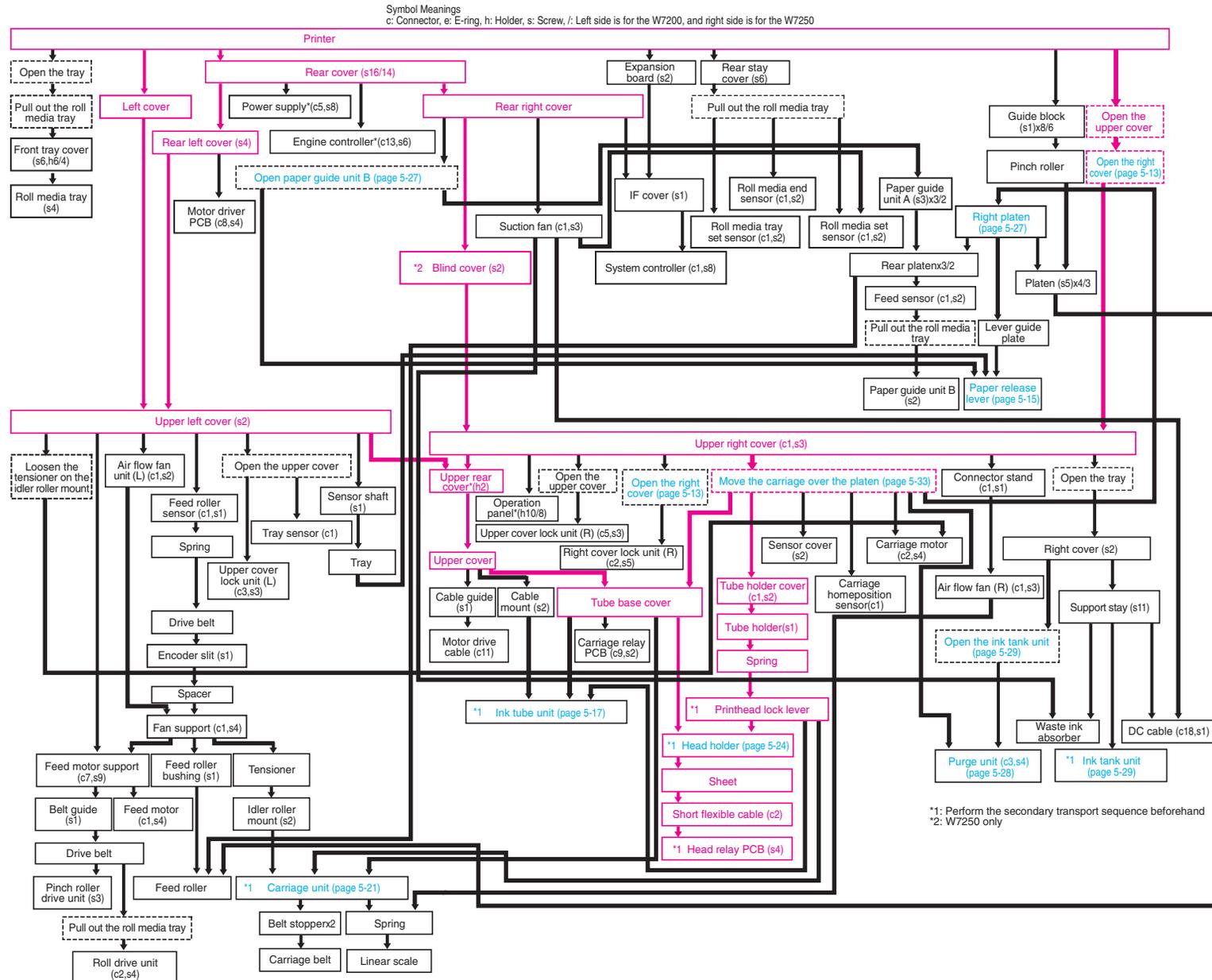


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

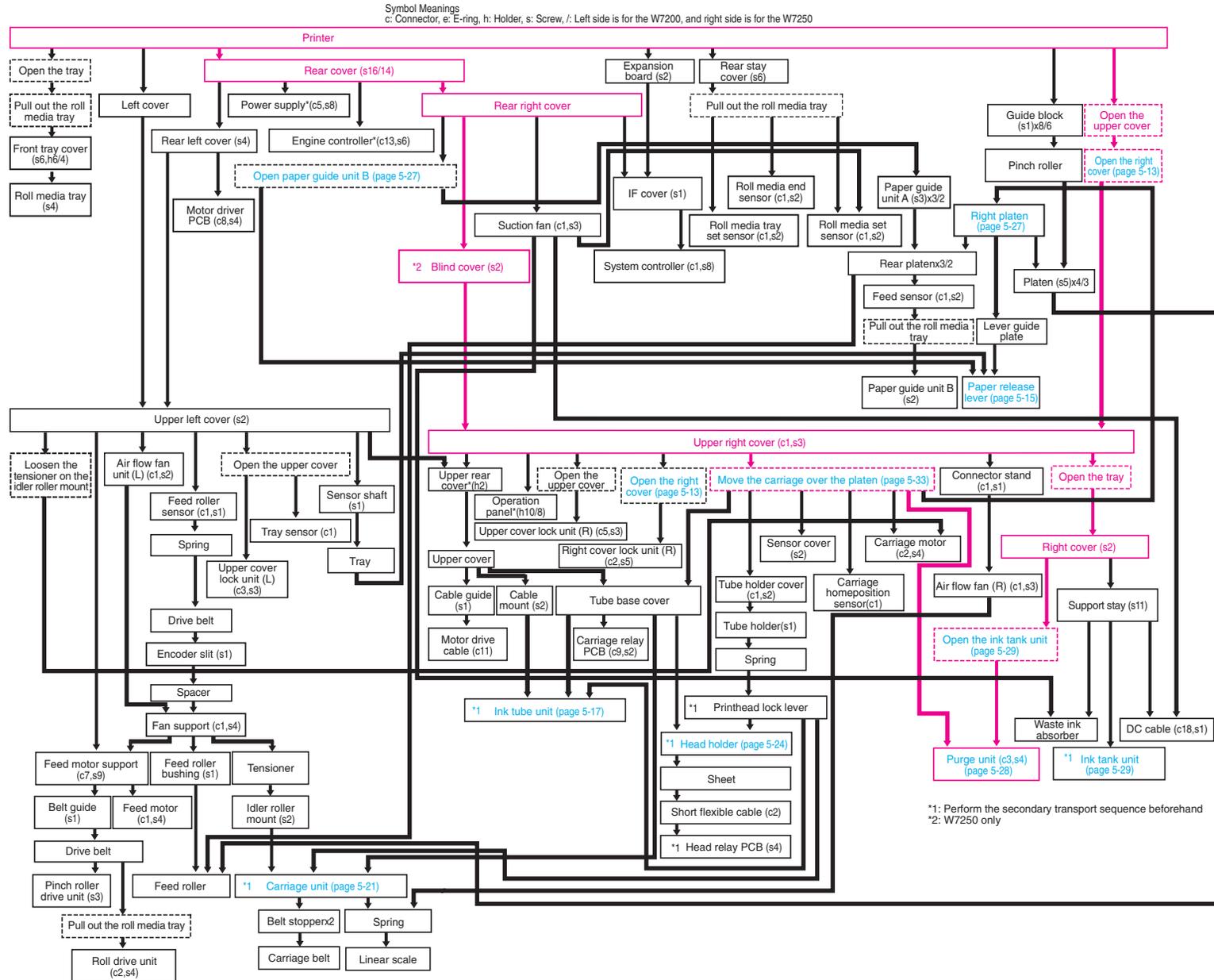


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

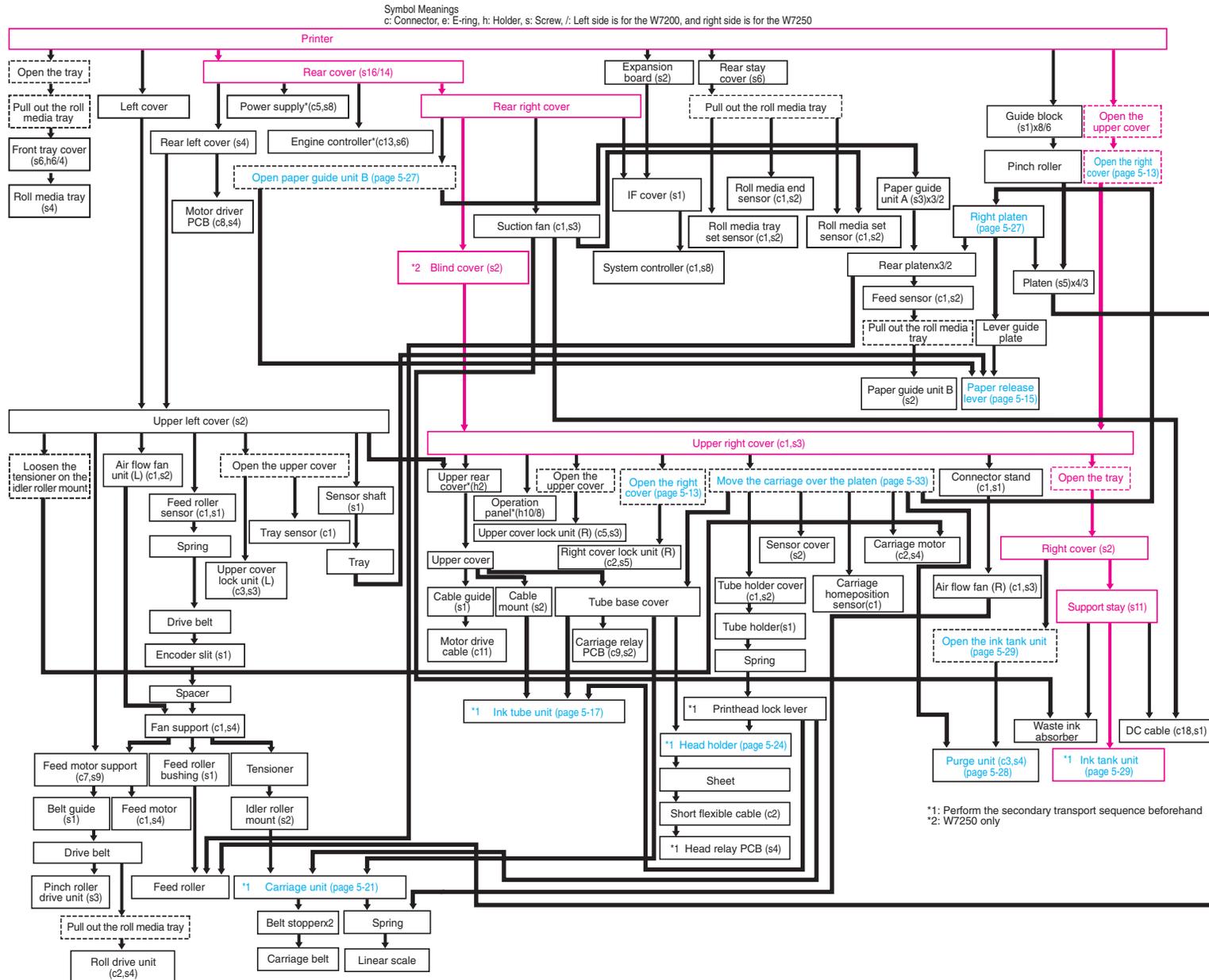


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

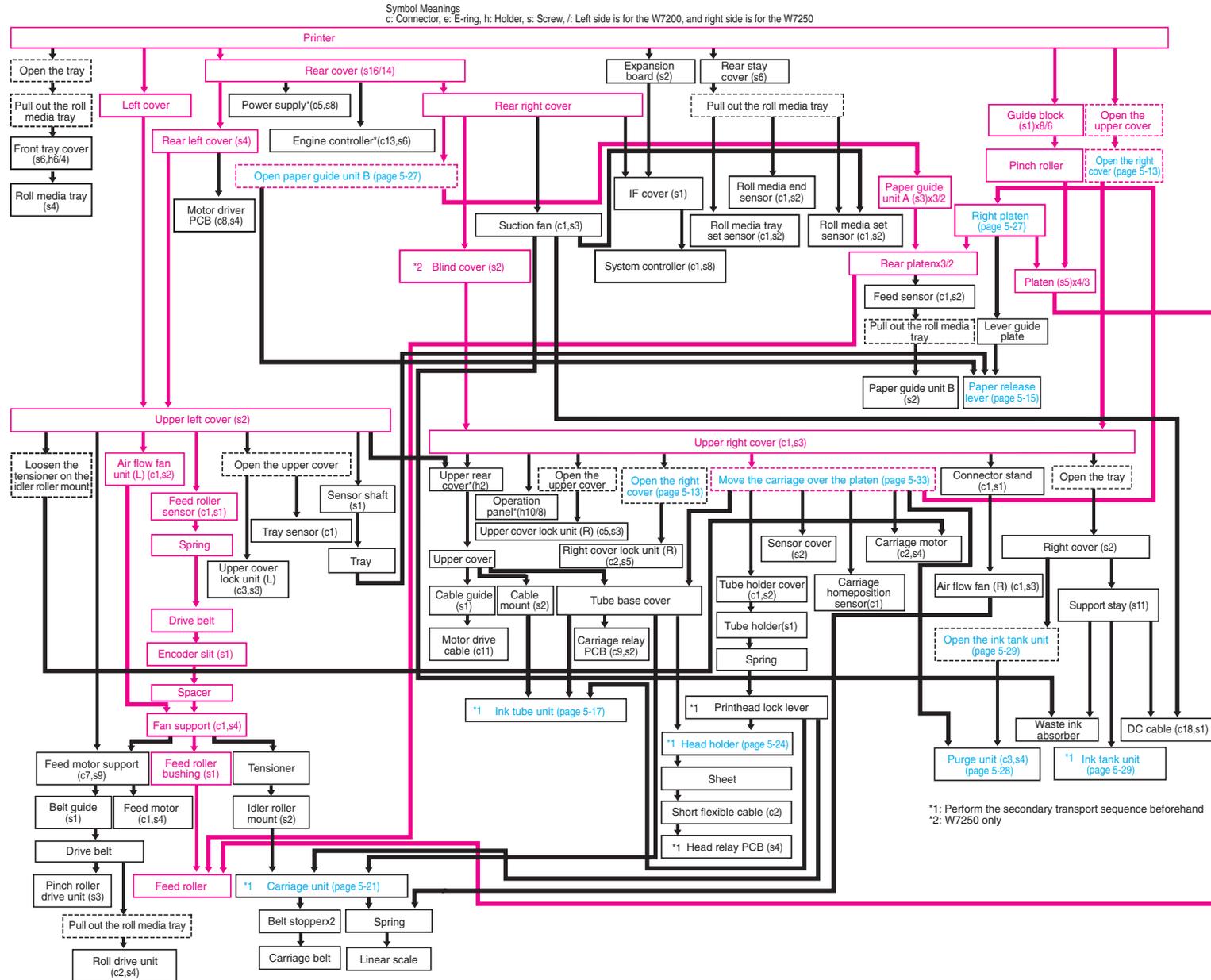


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

5.1.1 Disassembly/assembly flowcharts for major parts

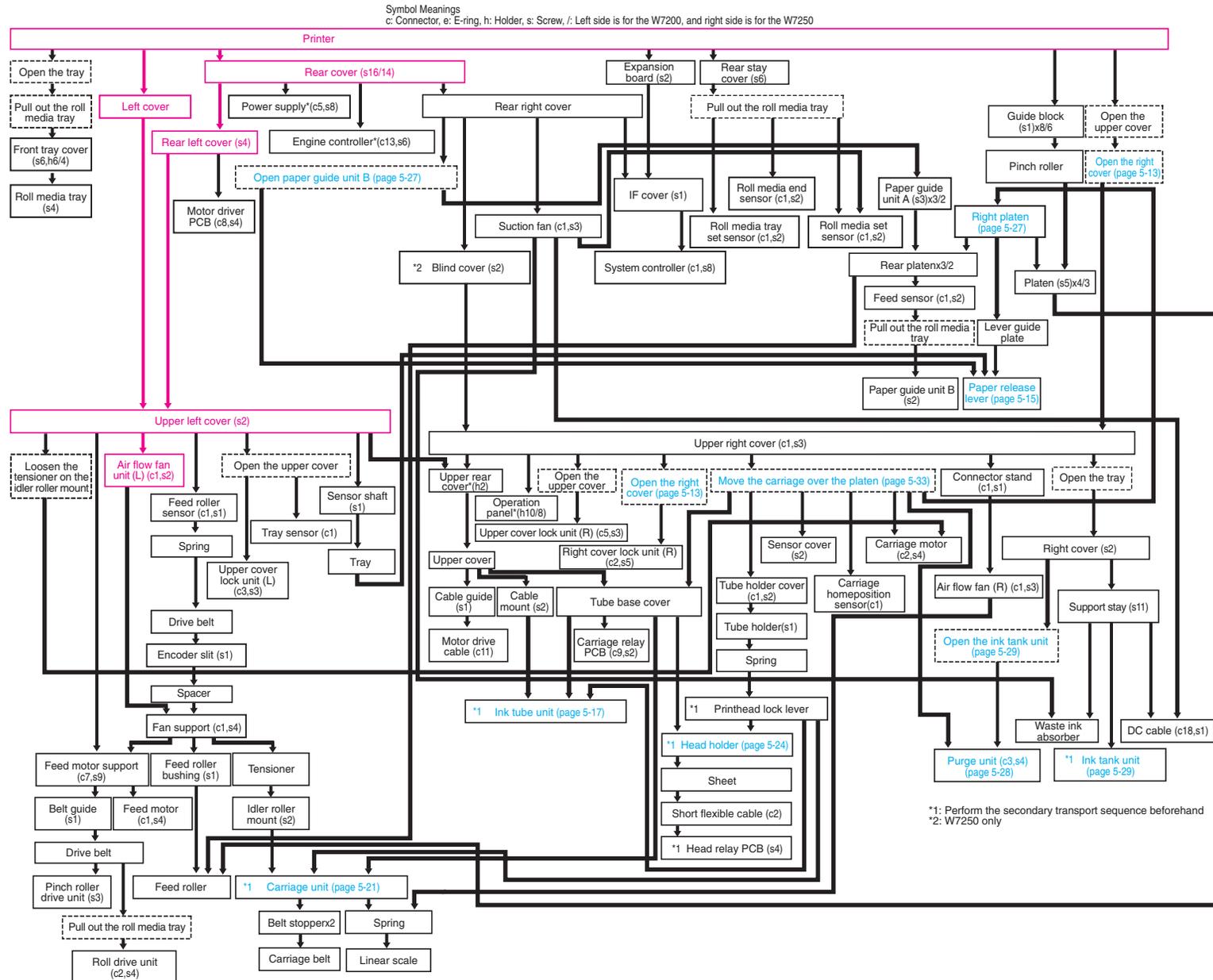


Figure 5-7 Disassembly/Assembly Flowcharts for Major Parts

W7200 W7250 PARTS CATALOG



Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified person to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products. This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Corrections

This manual could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in the products. When changes occur in applicable products or in the content of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period. Canon will issue a new editions of this manual.

The following paragraph does not apply to any countries where such provisions are inconsistent with local law.

Trademarks

The product names and company names described in this manual are the registered trademarks of the individual companies.

Copyright

This manual is copyrighted with all rights reserved. Under the copyright laws, this manual may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the written consent of Canon Inc.

Copyright © 2002 by Canon Inc.

CANON INC.

NB Quality Assurance Div.

30-2 Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku,

Tokyo 146-8501, Japan

DTP System

This manual was produced on an Apple® Power Macintosh® G3 personal computer and Canon LBP-2030PS laser beam printer, final pages were printed on Genasett 3100Q.

Parts layout illustrations and Logotypes were created using MACROMEDIA® FreeHand® 7J.

Pattern drawing were scanned by CanoScan 600 scanner with Adobe® photoshop®.

Documents and page layouts were created using QuarkXpress® 3.3J.

Parts lists were created using Helix Technologies® Herix Xpress® and converted to EPS files.

I. CONTENTS

- A. PARTS LAYOUT & PARTS LIST
- B. SCREWS & WASHERS LIST
- C. NUMERICAL INDEX

II. ABOUT THIS MANUAL

A. PARTS LAYOUT & PARTS LIST

Parts layout illustration

a) Parts search

Find a part from the parts layout illustration and find its key number from the parts list to identify the part number and name. For screws, nuts, washers, lock washers, pins, spacers, see SCREWS & WASHERS LIST.

Note: If parts have the same or similar shape but different specifications, their key number is assigned to several part numbers and names in the parts list.

b) Parts replacement procedure

To replace parts, the parts layout illustrations have figure numbers according to the disassembly procedure of the product. The parts that require careful work are shown the illustration.

C) TOOL LIST

This is a list of tools used for servicing products.

Parts list

a) FIGURE & KEY No.

The FIGURE & KEY No. column corresponds to the key numbers assigned to the parts in the parts layout illustration. It also corresponds to the part locations printed on the PC board.

b) PART NUMBER

The PART NUMBER column gives the part numbers corresponding to the key numbers. To order a part, indicate the part number clearly.

Note: Parts marked NPN are not service parts.

c) RANK

The service parts with N in the RANK column are order parts.

d) QTY

The QTY column gives the number of parts in the corresponding components layout illustration.

e) DESCRIPTION

The DESCRIPTION column gives the part names in English.
To order a part, indicate the part name, too.

B. SCREWS & WASHERS LIST

This is a list of screws, nuts, washers, lock washers, pins, and spacers.

The QTY column does not give the number of parts used.

C. NUMERICAL INDEX

All the parts listed in this parts catalog are arranged in order of part number. You can identify part locations and names from the NUMERICAL INDEX.

A. PARTS LAYOUT & PARTS LIST

FIGURE 1 PRINTER & ACCESSORIES

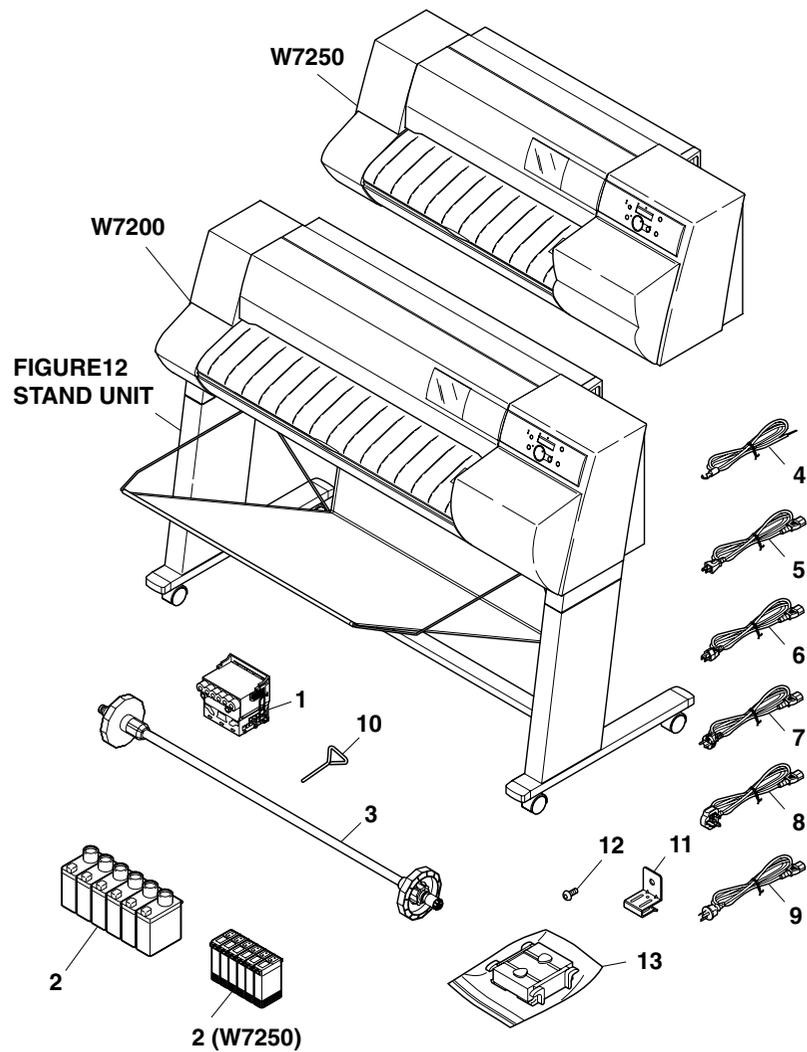


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
1- 1 2	NPN		1	PRINT HEAD	
	NPN		1	INK TANK(BK)	
	NPN		1	INK TANK(PC)	
	NPN		1	INK TANK(C)	
	NPN		1	INK TANK(PM)	
3	NPN		1	INK TANK(M)	
	NPN		1	INK TANK(Y)	
	NPN		1	ROLL HOLDER SET	
4	FH2-5006-000		1	WIRE, GROUNDING	
5	QH2-2627-000		1	CORD, POWER	100V
6	QH2-2628-000		1	CORD, POWER	120V(UL)
7	QH2-2629-000		1	CORD, POWER	220V-240V
8	QH2-2630-000		1	CORD, POWER	240V(UK)
9	QH2-2631-000		1	CORD. POWER	240V(AUS)
10	NPN		1	HEX KEY WRENCH	
11	QE1-3126-000		1	STOPPER, BELT	
12	QE1-2334-000		1	SCREW, ALLEN, M4X6	
13	QM1-0783-000		1	RAIL CLEANER ASS'Y	

FIGURE 2 COVERS (1)

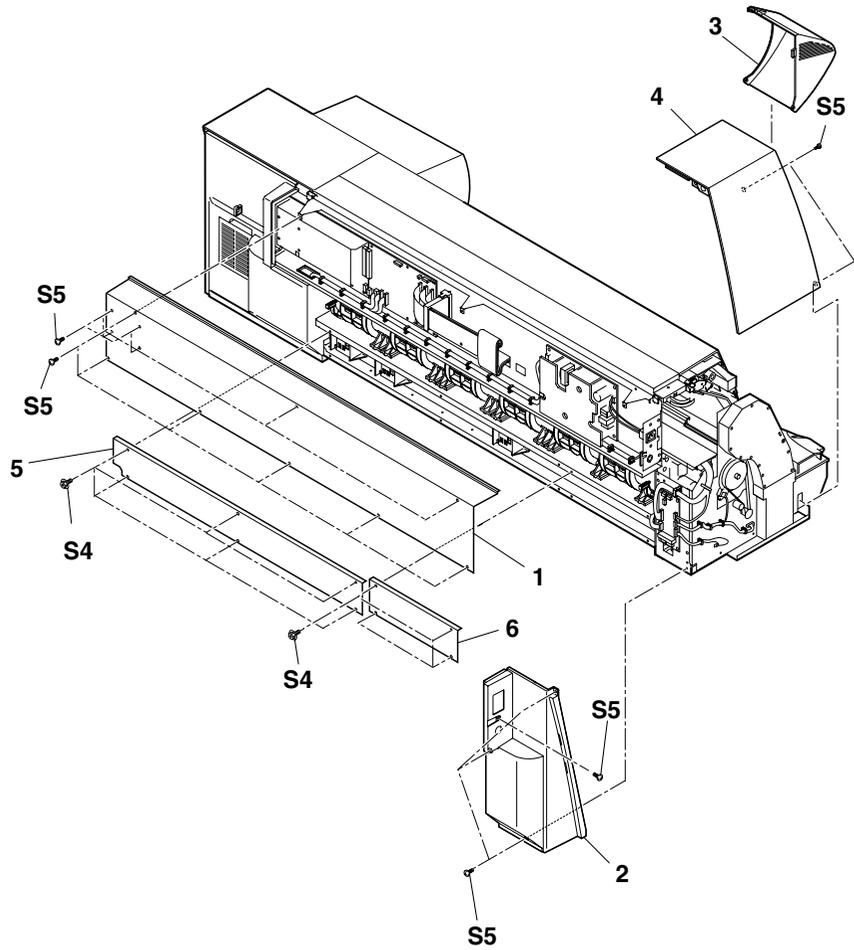


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
2- 1	QE1-2710-000		1	COVER, REAR	W7200
	QE1-3031-000		1	COVER, REAR	W7250
2	QE1-2708-000		1	COVER, REAR LEFT	W7200
	QM1-0735-000		1	REAR LEFT COVER UNIT	W7250
3	QM1-0779-000		1	LEFT COVER UNIT	
4	QM1-0638-000		1	UPPER LEFT COVER UNIT	
5	QE1-2713-000		1	COVER, STAY, REAR	W7200 ONLY
6	QE1-2942-000		1	COVER, STAY, REAR	

FIGURE 3 COVERS (2)

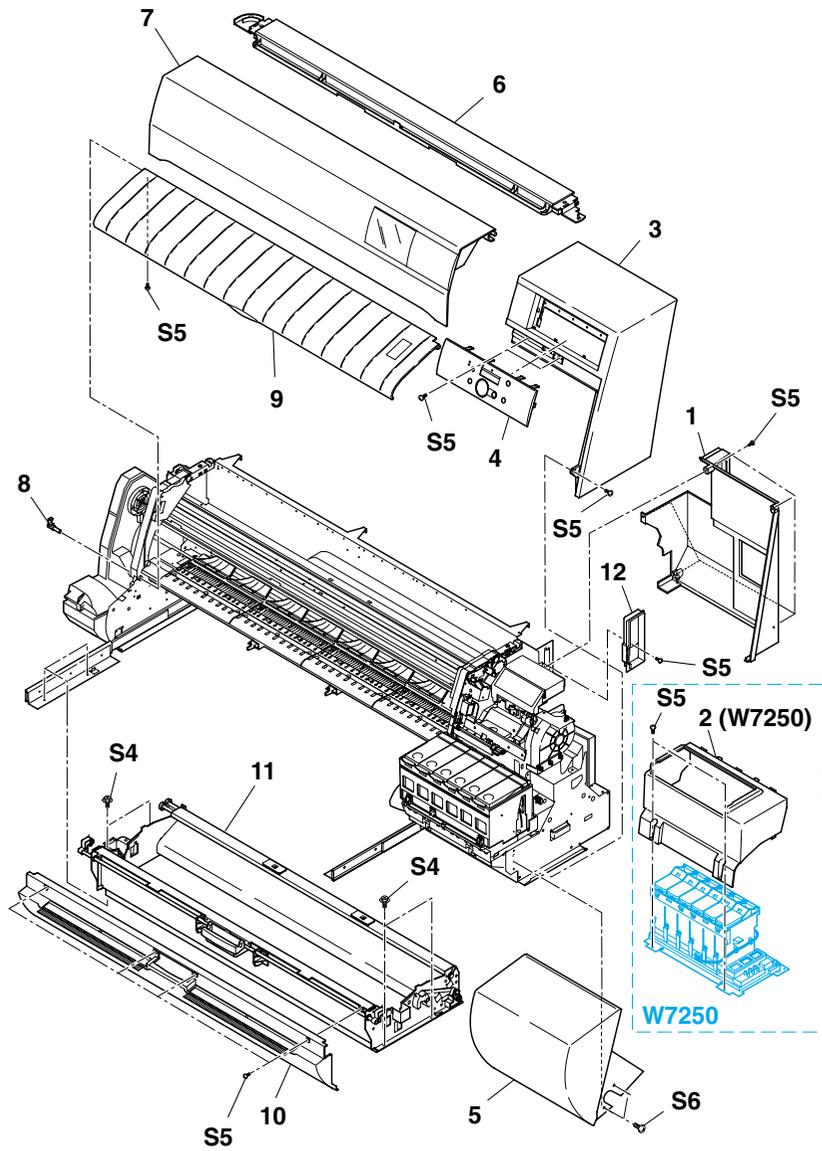


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
3- 1	QE1-2709-000		1	COVER, REAR RIGHT	W7200
	QE1-3030-000		1	COVER, REAR RIGHT	W7250
	QE1-3101-000		1	COVER, BLIND	W7250 ONLY
	QM1-0687-000		1	UPPER RIGHT COVER UNIT	W7200
4	QM1-0714-000		1	UPPER RIGHT COVER UNIT	W7250
	QM1-0688-000		1	OPERATION PANEL UNIT	W7200 ENGLISH
	QM1-0733-000		1	OPERATION PANEL UNIT	W7250 ENGLISH
	QM1-0770-000		1	OPERATION PANEL UNIT	W7200 JAPANESE
5	QM1-0771-000		1	OPERATION PANEL UNIT	W7250 JAPANESE
	QM1-0699-000		1	RIGHT COVER UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0715-000		1	RIGHT COVER UNIT	W7250
6	QM1-0685-000		1	UPPER REAR COVER UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0713-000		1	UPPER REAR COVER UNIT	W7250
	QM1-0686-000		1	UPPER COVER UNIT	W7200
7	QM1-0716-000		1	UPPER COVER UNIT	W7250
	QM1-0795-000		1	UPPER COVER UNIT	W7200 USA
	QM1-0796-000		1	UPPER COVER UNIT	W7250 USA
8	QM1-0645-000		1	SENSOR SHAFT ASS'Y	
	QM1-0652-000		1	MANUAL FEED TRAY UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0725-000		1	MANUAL FEED TRAY UNIT	W7250
10	QM1-0762-000		1	TRAY COVER UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0763-000		1	TRAY COVER UNIT	W7250
11	QM1-0674-000		1	ROLL TRAY UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0702-000		1	ROLL TRAY UNIT	W7250
12	QE1-3194-000		1	COVER, INTERFACE	

FIGURE 4 ELECTRICAL PART

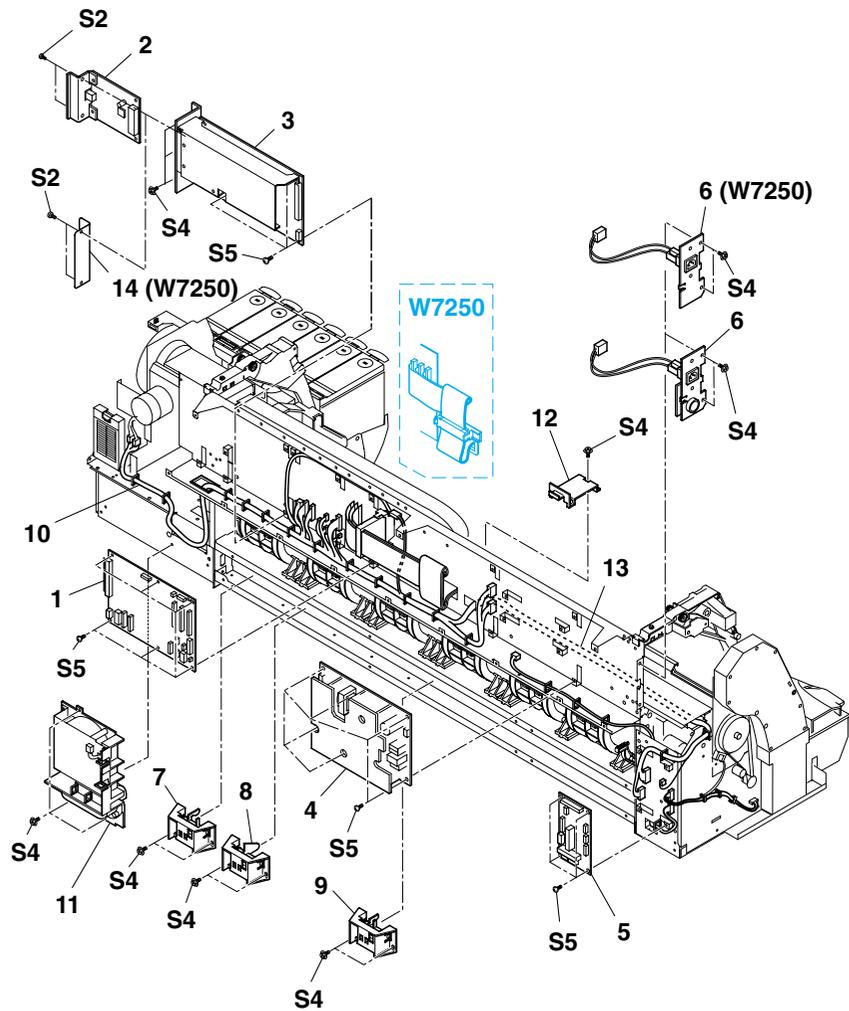


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
4- 1	QM1-5001-000		1	ENGINE CONTROLLER ASS'Y	
2	NPN		1	IEEE1394 EXPANSION BOARD	
3	QM1-0749-000		1	SYSTEM CONTROLLER ASS'Y	
4	QH3-3487-000		1	POWER SUPPLY ASS'Y	
5	QM1-5003-000		1	MOTOR DRIVER ASS'Y	
6	QM1-0720-000		1	INLET UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0754-000		1	INLET UNIT	W7250
7	QM1-0683-000		1	ROLL SET SENSOR UNIT	
8	QM1-0681-000		1	ROLL END SENSOR UNIT	
9	QM1-0682-000		1	ROLL TRAY SET SENSOR UNIT	
10	QM1-5018-000		1	DC CABLE ASS'Y	
11	QM1-0653-000		1	FAN UNIT	
12	NPN		1	GUIDE, CABLE	
13	QM1-0486-000		1	MOTOR DRIVE CABLE ASS'Y	W7250
	QM1-5011-000		1	MOTOR DRIVE CABLE ASS'Y	W7200
14	NPN		1	PLATE, BLIND	W7250 ONLY

FIGURE 5 AIR FLOW FAN UNIT & FEED MOTOR ASS'Y

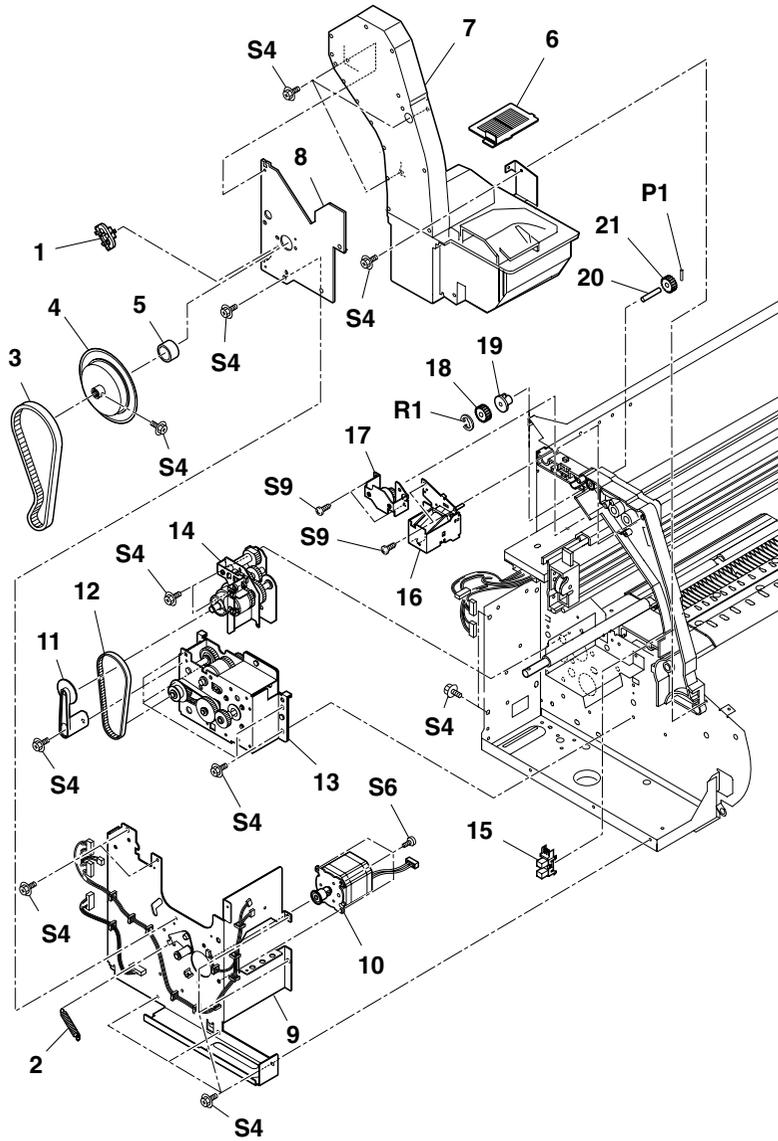


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
5- 1	QM1-0658-000		1	FEED ROLLER SENSOR UNIT	
2	QE1-1279-000		1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL	
3	XF2-4119-090		1	BELT, FEED	
4	QL1-0376-000		1	ENCODER SLIT ASS'Y	
5	QE1-2982-000		1	SPACER	
6	QE1-3239-000		1	FILTER, AIR	
7	QM1-0778-000		1	AIR FLOW FAN UNIT	
8	NPN		1	FAN BASE UNIT	
9	NPN		1	FEED MOTOR BASE UNIT	
10	QM1-0656-000		1	FEED MOTOR ASS'Y	
11	QE1-3024-000		1	GUIDE, BELT	
12	XF2-4114-360		1	BELT, DRIVE	
13	QM1-0673-000		1	ROLL DRIVE UNIT	
14	QM1-0651-000		1	PINCH ROLLER DRIVE UNIT	
15	FH7-7312-000		1	IC, EE-SX4235A-P2, PHOTO INTER.	
16	QM1-0642-000		1	UPPER COVER LOCK UNIT (L)	
17	QM1-0766-000		1	LEFT DUMPER UNIT	W7250
	QM1-0786-000		1	LEFT DUMPER UNIT	W7200
18	QE1-1061-000		1	GEAR, IDLER	
19	FS5-1646-000		1	BUSHING	
20	NPN		1	SHAFT	
21	QE1-1063-000		1	GEAR, IDLER	

FIGURE 7 PAPER GUIDE UNIT

manuals4you.com

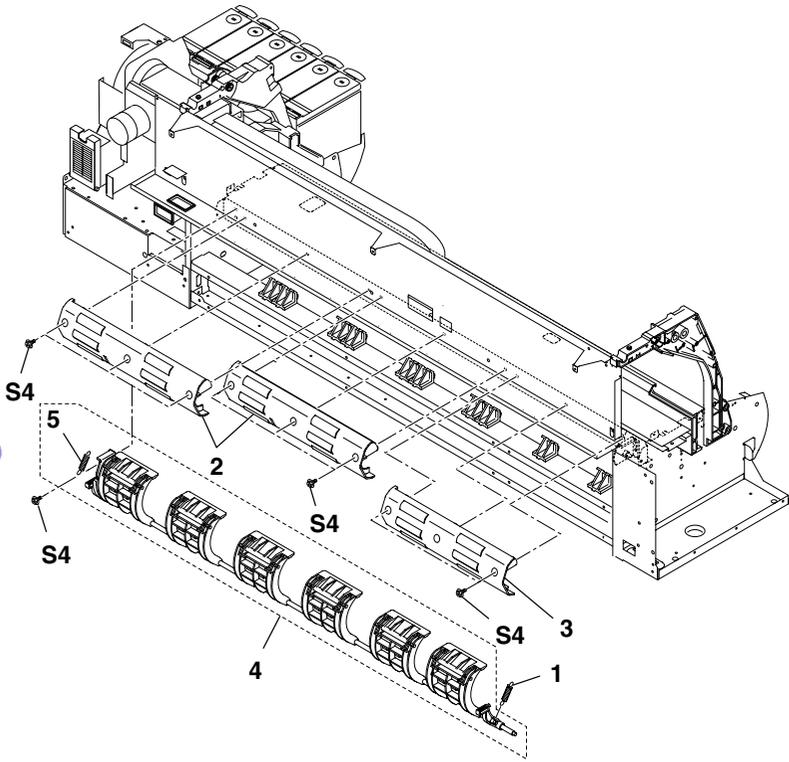


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
7 - 1	QE1-1271-000		1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL	
2	QM1-0648-000		2	PAPER GUIDE UNIT A	
3	QM1-0696-000		1	PAPER GUIDE UNIT A	W7200 ONLY
4	QM1-0649-000		1	PAPER GUIDE UNIT B	W7200
	QM1-0701-000		1	PAPER GUIDE UNIT B	W7250
5	QE1-1271-000		1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL	

FIGURE 8 PLATEN & FEED ROLLER

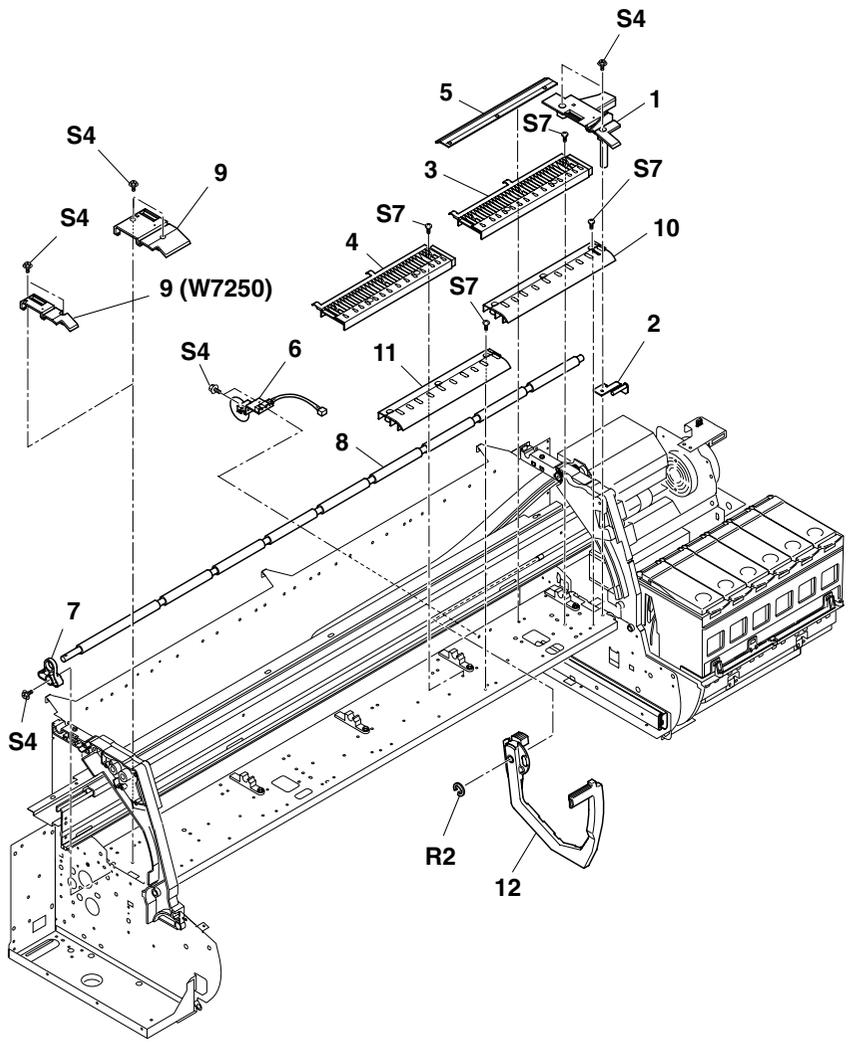


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
8- 1	QM1-0717-000		1	RIGHT PLATEN UNIT	
2	NPN		1	PLATE, LEVER GUIDE	
3	QM1-0761-000		1	PLATEN A	
4	QE1-2674-000		3	PLATEN B	W7200
	QE1-2674-000		2	PLATEN B	W7250
5	QE1-2697-000		3	PLATEN, REAR	W7200
	QE1-2697-000		2	PLATEN, REAR	W7250
6	QM1-0650-000		1	FEED SENSOR UNIT	
7	QE1-2673-000		1	BUSHING, FEED	
8	QE1-2669-000		1	ROLLER, FEED	W7200
	QE1-2963-000		1	ROLLER, FEED	W7250
9	QE1-2950-000		1	PLATEN, LEFT	W7200
	QE1-3041-000		1	PLATEN, LEFT	W7250
10	QE1-2696-000		1	PLATEN A, FRONT	
11	QE1-2678-000		3	PLATEN B, FRONT	W7200
	QE1-2678-000		2	PLATEN B, FRONT	W7250
12	QM1-0731-000		1	RELEASE LEVER ASS'Y	

FIGURE 9 CARRIAGE UNIT

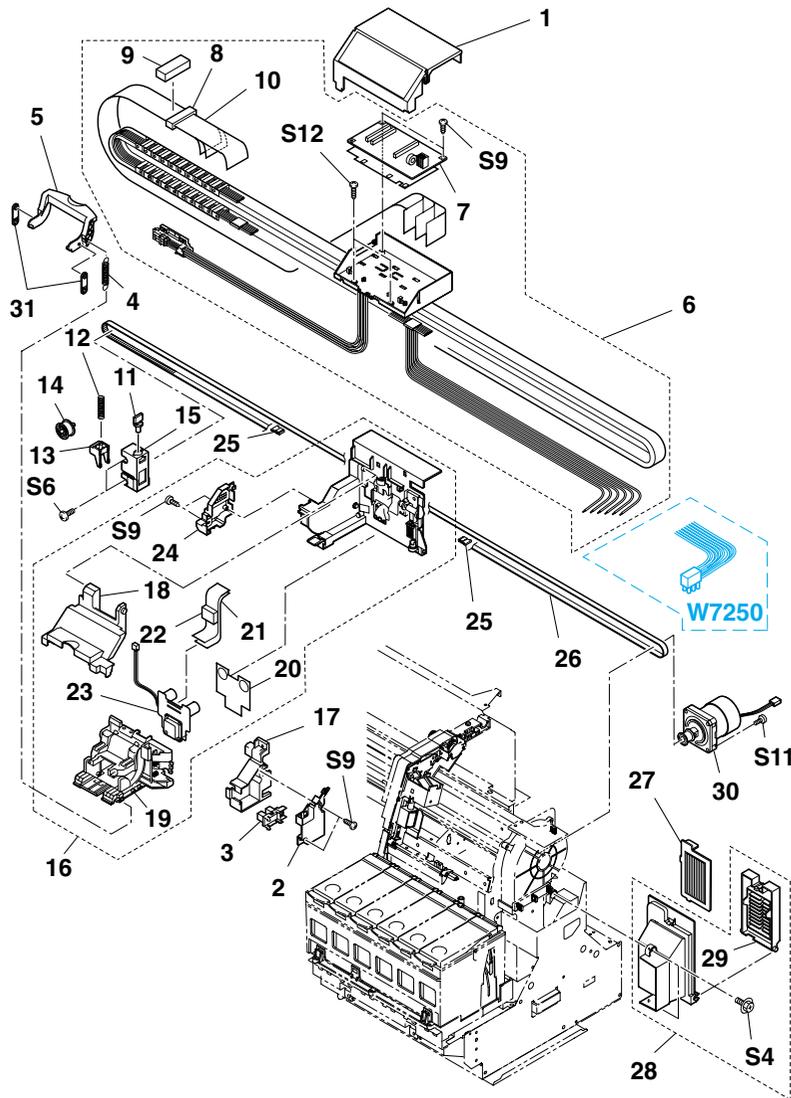


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
9- 1	QE1-2695-000		1	COVER, TUBE BASE	
2	QE1-3058-000		1	COVER, TUBE HOLDER	
3	FH7-7312-000		1	IC, EE-SX4235A-P2, PHOTO INTER.	
4	QE1-1282-000		1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL	
5	QE1-2819-000		1	LEVER, PRINTHEAD LOCK	
6	QM1-0663-000		1	INK TUBE UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0710-000		1	INK TUBE UNIT	W7250
7	QM1-5002-000		1	CARRIAGE RELAY ASS'Y	
8	WE8-5344-000		1	FERRITE CORE	
9	QE1-2682-000		1	PAD	
10	QM1-5014-000		1	FLEXIBLE CABLE ASS'Y	W7200
	QM1-5214-000		1	FLEXIBLE CABLE ASS'Y	W7250
11	QE1-2691-000		1	LEVER, IDLER ROLLER	
12	QE1-1270-000		1	SPRING, COIL	
13	QE1-2690-000		1	GUIDE, IDLER ROLLER	
14	QM1-0662-000		1	IDLER ROLLER ASS'Y	
15	QE1-2689-000		1	MOUNT, IDLER ROLLER	
16	QM1-0746-000		1	CARRIAGE UNIT	
17	QE1-2826-000		1	HOLDER, TUBE	
18	QE1-2814-000		1	COVER, CARRIAGE	
19	NPN		1	HEAD HOLDER UNIT	
20	QE1-2838-000		1	SHEET	
21	QH2-2554-000		2	FLEXIBLE CABLE	
22	QE1-3184-000		1	PAD	
23	QM1-5004-000		1	HEAD RELAY ASS'Y	
24	NPN		1	COVER, SENSOR	
25	QE1-2341-000		2	STOPPER, BELT	
26	QE1-2824-000		1	BELT, CARRIAGE	W7200
	QE1-2977-000		1	BELT, CARRIAGE	W7250
27	QE1-3239-000		1	FILTER, AIR	
28	QM1-0777-000		1	DUCT UNIT	
29	QL1-0431-000		1	FILTER COVER ASS'Y	
30	QM1-0661-000		1	CARRIAGE MOTOR ASS'Y	
31	QC1-0008-000		2	JOINT LEVER B	

FIGURE 10 INK TANK & PURGE UNIT

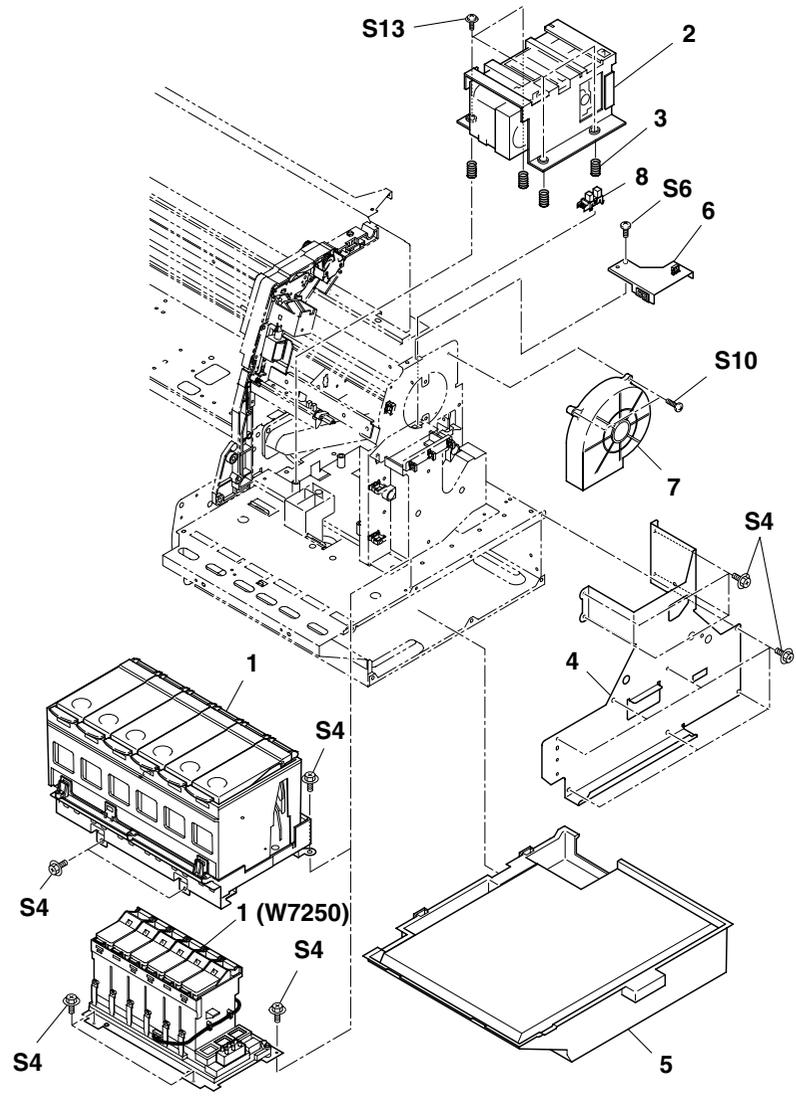


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
10 - 1	QM1-0689-000		1	INK TANK UNIT	W7200
	QM1-0738-000		1	INK TANK UNIT	W7250
	2	QM1-0670-000	1	PURGE UNIT	
	3	QE1-1280-000	4	SPRING, COIL	
	4	NPN	1	STAY, SUPPORT	W7200
	5	NPN	1	STAY, SUPPORT	W7250
		QM1-0659-000	1	WASTE INK ABSORBER UNIT	W7200
		QM1-0723-000	1	WASTE INK ABSORBER UNIT	W7250
6	NPN	1	MOUNT, CONNECTOR		
	7	QH4-4382-000	1	FAN, AIR FLOW	
8	FH7-7312-000		1	IC, EE-SX4235A-P2, PHOTO INTER.	

FIGURE 11 LINEAR SCALE

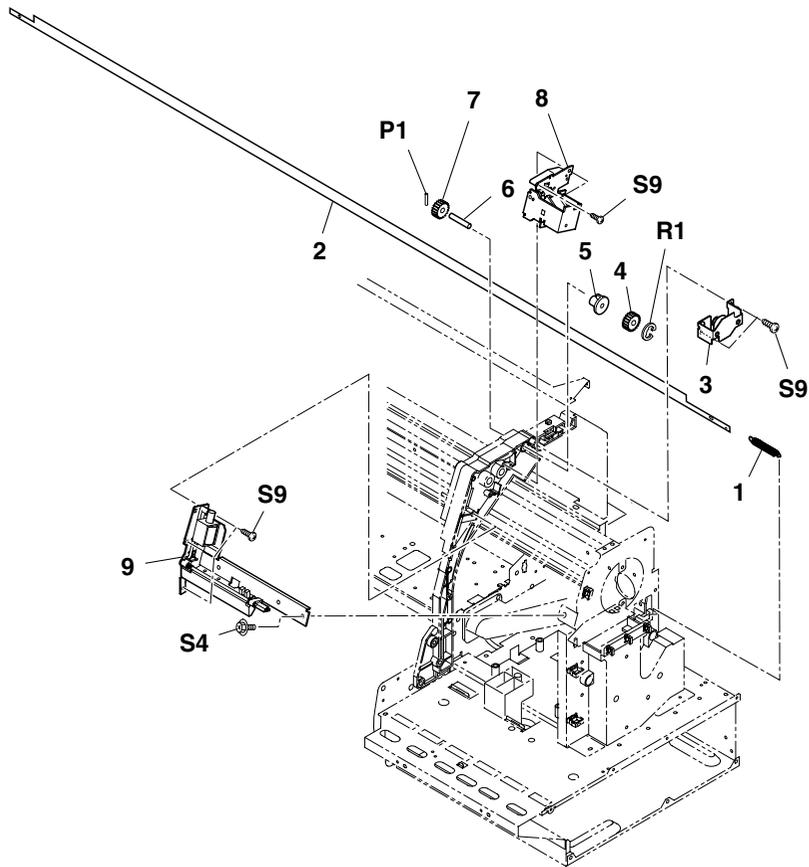


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
11- 1	QE1-1254-000		1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL	
	QE1-2672-000		1	SCALE, LINEAR	W7200
	QE1-2976-000		1	SCALE, LINEAR	W7250
	QM1-0767-000		1	RIGHT DUMPER UNIT	W7250
	QM1-0787-000		1	RIGHT DUMPER UNIT	W7200
4	QE1-1061-000		1	GEAR, IDLER	
5	FS5-1646-000		1	BUSHING	
6	NPN		1	SHAFT	
7	QE1-1063-000		1	GEAR, IDLER	
8	QM1-0643-000		1	UPPER COVER LOCK UNIT (R)	
9	QM1-0644-000		1	RIGHT COVER LOCK UNIT	

FIGURE 12 STAND UNIT

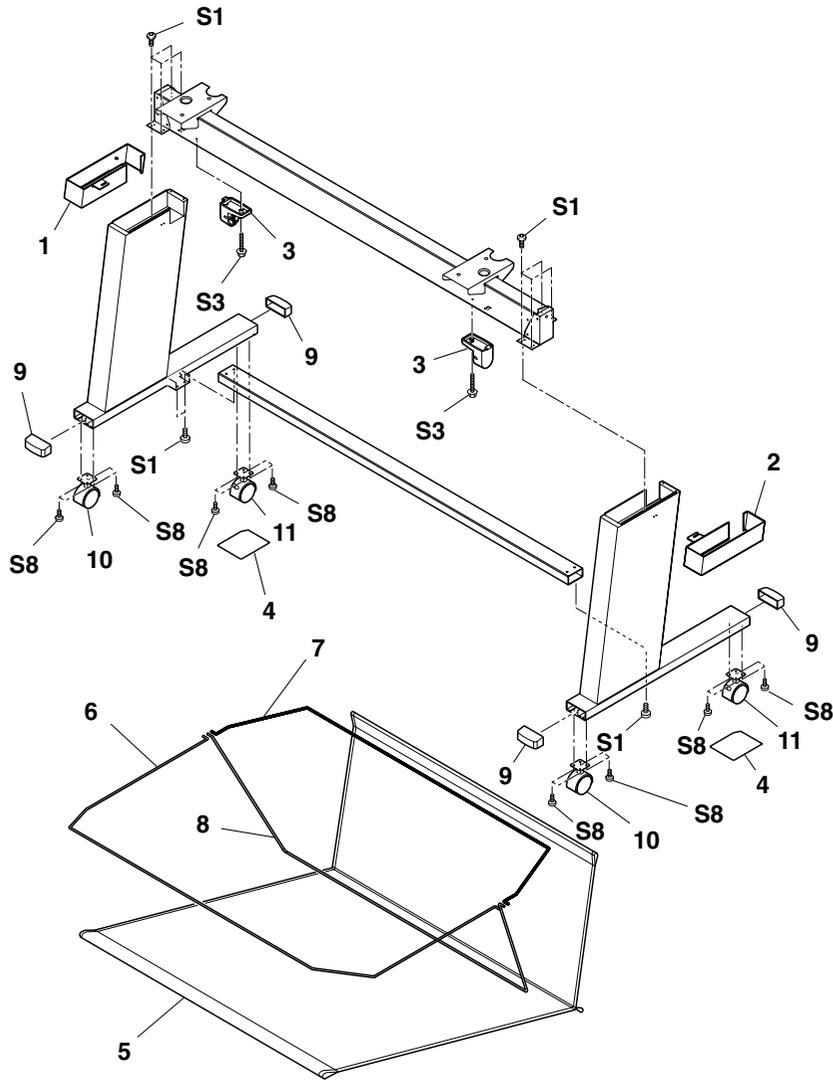


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
12- 1	QE1-3063-000		1	COVER, LEFT	
2	QE1-3064-000		1	COVER, RIGHT	
3	QE1-3009-000		2	SUPPORT, BLOCK	
4	QE1-3158-000		2	SHEET, CASTER	
5	QE1-3005-000		1	STACKER, PAPER	ST-31
6	QE1-3013-000		1	STACKER, PAPER	ST-21
	QE1-3006-000		1	WIRE, HANGING, FRONT	ST-31
	QE1-3014-000		1	WIRE, HANGING, FRONT	ST-21
7	QE1-3007-000		1	WIRE, HANGING, REAR	ST-31
	QE1-3015-000		1	WIRE, HANGING, REAR	ST-21
8	QE1-3113-000		1	WIRE, HANGING, SHORT	ST-31
	QE1-3114-000		1	WIRE, HANGING, SHORT	ST-21
9	QE1-2995-000		4	CAP, FOOT	
10	QE1-3173-000		2	CASTER	WITHOUT STOPPER
11	QE1-3174-000		2	CASTER	WITH STOPPER

B. SCREWS & WASHERS LIST

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	QTY	DESCRIPTION	REMARKS
P - 1	XD3-2160-082			PIN, DOWEL 1.6x8	
R - 1	XD2-1100-322			RING, E M3.2	
2	XD2-1100-802			RING, E M8	
S - 1	QE1-2304-000			SCREW, ALLEN, M4X8	
2	QE1-2334-000			SCREW, ALLEN, M4X6	
3	XA9-0632-000			SCREW, M4X26	
4	XA9-0732-000			SCREW, RS, M4	
5	XB1-2400-606			SCREW, MACHINE M4X6	
6	XB1-2400-609			SCREW, MACHINE M4X6	
7	XB1-2400-809			SCREW, MACHINE M4X8	
8	XB6-7400-806			SCREW, TP, M4X8	
9	XB4-7400-809			SCREW, TAP BINDING HEAD, M4X8	
10	XB1-2300-809			SCREW, MACHINE M3X8	
11	XB1-2401-009			SCREW, MACHINE M4X10	
12	XB4-7401-009			SCREW, TAP BINDING HEAD M4X10	
13	XB6-7400-609			SCREW, MACHINE, M4X6	

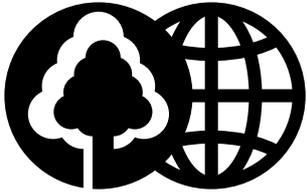
C. NUMERICAL INDEX

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	DESCRIPTION
CK-0541-000	17- 2	SYRINGE
CK-0551-020	17- 4	LUBE, PERMALUB G NO.2
CK-0562-000	17- 5	GREASE, MOLYKOTE PG-641
FH2-5006-000	1- 4	WIRE, GROUNDING
FH7-7312-000	5- 15	IC, EE-SX4235A-P2, PHOTO INTER.
	9- 3	
	10- 8	
F55-1646-000	5- 19	BUSHING
	11- 5	
QA2-6161-000	17- 3	TUBE
QC1-0008-000	9- 31	JOINT LEVER B
QE1-1061-000	5- 18	GEAR, IDLER
	11- 4	
QE1-1063-000	5- 21	GEAR, IDLER
	11- 7	
QE1-1254-000	11- 1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL
QE1-1270-000	9- 12	SPRING, COIL
QE1-1271-000	7- 1	SPRING, HOOK END COIL
	7- 5	
QE1-1279-000	5- 2	SPRING, HOOK END COIL
QE1-1280-000	10- 3	SPRING, COIL
QE1-1282-000	9- 4	SPRING, HOOK END COIL
QE1-2304-000	S- 1	SCREW, ALLEN, M4X8
QE1-2334-000	1- 12	SCREW, ALLEN, M4X6
	S- 2	
QE1-2341-000	9- 25	STOPPER, BELT
QE1-2669-000	8- 8	ROLLER, FEED
QE1-2672-000	11- 2	SCALE, LINEAR
QE1-2673-000	8- 7	BUSHING, FEED
QE1-2674-000	8- 4	PLATEN B
	8- 4	
QE1-2678-000	8- 11	PLATEN B, FRONT
	8- 11	
QE1-2682-000	9- 9	PAD
QE1-2689-000	9- 15	MOUNT, IDLER ROLLER
QE1-2690-000	9- 13	GUIDE, IDLER ROLLER
QE1-2691-000	9- 11	LEVER, IDLER ROLLER
QE1-2695-000	9- 1	COVER, TUBE BASE
QE1-2696-000	8- 10	PLATEN A, FRONT
QE1-2697-000	8- 5	PLATEN, REAR
	8- 5	
QE1-2708-000	2- 2	COVER, REAR LEFT
QE1-2709-000	3- 1	COVER, REAR RIGHT
QE1-2710-000	2- 1	COVER, REAR
QE1-2713-000	2- 5	COVER, STAY, REAR
QE1-2814-000	9- 18	COVER, CARRIAGE
QE1-2819-000	9- 5	LEVER, PRINTHEAD LOCK
QE1-2824-000	9- 26	BELT, CARRIAGE
QE1-2826-000	9- 17	HOLDER, TUBE
QE1-2838-000	9- 20	SHEET
QE1-2942-000	2- 6	COVER, STAY, REAR
QE1-2950-000	8- 9	PLATEN, LEFT
QE1-2963-000	8- 8	ROLLER, FEED
QE1-2976-000	11- 2	SCALE, LINEAR
QE1-2977-000	9- 26	BELT, CARRIAGE
QE1-2982-000	5- 5	SPACER
QE1-2995-000	12- 9	CAP, FOOT
QE1-3005-000	12- 5	STACKER, PAPER

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	DESCRIPTION
QE1-3006-000	12- 6	WIRE, HANGING, FRONT
QE1-3007-000	12- 7	WIRE, HANGING, REAR
QE1-3009-000	12- 3	SUPPORT, BLOCK
QE1-3013-000	12- 5	STACKER, PAPER
QE1-3014-000	12- 6	WIRE, HANGING, FRONT
QE1-3015-000	12- 7	WIRE, HANGING, REAR
QE1-3024-000	5- 11	GUIDE, BELT
QE1-3030-000	3- 1	COVER, REAR RIGHT
QE1-3031-000	2- 1	COVER, REAR
QE1-3041-000	8- 9	PLATEN, LEFT
QE1-3058-000	9- 2	COVER, TUBE HOLDER
QE1-3063-000	12- 1	COVER, LEFT
QE1-3064-000	12- 2	COVER, RIGHT
QE1-3101-000	3- 2	COVER, BLIND
QE1-3113-000	12- 8	WIRE, HANGING, SHORT
QE1-3114-000	12- 8	WIRE, HANGING, SHORT
QE1-3126-000	1- 11	STOPPER, BELT
QE1-3158-000	12- 4	SHEET, CASTER
QE1-3173-000	12- 10	CASTER
QE1-3174-000	12- 11	CASTER
QE1-3184-000	9- 22	PAD
QE1-3194-000	3- 12	COVER, INTERFACE
QE1-3239-000	5- 6	FILTER, AIR
	9- 27	
QH2-2554-000	9- 21	FLEXIBLE CABLE
QH2-2627-000	1- 5	CORD, POWER
QH2-2628-000	1- 6	CORD, POWER
QH2-2629-000	1- 7	CORD, POWER
QH2-2630-000	1- 8	CORD, POWER
QH2-2631-000	1- 9	CORD, POWER
QH3-3487-000	4- 4	POWER SUPPLY ASSY
QH4-4382-000	10- 7	FAN, AIR FLOW
QH7-8512-000	16- 1	IC, BJ-LICC2, LINEAR
QH8-1016-000	14- 1	IC, KS5000M, ASIC
QH8-1020-000	15- 1	IC, HG73C121FB, ASIC
QH8-1021-000	14- 2	IC, HG73C122FB, ASIC
QH8-1022-000	14- 3	SOCKET, IC
QH8-1040-000	13- 1	IC, MB87J8060PB-G, GATE ARRAY
QH8-1105-000	13- 2	IC, ISPLSI2032VE-110LT44, PLD
QH8-1121-000	14- 4	IC, MBM29LV160BE90TN, FLASH ROM
QL1-0376-000	5- 4	ENCODER SLIT ASSY
QL1-0431-000	9- 29	FILTER COVER ASSY
QM1-0486-000	4- 13	MOTOR DRIVE CABLE ASSY
QM1-0638-000	2- 4	UPPER LEFT COVER UNIT
QM1-0642-000	5- 16	UPPER COVER LOCK UNIT (L)
QM1-0643-000	11- 8	UPPER COVER LOCK UNIT (R)
QM1-0644-000	11- 9	RIGHT COVER LOCK UNIT
QM1-0645-000	3- 8	SENSOR SHAFT ASSY
QM1-0647-000	6- 2	PINCH ROLLER UNIT
	6- 2	
QM1-0648-000	7- 2	PAPER GUIDE UNIT A
QM1-0649-000	7- 4	PAPER GUIDE UNIT B
QM1-0650-000	8- 6	FEED SENSOR UNIT
QM1-0651-000	5- 14	PINCH ROLLER DRIVE UNIT
QM1-0652-000	3- 9	MANUAL FEED TRAY UNIT
QM1-0653-000	4- 11	FAN UNIT
QM1-0656-000	5- 10	FEED MOTOR ASSY
QM1-0658-000	5- 1	FEED ROLLER SENSOR UNIT

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	DESCRIPTION
QM1-0659-000	10- 5	WASTE INK ABSORBER UNIT
QM1-0661-000	9- 30	CARRIAGE MOTOR ASSY
QM1-0662-000	9- 14	IDLER ROLLER ASSY
QM1-0663-000	9- 6	INK TUBE UNIT
QM1-0670-000	10- 2	PURGE UNIT
QM1-0673-000	5- 13	ROLL DRIVE UNIT
QM1-0674-000	3- 11	ROLL TRAY UNIT
QM1-0681-000	4- 8	ROLL END SENSOR UNIT
QM1-0682-000	4- 9	ROLL TRAY SET SENSOR UNIT
QM1-0683-000	4- 7	ROLL SET SENSOR UNIT
QM1-0685-000	3- 6	UPPER REAR COVER UNIT
QM1-0686-000	3- 7	UPPER COVER UNIT
QM1-0687-000	3- 3	UPPER RIGHT COVER UNIT
QM1-0688-000	3- 4	OPERATION PANEL UNIT
QM1-0689-000	10- 1	INK TANK UNIT
QM1-0696-000	7- 3	PAPER GUIDE UNIT A
QM1-0699-000	3- 5	RIGHT COVER UNIT
QM1-0701-000	7- 4	PAPER GUIDE UNIT B
QM1-0702-000	3- 11	ROLL TRAY UNIT
QM1-0710-000	9- 6	INK TUBE UNIT
QM1-0713-000	3- 6	UPPER REAR COVER UNIT
QM1-0714-000	3- 3	UPPER RIGHT COVER UNIT
QM1-0715-000	3- 5	RIGHT COVER UNIT
QM1-0716-000	3- 7	UPPER COVER UNIT
QM1-0717-000	8- 1	RIGHT PLATEN UNIT
QM1-0720-000	4- 6	INLET UNIT
QM1-0723-000	10- 5	WASTE INK ABSORBER UNIT
QM1-0725-000	3- 9	MANUAL FEED TRAY UNIT
QM1-0731-000	8- 12	RELEASE LEVER ASSY
QM1-0733-000	3- 4	OPERATION PANEL UNIT
QM1-0735-000	2- 2	REAR LEFT COVER UNIT
QM1-0738-000	10- 1	INK TANK UNIT
QM1-0746-000	9- 16	CARRIAGE UNIT
QM1-0749-000	4- 3	SYSTEM CONTROLLER ASSY
QM1-0754-000	4- 6	INLET UNIT
QM1-0761-000	8- 3	PLATEN A
QM1-0762-000	3- 10	TRAY COVER UNIT
QM1-0763-000	3- 10	TRAY COVER UNIT
QM1-0766-000	5- 17	LEFT DUMPER UNIT
QM1-0767-000	11- 3	RIGHT DUMPER UNIT
QM1-0770-000	3- 4	OPERATION PANEL UNIT
QM1-0771-000	3- 4	OPERATION PANEL UNIT
QM1-0777-000	9- 28	DUCT UNIT
QM1-0778-000	5- 7	AIR FLOW FAN UNIT
QM1-0779-000	2- 3	LEFT COVER UNIT
QM1-0783-000	1- 13	RAIL CLEANER ASSY
QM1-0786-000	5- 17	RIGHT DUMPER UNIT
QM1-0787-000	11- 3	LEFT DUMPER UNIT
QM1-0795-000	3- 7	UPPER COVER UNIT
QM1-0796-000	3- 7	UPPER COVER UNIT
QM1-5001-000	4- 1	ENGINE CONTROLLER ASSY
QM1-5002-000	9- 7	CARRIAGE RELAY ASSY
QM1-5003-000	4- 5	MOTOR DRIVER ASSY
QM1-5004-000	9- 23	HEAD RELAY ASSY
QM1-5011-000	4- 13	MOTOR DRIVE CABLE ASSY
QM1-5014-000	9- 10	FLEXIBLE CABLE ASSY
QM1-5018-000	4- 10	DC CABLE ASSY
QM1-5214-000	9- 10	FLEXIBLE CABLE ASSY

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.	DESCRIPTION
QY9-0103-000	17- 1	COVER SWITCH TOOL
WA7-2037-000	13- 3	IC, MX29LV160TTC-90, FLASH ROM
WE8-5344-000	9- 8	FERRITE CORE
XA9-0632-000	S- 3	SCREW, M4X26
XA9-0732-000	S- 4	SCREW, RS, M4
XB1-2300-809	S- 10	SCREW, MACHINE M3X8
XB1-2400-606	S- 5	SCREW, MACHINE M4X6
XB1-2400-609	S- 6	SCREW, MACHINE M4X6
XB1-2400-809	S- 7	SCREW, MACHINE M4X8
XB1-2401-009	S- 11	SCREW, MACHINE M4X10
XB4-7400-809	S- 9	SCREW, TAP BINDING HEAD, M4X8
XB4-7401-009	S- 12	SCREW, TAP BINDING HEAD M4X10
XB6-7400-609	S- 13	SCREW, MACHINE, M4X6
XB6-7400-806	S- 8	SCREW, TP, M4X8
XD2-1100-322	R- 1	RING, E M3.2
XD2-1100-802	R- 2	RING, E M8
XD3-2160-082	P- 1	PIN, DOWEL 1.6x8
XF2-4114-360	5- 12	BELT, DRIVE
XF2-4119-090	5- 3	BELT, FEED



This document is printed
on 100% recycled paper.

Canon